MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 46

The History of the Archbishops of Hamburg-Bremen

Adam of Bremen

Gesta Hammaburgensis Ecclesiae Pontificum

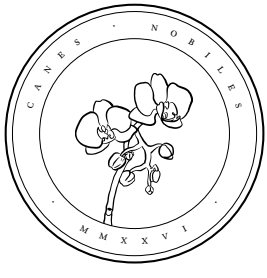
The History of the Archbishops of Hamburg-Bremen

Adam of Bremen's Four Books,
with the Description of the Northern Islands

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

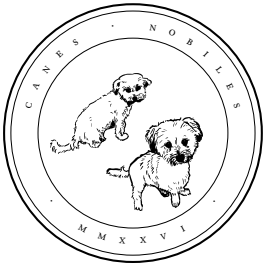


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 46 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Johann Martin Lappenberg's
text in its second edition (Hanover, 1876), without the scholia

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

Prologue · To Archbishop Liemar 9

BOOK I

1–3 · Saxony, Its Rivers, and Its Peoples 15
4–7 · The Saxons' Coming and Customs 19
8–11 · Saxon Auguries, Conversion, and Boniface 24
12 · Willehad 29
13 · Charlemagne's Charter for Bremen 32
14–16 · Willehad's Death, Willeric, and Godfred 38
17–18 · Ansgar's Mission and Hamburg Made a Metropolis 42
19–20 · Ebo, Gauzbert, and Willeric's Churches 48
21–25 · Leuderic, the Burning of Hamburg, and Ramelsloh 51
26–29 · Ansgar Receives Bremen 56
30–35 · Ansgar's Last Labors 61
36–39 · Ansgar's Death and Rimbert 66
40–41 · The Northmen Ravage the Empire 70
42–46 · Rimbert's Virtues and Death 74
47–51 · Adalgar and the Claims of Cologne 79

BOOK I

(continued)

52 · Adalgar's Old Age and Death 83
53–55 · Hoger and Reginward 85
56–61 · Unni and the Opening of Denmark 90
62–65 · Unni at Birka 94

BOOK II

1–3 · Adaldag and Otto's Danish War 99
4–8 · Bishops for Denmark and Duke Hermann 104
9–13 · Adaldag in Italy and Magdeburg 109
14–17 · The Slavic Sees and the Saxon Border 114
18–19 · Slavia, Rethra, and Jumne 118
20–23 · Harald, Hakon, and the Danish Bishops 123
24–26 · Svein's Revolt and Harald's Death 128
27–29 · Libentius, Svein's Punishment, and the Pirates 132
30–33 · The Ascomanni Destroyed; Svein's Exile; Poppo 137
34–37 · Odinkar the Younger, Olaf Tryggvason, and Svein's Return . . 141
38–42 · Olaf's Death and the Slavic Revolt 145
43–46 · Libentius's Death and Unwan 150
47–51 · Unwan's Generosity and Cnut's Conquest 155
52–55 · Cnut's Kingdoms and Saint Olaf 160
56–59 · Olaf of Sweden and Saint Olaf's Martyrdom 165
60–64 · Wolfred's Martyrdom and Libentius II 169
65–66 · Libentius's Death and Hermann 175
67–70 · Bezelin Alebrand and His Buildings 178
71–74 · The Danish and English Successions 183

BOOK II

(continued)

75–77 · Magnus, Ratibor, and the Burning of Bremen 187
78 · Alebrand's Death 191

BOOK III

1 · Adalbert's Election and Adam's Task 195
2–3 · Adalbert's Character; the Cloister Destroyed 198
4–8 · Adalbert and the Dukes 203
9–11 · Provostships and Letters to the North 208
12–14 · Harald and the Swedish Mission 212
15–17 · Adalward Recalled; Harald; Peace with Svein 216
18–21 · Gottschalk and the Slavic Church 221
22–25 · The Avarice of the Saxons; Adalbert's Fame 227
26–29 · Hamburg, Goslar, and the Synod of Mainz 232
30–33 · The Plan of a Patriarchate 237
34–36 · Anno's Kinsmen and Adalbert's Flatterers 242
37–38 · Adalbert's Household 247
39–41 · The Dukes' Hatred; Frisia; Bernard's Dream 252
42–44 · Ordulf and Hermann Ravage the See 256
45–46 · The Counties and the Archbishop's Fall 260
47–49 · Magnus Besieges Adalbert; Gottschalk Killed 265
50–52 · The Slavic Uprising and the Conquest of England 269
53–54 · Svein of Denmark; Adalbert in Retirement 273
55 · Why Adalbert Was Harsh to His People 277

BOOK III

(continued)

56–58 · The Plundering of Bremen and Adalbert's Return 281
59–61 · The Signs Before His Death 286
62–63 · Adalbert's Last Illness 290
64–65 · Adalbert's Death 295
66–68 · Burial and Repentance 299
70 · The Mission Under Adalbert 307

BOOK IV

1–3 · Jutland and Heligoland 319
4–7 · Funen, Zealand, and Scania 324
8–9 · The Sees of Scania 328
10–14 · The Baltic Sea 331
15–18 · The Baltic Islands 336
19–20 · The Women's Land and the Monsters 341
21–22 · Sweden and the Swedes 344
23–26 · The Goths, Hälsingland, and Uppsala 348
27–29 · The Uppsala Sacrifices and Adalward the Younger 353
30–31 · Norway 358
32–33 · Trondheim and the Norwegian Bishops 363
34–35 · The Orkneys and Iceland 365
36–39 · Greenland, Vinland, and the Frozen Sea 370
40–42 · The Cyclopes; the Tides; the Close 375
Epilogue · To Liemar 381

Prologus

PROLOGUE · TO ARCHBISHOP LIEMAR

Adam, a canon of Bremen, dedicates the work to Archbishop Liemar. No one has written the history of the church's bishops, so he will tell their deeds from charters, histories, and the memory of the elders, inventing nothing. He commits the book to Liemar's judgment, expects the envious to call it a dream, and prays that the mission to the north may be completed in Liemar's days.

Beatissimo patri et electo celitus archiepiscopo
to-the-most-blessed father and chosen from-heaven archbishop
Hammaburgensi Liemaro A., minimus sanctae Bremensis
of-Hamburg Liemar A. the-least of-the-holy of-Bremen
ecclesiae canonicus, integrae devotionis parvum munus.
church canon of-entire devotion a-small gift
Cum in numerum gregis vestri, pastor euangelice, nuper a
when into the-number of-the-flock your shepherd evangelical lately by
decessore vestro colligerer, sedulo operam dedi, ne proselitus
predecessor your I-was-gathered diligently effort I-gave lest a-proselyte
et advena tanti muneris beneficio ingratus existerem. Mox
and stranger of-so-great of-a-gift to-the-benefit ungrateful I-should-prove soon
igitur ut oculis atque auribus accepi, ecclesiam vestram
therefore as with-eyes and ears I-received church your
antiqui honoris privilegio nimis extenuatam, multis egere
of-ancient honor in-privilege too-much worn-thin many to-need
constructorum manibus, cogitabam diu, quo laboris nostri
of-builders hands I-pondered long by-what of-labor our
monimento exhaustam viribus matrem potuerim iuvare.
memorial exhausted in-strength mother I-might-be-able to-help
Et ecce occurrunt michi plurima, interdum legenti vel
and behold occur to-me very-many sometimes reading or

audienti facta ab antecessoribus vestris, quae tum sui
hearing deeds by predecessors your which both of-their-own
magnitudine, tum ecclesiae huius necessitate videantur digna
by-greatness and of-church this by-need seem worthy
relatu. Sed quoniam rerum memoria latet, et pontificum
of-telling but since of-things memory lies-hidden and of-the-pontiffs
loci hystoria non est tradita litteris, fortasse dixerit
of-the-place history not is handed-down to-letters perhaps may-say
aliquis, aut nichil eos dignum memoria fecisse in
someone either nothing they worthy of-memory to-have-done in
diebus suis, aut si fecerant quippiam, scriptorum qui hoc
days their or if they-had-done anything of-writers who this
posteris traderent diligentia caruisse. Hac ego necessitate
to-posterity might-hand-down in-diligence to-have-lacked by-this I necessity
persuasus, appuli me ad scribendum de Bremensium sive
persuaded applied myself to writing about of-Bremen or
Hammaburgensium serie praesulum, non alienum credens
of-Hamburg the-series of-prelates not foreign believing
meae devotionis officio seu negotio vestrae legationis, si,
of-my devotion to-the-duty or to-the-business of-your mission if
cum sim filius ecclesiae, sanctissimorum patrum, per quos
since I-am son of-the-church of-the-most-holy fathers through whom
ecclesia exaltata et christianitas in gentibus dilatata est,
the-church exalted and Christianity among the-nations spread-wide was
gesta revolvo. Ad quod nimirum valde arduum et viribus
the-deeds I-unroll to which surely very arduous and to-strength
meis impar onus, eo maiorem flagito veniam, quoniam
my unequal burden by-so-much greater I-beg pardon since
fere nullius qui me praecesserit vestigia sequens, ignotum
almost of-no-one who me has-preceded the-footprints following an-unknown
iter, quasi palpans in tenebris, carpere non timui, eligens
road as-if groping in darkness to-take not I-feared choosing

in vinea Domini pondus diei ferre et aestus, quam
in the-vineyard of-the-Lord the-weight of-the-day to-bear and the-heat than
extra vineam ociosus stare. Tuo igitur, sanctissime praesul,
outside the-vineyard idle to-stand to-your therefore most-holy prelate
examini audacter incepta committo: te iudicem simulque
examination boldly things-begun I-commit you judge and-at-once
defensorem imploro, sciens tibi pro sapientia tua nichil
defender I-implore knowing to-you for wisdom your nothing
dignum posse deferri: qui decurso mundanae prudentiae
worthy to-be-able to-be-offered who run-through of-worldly prudence
stadio, ad studium divinae philosophiae maiore gloria nunc
the-course to the-study of-divine philosophy with-greater glory now
ascendisti, terrena despiciens et sola meditans celestia.
have-ascended earthly-things despising and alone pondering heavenly-things
Cumque doctrina et veritate, hoc est verbo et exemplo
and-since in-doctrine and truth that is in-word and example
pastorali, facile multos excellas, praecipua est in virtutibus
pastoral easily many you-excel chief is among virtues
tuis humilitas, quae omnibus te communem faciens, michi
your humility which to-all you common making to-me
quoque fiduciam dedit, qua balbuciens audeam cum
also confidence has-given by-which stammering I-may-dare with
philosopho loqui, et Saul inter prophetas videri. Scio
the-philosopher to-speak and Saul among the-prophets to-be-seen I-know
tamen aliquos, ut in novissimis rebus fieri consuetum est,
yet some as in latest things to-happen accustomed it-is
adversarios michi non defuturos, qui dicant haec ficta
adversaries to-me not about-to-be-lacking who may-say these-things feigned
et falsa veluti somnia Scipionis a Tullio meditata; dicant
and false like the-dreams of-Scipio by Tully devised let-them-say
etiam si volunt per eburneam portam Maronis egressa.
even if they-wish through the-ivory gate of-Maro gone-out

Nobis propositum est non omnibus placere, sed tibi, pater,
to-us the-purpose is not to-all to-please but you father
et ecclesiae tuae; difficillimum est enim invidis placere. Et
and church your most-difficult it-is for the-envious to-please and
quoniam sic emulorum cogit improbitas, fateor tibi, quibus
since so of-rivals compels the-wickedness I-confess to-you what
ex pratis defloravi hoc sertum, ne dicar specie veri
out-of meadows I-plucked this garland lest I-be-said by-the-appearance of-truth
captasse mendacium: itaque de hiis quae scribo, aliqua
to-have-caught a-lie and-so of these which I-write some-things
per scedulas dispersa collegi, multa vero mutuavi de
through slips scattered I-gathered many-things indeed I-borrowed from
hystoriis et privilegiis Romanorum, pleraque omnia seniorum,
histories and charters of-the-Romans most-things all of-the-elders
quibus res nota est, traditione didici, testem habens
to-whom the-matter known is by-tradition I-learned as-witness having
veritatem, nichil de meo corde prophetari, nichil temere
truth nothing from my heart to-be-prophesied nothing rashly
definiri; sed omnia quae positurus sum certis roborabo
to-be-defined but all-things which about-to-set-down I-am with-sure I-shall-strengthen
testimoniis, ut si michi non creditur, saltem auctoritati
testimonies so-that if to-me not it-is-believed at-least to-authority
fides tribuatur. In quo opere talibusque ausis sciant
faith be-granted in which work and-such ventures let-them-know
omnes, quod nec laudari cupio ut historicus, nec improbari
all that neither to-be-praised I-desire as historian nor to-be-reproved
metuo ut falsidicus; sed quod bene ego non potui, melius
I-fear as false-speaker but what well I not could better
scribendi ceteris materiam reliqui. Ab introitu igitur sancti
of-writing to-others the-matter I-have-left from the-entry therefore of-saint
Willehadi, cum Saxonia tota et armis subacta Francorum et
Willehad when Saxony whole both by-arms subdued of-the-Franks and

divino cultui mancipata est, ordiens, in tuo salutari ingressu
to-divine worship delivered was beginning in your salutary entry
pono metam libelluli, simul omnipotentis Dei misericordiae
I-set the-goal of-the-little-book at-once of-almighty God to-the-mercy
supplicans, ut, qui te populo suo diu erranti et afflicto
supplicating that he-who you for-people his long wandering and afflicted
pastorem constituit, annuat etiam tua opera tuisque
shepherd has-appointed may-grant also by-your work and-in-your
diebus ea quae inter nos prava sunt corrigi et
days those-things which among us crooked are to-be-corrected and
correcta perpetuo conservari. Ad hec quae in gentium
corrected perpetually to-be-preserved to these-things which in of-the-nations
conversione a decessoribus tuis strennue dudum incepta sunt,
conversion by predecessors your vigorously long-ago begun were
a te, qui hereditariam predicandi legationem possides in
by you who the-hereditary of-preaching mission possess into
totam septentrionis latitudinem, mature perfici concedat
the-whole of-the-north breadth speedily to-be-completed may-grant
Iesus Christus dominus noster, cuius regni non est finis
Jesus Christ Lord our of-whose kingdom not is end
per omnia secula seculorum. Amen.
through all ages of-ages amen

Liber I, §§ 1–3

1–3 · SAXONY, ITS RIVERS, AND ITS PEOPLES

Saxony is triangular, fertile, and lacks only wine; its great rivers are the Elbe, the Saale, the Weser, and the Ems. Peoples have often passed from one land to another by God's judgment, and the Saxons once lived by the Rhine and were called Angles, part of whom crossed to Britain. Orosius and Gregory of Tours tell of their ferocity.

Historiam Hammaburgensis ecclesiae scripturi, quoniam
the-history of-the-Hamburg church about-to-write since
Hammaburg nobilissima quondam Saxonum civitas erat, non
Hamburg most-noble once of-the-Saxons city was not
indecens aut vacuum fore putamus, si prius de gente
unseemly or empty to-be we-think if first about the-nation
Saxonum et natura eiusdem provintiae ponemus ea,
of-the-Saxons and the-nature of-the-same province we-shall-set-down those-things
quae doctissimus vir Einhardus aliique non obscuri
which most-learned the-man Einhard and-other not obscure
auctores reliquerunt in scriptis suis. 'Saxonia', inquiunt, 'pars
authors have-left in writings their Saxony they-say a-part
non modica est Germaniae, et eius quae a Francis incolitur
not moderate is of-Germany and of-that which by the-Franks is-inhabited
duplum in lato putatur habere, cum ei longitudine
the-double in breadth is-thought to-have while to-it in-length
possit esse consimilis'. Positio eius recte metientibus
it-may-be-able to-be equal the-position of-it rightly to-those-measuring
trigona videtur; ita ut primus angulus in austrum
three-cornered seems so that the-first angle into the-south
porrigatur usque ad Renum flumen, secundus vero inchoans
may-stretch all-the-way to the-Rhine river the-second indeed beginning

a maritimis Hadelohe regionis, longo secus Albiam limite
from the-coasts of-Hadeln of-the-region long beside the-Elbe in-boundary
protenditur in orientem usque ad Salam fluvium. Ibi
stretches into the-east all-the-way to the-Saale river there
est angulus tercius. Itaque ab angulo in angulum habes
is the-angle third and-so from angle to angle you-have
iter octo dierum, praeter eam partem Saxoniae, quae
a-journey of-eight days besides that part of-Saxony which
trans Albiam supra incolitur a Sorabis, infra autem a
across the-Elbe above is-inhabited by the-Sorbs below moreover by
Nordalbingis. Saxonia viris, armis et frugibus inclita. Excepto
the-Nordalbingians Saxony in-men arms and crops renowned except
quod raris intumescit collibus, tota fere declivis in
that with-rare it-swells hills whole almost sloping into
planitiem consideratur. Sola caret vini dulcedine; alia omnia
a-plain is-considered alone it-lacks of-wine the-sweetness other all-things
fert usui necessaria. Ager ubique fertilis, compascuus et
it-bears for-use necessary the-land everywhere fertile fit-for-pasture and
silvestris; qua Thuringeam accedit aut Salam vel Renum
wooded where Thuringia it-approaches or the-Saale or the-Rhine
fluvios, ibi prorsus opimus. Ceterum iuxta Fresiam palustris,
rivers there utterly rich but next-to Frisia marshy
et aridus propter Albiam, degenerat aliquantum. Iocunda
and dry near the-Elbe it-degenerates somewhat pleasant
ubique nec minus oportuna provinciam rigat amnium copia.
everywhere nor less fitting the-province waters of-streams abundance
Nobilissimi Saxoniae fluvii sunt Albis, Sala, Wisara, qui
most-noble of-Saxony rivers are the-Elbe the-Saale the-Weser which
nunc Wissula vel Wirraha nuncupatur. Is in Thuringiae saltu
now Wissula or Wirraha is-called it in of-Thuringia the-forest
fontem habet, quemadmodum et Sala; deinde mediam
a-source has just-as also the-Saale then the-middle

cursu pertransiens Saxoniam, in vicinia Fresonum
in-course passing-through Saxony in the-neighborhood of-the-Frisians
sortitur occasum. Verum maximus Albis, qui nunc Albia
obtains its-setting but the-greatest the-Elbe which now Albia
nomen habet, etiam Romanorum testimonio predicatur, cuius
as-name has even of-the-Romans by-the-testimony is-proclaimed whose
ortum ferunt trans Bohemiam, mox Sclavos dirimit a
rising they-report beyond Bohemia soon the-Slavs it-divides from
Saxonibus. Iuxta Magdeburg in se recipit Salam fluvium,
the-Saxons next-to Magdeburg into itself it-receives the-Saale river
nec longe ab Hammaburg ipse Albia mergitur in occeanum.
nor far from Hamburg itself the-Elbe is-plunged into the-ocean
[Quartus ex magnis Saxoniae fluminibus est Emisa, qui
the-fourth of the-great of-Saxony rivers is the-Ems which
Westphalos a reliquis illius provinciae dirimit populis.
the-Westphalians from the-other of-that province divides peoples
Isque oritur in saltu Patherburnensi; currit autem per
and-it rises in the-forest of-Paderborn runs moreover through
medios Fresonum terminos in occeanum Britannicum].
the-midst of-the-Frisians boundaries into the-ocean British
Quaerentibus autem qui mortales ab initio Saxoniam
to-those-asking moreover what mortals from the-beginning Saxony
coluerint, vel a quibus haec gens primo finibus egressa
inhabited or from which this nation first from-its-borders gone-out
sit, compertum est nobis ex multa lectione veterum, istam
has found-out it-is by-us from much reading of-the-ancients this
gentem, sicut omnes fere populos, qui in orbe sunt, occulto
nation as all almost peoples who in the-world are by-hidden
Dei iudicio non semel de regno ad populum alterum fuisse
of-God judgment not once from kingdom to people another to-have-been
translatos, et ex nomine victorum provincias quoque vocabula
transferred and from the-name of-the-victors the-provinces also names

sortitas. Quippe, si Romanis credendum est scriptoribus,
to-have-obtained indeed if to-the-Roman to-be-believed it-is writers
primi circa Albiam et in reliqua Germania Swevi habitarunt,
first about the-Elbe and in the-rest-of Germany the-Suevi dwelt
quorum confines erant illi, qui dicuntur Driade, Bardi,
whose neighbors were those who are-called Driade Bardi
Sicambri, Huni, Wandali, Sarmatae, Longobardi, Heruli, Dacae,
Sicambri Huns Vandals Sarmatians Lombards Heruli Dacians
Marcomanni, Gothi, Nordmanni et Sclavi. Qui propter inopiam
Marcomanni Goths Northmen and Slavs who because-of the-poverty
soli natalis contentionesque domesticas, aut sicut dicitur,
of-the-soil native and-quarrels domestic or as it-is-said
minuendae multitudinis causa a loco suo egressi, totam
of-reducing the-multitude for-the-sake from place their gone-out the-whole
simul Europam inundaverunt et Affricam. De antiquitate
at-once Europe flooded and Africa about the-antiquity
vero Saxonum meminit Orosius et Gregorius Turonensis
indeed of-the-Saxons recalls Orosius and Gregory of-Tours
ita: 'Saxones', inquit, 'gens ferocissima, virtute et agilitate
thus the-Saxons he-says a-nation most-fierce in-valor and in-agility
terribilis, in occeani litore habitat, inviis inaccessa paludibus,
terrible on of-the-ocean the-shore dwells by-pathless inaccessible marshes
quae periculosam tunc Romanis finibus eruptionem meditans,
which a-perilous then to-the-Roman borders outbreak planning
a Valentiniano imperatore oppressa est. Deinde cum occuparent
by Valentinian the-emperor crushed was then when they-were-seizing
Gallias Saxones, a Syagrio, duce Romanorum, victi sunt,
the-Gauls the-Saxons by Syagrius the-leader of-the-Romans conquered were
insulae eorum captae'. Igitur Saxones primo circa Renum sedes
the-islands of-them taken therefore the-Saxons first about the-Rhine seats
habebant, [et vocati sunt Angli], quorum pars inde veniens
had and called were Angles of-whom a-part thence coming

in Brittanniam, Romanos ab illa insula depulit. Altera pars
into Britain the-Romans from that island drove-off the-other part
Thuringiam oppugnans, tenuit illam regionem. Quod breviter
Thuringia attacking held that region which briefly
conscribens Einhardus, tali modo suam ingreditur historiam:
writing Einhard in-such manner his enters-on history

Liber I, §§ 4–7

4–7 · THE SAXONS' COMING AND CUSTOMS

Quoting Einhard, Adam tells how the Saxons landed at Hadeln and helped the Frankish king Theoderic destroy the Thuringians, taking their land. He describes their borders, their care to marry only within their own rank, their four orders of nobles, freemen, freedmen, and slaves, their worship of Mercury in groves rather than temples, and their casting of lots.

'Saxonum gens', inquit, 'sicut tradit antiquitas, ab Anglis
of-the-Saxons the-nation he-says as relates antiquity from the-Angles
Britanniae incolis egressa, per occeanum navigans, Germaniae
of-Britain inhabitants gone-out through the-ocean sailing of-Germany
littoribus studio et necessitate quaerendarum sedium appulsa
to-the-shores by-zeal and need of-to-be-sought seats driven-ashore
est in loco qui vocatur Hadoloha, eo tempore quo
was in the-place which is-called Hadeln at-that time when
Theodericus, rex Francorum, contra Hirminfridum, ducem
Theoderic king of-the-Franks against Irminfrid duke
Thuringorum, generum suum, dimicans, terram eorum
of-the-Thuringians son-in-law his fighting land their
crudeliter ferro vastavit et igne. Et cum iam duobus
cruelly with-iron laid-waste and fire and when now in-two
praeliis ancipiti pugna incertaque victoria miserabili caede
battles in-doubtful fight and-uncertain victory with-miserable slaughter

suorum decertassent, Theodericus spe vincendi frustratus,
of-their-own they-had-contended Theoderic in-hope of-conquering cheated
misit legatos ad Saxones, quorum dux erat Hadugato. Ut
sent envoys to the-Saxons whose leader was Hadugato when
audivit causam adventus eorum, pollicitisque pro victoria
he-heard the-cause of-the-coming of-them and-promised for victory
cohabitandi sedibus, conduxit eos in adiutorium. Quibus
of-living-together seats he-hired them into aid these
secum quasi iam pro libertate et patria fortiter dimicantibus,
with-him as-if now for liberty and fatherland bravely fighting
superavit adversarios, vastatisque indigenis et ad internicionem
he-overcame the-adversaries and-laid-waste the-natives and to extermination
pene deletis, terram eorum iuxta pollicitationem suam
almost destroyed land their according-to promise his
victoribus delegavit. Qui eam sorte dividentes, cum multi ex
to-the-victors he-assigned who it by-lot dividing when many of
eis in bello cecidissent, et pro raritate eorum tota ab eis
them in war had-fallen and for scarcity of-them whole by them
occupari non potuit, partem illius, eam maxime quae respicit
to-be-occupied not could part of-it that chiefly which faces
orientem, colonis tradebant singulis, pro sua sorte sub
the-east to-tillers they-handed to-each for his lot under
tributo exercendam; caetera vero loca ipsi possederunt.'
tribute to-be-worked the-other indeed places themselves possessed
'A meridie quidem Francos habentes et partem Thuringorum,
from the-south indeed the-Franks having and part of-the-Thuringians
quos praecedens hostilis turbo non tetigit, alveoque fluminis
whom the-preceding hostile whirlwind not touched and-by-the-bed of-the-river
Unstrote dirimuntur; a septentrione vero Nordmannos,
Unstrut they-are-divided from the-north indeed the-Northmen
gentes ferocissimas; ab ortu solis Obodritos; et ab
nations most-fierce from the-rising of-the-sun the-Obodrites and from

occasu Frisos, a quibus sine intermissione vel federe vel
the-setting the-Frisians from whom without intermission either by-treaty or
concertacione necessaria finium suorum spacia tuebantur. Erant
by-contest the-necessary of-borders their spaces they-guarded they-were
enim inquieti nimis et finitimorum sedibus infesti, domi vero
for restless too and of-the-neighbors to-the-seats hostile at-home indeed
pacati et civium utilitatibus placida benignitate consulentes'.
peaceful and of-the-citizens for-the-advantages with-gentle kindness taking-thought
'Generis quoque ac nobilitatis suae providissimam curam
of-race also and of-nobility their most-provident care
habentes, nec facile ullis aliarum gentium vel sibi
having nor easily by-any of-other nations or to-themselves
inferiorum conubiis infecti, propriam et sinceram, tantumque
inferior marriages tainted their-own and pure and-only
sui similem gentem facere conati sunt. Unde habitus
to-itself like a-nation to-make tried have whence the-bearing
quoque ac magnitudo corporum comarumque color, sicut in
also and the-size of-bodies and-of-hair the-color as in
tanto numero hominum, idem pene omnibus. Quatuor igitur
so-great a-number of-men the-same almost to-all with-four therefore
differentiis gens illa consistit, nobilium scilicet et liberorum,
distinctions nation that consists of-nobles namely and of-free-men
libertorum atque servorum. Et id legibus firmatum, ut
of-freedmen and of-slaves and this by-laws confirmed that
nulla pars in copulandis coniugiis propriae sortis terminos
no part in joining marriages of-its-own lot the-bounds
transferat; sed nobilis nobilem ducat uxorem et liber
may-pass but the-noble a-noble may-lead wife and the-free-man
liberam, libertus coniungatur libertae et servus
a-free-woman the-freedman may-be-joined to-a-freedwoman and the-slave
ancillae. Si vero quispiam horum sibi non congruentem
to-a-handmaid if indeed anyone of-these to-himself not suiting

et genere praestantiorem duxerit uxorem, cum vitae suae
and in-race more-excellent shall-have-led wife with of-life his
dampno componat. Legibus etiam ad vindictam malefactorum
the-loss let-him-pay with-laws also for the-punishment of-evildoers
optimis abutebantur. Et multa utilia atque secundum
the-best they-used and many useful-things and according-to
legem naturae honesta, in morum probitate studuerunt
the-law of-nature honorable-things in of-morals uprightness they-strove
habere; quae eis ad veram beatitudinem promerendam
to-have which to-them for true blessedness to-be-merited
proficere potuissent, si ignorantiam creatoris sui non haberent
to-profit could-have if ignorance of-creator their not they-had
et a veritate culturae illius non essent alieni.'
and from the-truth of-worship his not were estranged
'Coluerunt enim eos qui natura non erant dii, inter quos
they-worshiped for those who by-nature not were gods among whom
praecipue Mercurium venerabantur, cui certis diebus
chiefly Mercury they-venerated to-whom on-fixed days
humanis quoque hostiis litare consueverant. Deos suos
with-human also victims to-sacrifice they-were-accustomed gods their
neque templis includere, neque ulla humani oris specie
neither in-temples to-shut-in nor to-any of-human face form
assimilare, ex magnitudine et dignitate coelestium arbitrati
to-liken from the-greatness and dignity of-the-heavenly-ones they-judged
sunt. Lucos ac nemora consecrantes, deorumque nominibus
have groves and woods consecrating and-of-the-gods by-the-names
appellantes, secretum illud sola reverentia contemplabantur.
calling secret that alone by-reverence they-contemplated
Auspicia et sortes quam maxime observabant. Sortium
auspices and lots as most they-observed of-the-lots
consuetudo simplex erat. Virgam frugiferae arbori decisam
the-custom simple was a-rod from-a-fruit-bearing tree cut-off

in surculos amputabant, eosque notis quibusdam discretos
into sprigs they-lopped and-them by-marks certain distinguished
super candidam vestem temere ac fortuito spargebant; mox
over a-white garment at-random and by-chance they-scattered soon
si publica consultatio fuit, sacerdos populi, si privata, ipse
if public the-consultation was the-priest of-the-people if private himself
pater familias precatus Deos, celumque suspiciens
the-father of-the-household having-prayed to-the-gods and-the-sky looking-up-at
ter singulos tulit, sublatos secundum impressam ante
three-times each took taken-up according-to the-impressed before
notam interpretatus est. Si prohibuerunt, nulla de eadem
mark interpreted has if they-forbade no about the-same
re ipsa die consultatio; si permissum est, eventuum
matter the-same day consultation if permitted it-is of-the-outcomes
adhuc fides exigebatur.'
still the-pledge was-demanded

Liber I, §§ 8–11

8–11 · SAXON AUGURIES, CONVERSION, AND BONIFACE

The Saxons read birds and horses and judged wars by single combat; they worshiped trees and the column Irminsul. Charlemagne's thirty-three years of war ended with their acceptance of baptism and union with the Franks. Adam then turns to the preachers, beginning with Boniface, the Englishman who converted the southern Germans and died a martyr in Frisia in 755.

'Avium voces et volatus interrogare proprium erat illius
of-birds the-voices and flights to-question proper was of-that
gentis. Equorum quoque presagia ac motus experiri,
nation of-horses also the-presages and movements to-test
hinnitusque ac fremitus observare. Nec ulli auspicio maior
and-the-neighings and snortings to-observe nor to-any auspice greater
fides, non solum apud plebem, sed etiam apud proceres
faith not only among the-commons but also among the-chiefs
habebatur. Erat et alia observatio auspiciorum, qua
was-held there-was also another observation of-auspices by-which
gravium bellorum eventus explorare solebant. Eius
of-grave wars the-outcomes to-explore they-were-accustomed of-that
quippe gentis cum qua bellandum fuit, captivum quoquo
indeed nation with which to-be-fought it-was a-captive in-whatever
modo interceptum, cum electo popularium suorum,
way intercepted with a-chosen-man of-countrymen their
patriis quemque armis committere et victoriam huius vel
with-ancestral each arms to-match and the-victory of-this or
illius pro iudicio habere. Quomodo autem certis diebus,
of-that for a-judgment to-hold how moreover on-fixed days
cum aut inchoatur luna aut impletur, agendis rebus
when either begins the-moon or is-filled for-to-be-done things

auspicatissimum initium crediderint, aliaque innumerabilia
the-most-auspicious beginning they-believed and-other countless
vanarum superstitionum genera, quibus implicati sunt,
of-vain superstitions kinds in-which entangled they-are
observaverint, praetereo. Haec vero ideo commemoravi,
they-observed I-pass-over these-things indeed for-this-reason I-have-recalled
quo prudens lector agnoscat, a quantis errorum tenebris
that the-prudent reader may-recognize from how-great of-errors darkness
per Dei gratiam et misericordiam sint liberati, quando
through of-God the-grace and mercy they-have-been freed when
eos ad cognitionem sui nominis lumine verae fidei perducere
them to the-knowledge of-his name by-the-light of-true faith to-lead
dignatus est. Erant enim, sicut omnes fere Germaniam
deigned he-has they-were for as all almost Germany
incolentes, et natura feroces et cultui demonum dediti,
inhabiting both by-nature fierce and to-the-worship of-demons given
veraeque religioni contrarii, neque divina neque humana iura
and-to-true religion opposed neither divine nor human laws
vel polluere vel transgredi inhonestum arbitrabantur. Nam
either to-pollute or to-transgress dishonorable they-thought for
et frondosis arboribus fontibusque venerationem exhibebant.
both to-leafy trees and-to-springs veneration they-showed
Truncum quoque ligni non parvae magnitudinis in altum
a-trunk also of-wood of-no small size into the-height
erectum sub divo colebant, patria eum lingua Irminsul
raised under the-open-sky they-worshiped in-ancestral it tongue Irminsul
appellantes, quod Latine dicitur universalis columpna, quasi
calling which in-Latin is-said universal column as-if
sustinens omnia'. Haec tulimus excerpta ex scriptis
sustaining all-things these-things we-have-brought excerpted from the-writings

Einhardi de adventu, moribus et superstitione Saxonum,
of-Einhard on the-coming customs and superstition of-the-Saxons
quam adhuc Sclavi et Sueones ritu paganico servare videntur.
which still the-Slavs and Swedes by-rite pagan to-keep seem
Qualiter autem gens dura Saxonum pervenerit ad
how moreover the-nation hard of-the-Saxons came to
cognitionem divini nominis, aut quibus praedicatoribus
the-knowledge of-the-divine name or by-what preachers
ad christianae religionis normam pertigerit, explicare locus
to of-the-Christian religion the-norm it-reached to-unfold the-place
quaerit, si prius de bello Karoli, quod cum Saxonibus
asks if first about the-war of-Charles which with the-Saxons
longo tempore profligatum est, mentionem facimus et
for-a-long time fought-out was mention we-make and
belli causas simul connectimus. Thuringi vel Saxones,
of-the-war the-causes at-once we-connect the-Thuringians or Saxons
itemque caeterae quae circa Renum sunt nationes, ex antiquo
and-likewise the-other which about the-Rhine are nations from of-old
Francis tributariae leguntur. Quibus deinde a regno eorum
to-the-Franks tributary are-read on-whom then from the-rule of-them
deficientibus Pippinus, genitor Karoli, bellum intulit, quod
falling-away Pippin the-begetter of-Charles war brought-on which
tamen filius peregit maiore felicitate; de quo idem scriptor
yet the-son carried-through with-greater success of which the-same writer
Heinhardus brevi epilogo meminit dicens: 'Susceptum
Einhard in-a-brief epilogue makes-mention saying undertaken
est igitur bellum adversum Saxones, quod magna utrimque
was therefore the-war against the-Saxons which with-great on-both-sides
animositate, tamen maiore Saxonum quam Francorum
animosity yet with-greater of-the-Saxons than of-the-Franks

dampno, per continuos triginta tres annos gerebatur; poterat
loss through continuous thirty three years was-waged it-could
siquidem citius finiri, si Saxonum hoc perfidia pateretur.'
indeed sooner to-be-ended if of-the-Saxons this the-perfidy allowed
'Omnibus igitur qui resistere solebant profligatis et in
all therefore who to-resist were-accustomed routed and into
suam potestatem redactis, ea conditio a rege proposita
his power reduced that condition by the-king set-forth
et ab illis suscepta est, ut abiecto demonum cultu,
and by them accepted was that cast-off of-demons the-worship
relictisque patriis cerimoniis, christianae fidei sacramenta
and-abandoned the-ancestral ceremonies of-the-Christian faith the-sacraments
susciperent et Francis adunati, unus cum eis populus
they-should-receive and to-the-Franks united one with them people
efficerentur'. Tractumque per tot annos bellum, ita
should-be-made and-drawn-out through so-many years the-war so
constat esse finitum. Nunc autem spiritales animarum
it-is-agreed to-have-been ended now moreover the-spiritual of-souls
triumphos ad scribendum succincti, praedicatoribus, de his
triumphs for writing girded about-the-preachers of those
qui ferocissimos Germaniae populos ad divinam religionem
who the-most-fierce of-Germany peoples to divine religion
perduxerint, tale sumamus exordium.
led-through such let-us-take a-beginning
Primus omnium qui australes Germaniae partes, ydolorum
the-first of-all who the-southern of-Germany parts of-idols
cultui deditas, ad cognitionem divinae ac christianae
to-the-worship given to the-knowledge of-divine and Christian
religionis adduxit, Winifridus erat natione Anglus, verus
religion brought Winfrid was by-nation an-Englishman a-true
Christi philosophus, cui postea cognomentum ex virtute
of-Christ philosopher to-whom afterward the-surname from virtue

erat Bonefacius. Et quamvis alii scriptorum vel Gallum
was Boniface and although others of-the-writers either Gall
in Alemannia vel Hemmerannum in Baioaria sive Kylianum
in Alamannia or Emmeram in Bavaria or Kilian
in Francia seu certe Willebrordum in Fresia priores verbum
in Francia or surely Willibrord in Frisia earlier the-word
Dei asserant praedicasse, hic tamen omnes alios, uti Paulus
of-God assert to-have-preached he yet all others like Paul
apostolus, studio ac praedicationis labore antevenit. Ipse enim,
the-apostle in-zeal and of-preaching in-labor outstripped he for
ut in Gestis suis legitur, apostolicae sedis auctoritate fultus,
as in the-Deeds his is-read of-the-apostolic see by-the-authority supported
legationem ad gentes suscepit, Teutonumque populos, apud
the-mission to the-nations undertook and-of-the-Teutons the-peoples among
quos nunc et summa imperii Romani et divini cultus
whom now both the-height of-the-empire Roman and of-divine worship
reverentia viget ac floret, ecclesiis, doctrina virtutibusque
reverence thrives and flourishes with-churches doctrine and-virtues
illustravit. Quorum etiam provincias in episcopatus
he-made-illustrious whose also provinces into bishoprics
distribuens, seorsum Francos cis Rhenum, Hessones
distributing separately the-Franks on-this-side-of the-Rhine the-Hessians
ac Thuringos, qui Saxonum confines sunt, primitivo quodam
and Thuringians who of-the-Saxons neighbors are with-a-first certain
laboris sui fructu Christo et ecclesiae copulavit. Tandemque
of-labor his fruit to-Christ and to-the-church joined and-at-last
a Fresonibus, quos iam ante ad fidem converterat, illustri
by the-Frisians whom already before to the-faith he-had-converted with-illustrious
martyrio coronatus est. Gesta eius plenaria manu a discipulis
martyrdom crowned was the-deeds his with-full hand by disciples
edita sunt, qui eum ferunt agonizasse cum aliis quinquaginta
published were who him report to-have-struggled with other fifty

et amplius commilitonibus suis, anno ordinationis suae 37.
and more fellow-soldiers his in-the-year of-ordination his 37th
Ipse est annus dominicae incarnationis 755, Pippini iunioris 14.
that is the-year of-the-Lord's incarnation 755 of-Pippin the-younger 14th

Liber I, § 12

12 · WILLEHAD

After Boniface's death Willehad, another Englishman, preached in Frisia and was sent by King Charles into northern Saxony and across the Elbe. When Widukind's rebellion drove him out he went to Rome and then to Willibrord's tomb in Gaul, where he lived two years in retreat. After Widukind's baptism Saxony was divided into eight bishoprics under Mainz and Cologne, and the charter of the division is kept at Bremen.

Post passionem sancti Bonifacii Willehadus, et ipse
after the-passion of-saint Boniface Willehad and himself
Angligena, fervens amore martyrii, properavit in Fresiam,
English-born burning with-love of-martyrdom hastened into Frisia
ubi consistens ad sepulcrum beati martyris, paganos facti
where staying at the-tomb of-the-blessed martyr pagans made
penitentes suscepit et credentium multa milia baptizavit.
penitents he-received and of-believers many thousands baptized
Deinde cunctam in circuitu provinciam cum discipulis
then all in the-circuit the-province with disciples
perlustrans, ydola confregisse populosque ad culturam veri
traversing idols to-have-broken and-the-peoples to the-worship of-the-true
Dei euangelizasse, tunc et gentilium zelo fustibus
God to-have-evangelized then also of-the-gentiles by-the-zeal with-clubs
percussus et gladio legitur ad iugulandum proscriptus.
struck and with-the-sword is-read for slaughtering proscribed

Licet gratia Dei maioribus eum predestinaret titulis, suae
although the-grace of-God for-greater him predestined titles to-his
tamen voluntati et studio nichilominus erat ad martyrium.
yet will and zeal no-less he-was for martyrdom
Post haec missus in Saxoniam a Karolo rege, primus
after these-things sent into Saxony by Charles the-king first
omnium doctorum maritimas et boreales Saxoniae partes
of-all teachers the-coastal and northern of-Saxony parts
ac Transalbianos populos ad christianam fidem provocavit.
and the-Transalbian peoples to the-Christian faith he-summoned
Septem annos praedicasse dicitur eandem regionem, usque
seven years to-have-preached he-is-said the-same region all-the-way
ad annum rebellionis Saxonum duodecimum, cum Widichind
to the-year of-the-rebellion of-the-Saxons twelfth when Widukind
persecutionem movens in christianos, Francorum terminos
persecution moving against the-Christians of-the-Franks the-borders
usque ad Renum vastabat. In qua persecutione discipuli
all-the-way to the-Rhine was-laying-waste in which persecution disciples
sancti Willehadi quidam Bremae, multi per Fresiam, ceteri
of-saint Willehad some at-Bremen many through Frisia others
trans Albiam passi leguntur. Unde confessor Dei,
across the-Elbe to-have-suffered are-read whence the-confessor of-God
maius adhuc lucrum expectans de conversione plurimorum,
greater still gain awaiting from the-conversion of-very-many
dicitur secundum euangelicum praeceptum de civitate in
is-said according-to the-Gospel precept from city into
civitatem fugisse, dispersisque sociis ad praedicandum,
city to-have-fled and-scattered the-companions for preaching
ipse Romam venisse cum Liudgero. Ubi sanctissimi papae
himself to-Rome to-have-come with Liudger where of-the-most-holy pope
Adriani consolatione relevati, Liudgerus in Montem Cassinum
Hadrian by-the-consolation relieved Liudger into Monte Cassino

recessit ad confessionem sancti Benedicti, Willehadus in
withdrew to the-confession of-saint Benedict Willehad into
Galliam repedavit ad sepulchrum sancti Willebrordi. Itaque
Gaul went-back to the-tomb of-saint Willibrord and-so
biennium uterque reclusi, contemplativae vitae operam dabant,
two-years each shut-in of-contemplative life effort gave
adprime orantes pro persecutoribus et gente Saxonum, ne
especially praying for the-persecutors and the-nation of-the-Saxons lest
iactum in eis semen verbi Dei inimicus homo zizaniis
the-cast in them seed of-the-word of-God the-enemy man with-tares
oppleret, impletumque in eis est quod scriptura dicit:
should-fill-up and-fulfilled in them was what scripture says
'Multum valet deprecatio iusti assidua'. Haec de
much avails the-prayer of-the-just-man assiduous these-things from
Vita eius ad sensum excerpta protulimus. Transacto igitur
the-Life his to the-sense excerpted we-have-brought-forth passed therefore
biennio, quod est anno Karoli octavodecimo, Widichind,
the-two-years which is in-the-year of-Charles eighteenth Widukind
incentor rebellionis, ad fidem Karoli venit, baptizatusque est
the-instigator of-the-rebellion to the-faith of-Charles came and-baptized was
ipse cum aliis Saxonum magnatibus, et tunc demum Saxonia
himself with other of-the-Saxons magnates and then at-last Saxony
subacta in provintiam redacta est. Quae simul in octo
subdued into a-province reduced was which at-once into eight
episcopatus divisa, Mogontino et Coloniensi archiepiscopis est
bishoprics divided to-the-Mainz and Cologne archbishops was
subiecta. Cuius exemplar divisionis, quod ex praecepto regis
subjected of-which the-copy of-the-division which by the-command of-the-king
in Bremensi ecclesia servatur, cognosci potest his verbis:
in the-Bremen church is-kept to-be-known can in-these words

Liber I, § 13

13 · CHARLEMAGNE'S CHARTER FOR BREMEN

Adam copies the charter. Charles gives thanks that God has subdued the Saxons, grants them their former liberty under the tithe, and founds at Bremen on the Weser a church and episcopal see for Willehad, with ten districts, seventy manses, and part of Frisia. He sets the boundaries of the diocese stream by stream and marsh by marsh, dated 788 at Speyer.

'In nomine domini Dei et salvatoris nostri Iesu Christi,
in the-name of-the-Lord God and savior our Jesus Christ
Karolus, divina ordinante providentia rex. Si domino Deo
Charles by-divine ordaining providence king if by-the-Lord God
exercituum succurrente in bellis victoria potiti, in illo
of-hosts helping in wars victory having-gained in him
et non in nobis gloriamur, et in hoc seculo pacem et
and not in ourselves we-glory and in this world peace and
prosperitatem, et in futuro perpetuae mercedis retributionem
prosperity and in the-future of-perpetual reward the-recompense
nos promereri confidimus. Quapropter noverint omnes Christi
we to-merit trust wherefore let-know all of-Christ
fideles, quod Saxones, quos progenitoribus nostris ob
the-faithful that the-Saxons whom to-forefathers our on-account-of
suae pertinatiam perfidiae semper indomabiles, ipsique Deo
their obstinacy of-perfidy always untamable and-themselves to-God
et nobis tamdiu rebelles, quousque illius, non nostra, virtute
and to-us so-long rebellious until by-his not our strength
ipsos et bellis vicimus et ad baptismi gratiam Deo annuente
them both in-wars we-conquered and to of-baptism the-grace God nodding
perduximus, pristinae libertati donatos et omni nobis
we-led to-former liberty granted and from-all to-us

debito censu solutos, pro amore illius, qui nobis victoriam
owed tax freed for the-love of-him who to-us victory
contulit, ipsi tributarios et sublegales devote addiximus;
brought to-him tributaries and subject-to-law devoutly we-have-assigned
videlicet, ut qui nostrae potestatis iugum hactenus ferre
namely that they-who of-our power the-yoke hitherto to-bear
detrectaverunt, victi iam, Deo gratias, et armis et fide,
refused conquered now to-God thanks both by-arms and faith
domino ac salvatori nostro Iesu Christo et sacerdotibus eius
to-the-Lord and savior our Jesus Christ and to-the-priests his
omnium suorum iumentorum et fructuum tociusque culturae
of-all their beasts and fruits and-of-all tillage
decimas ac nutriturae, divites ac pauperes legaliter constricti
the-tithes and of-rearing rich and poor lawfully bound
persolvant. Proinde omnem terram eorum antiquo Romanorum
should-pay accordingly all land their by-ancient of-the-Romans
more in provintiam redigentes, et inter episcopos certo
custom into a-province reducing and among the-bishops by-fixed
limite disterminantes, septentrionalem illius partem, quae
boundary marking-off the-northern of-it part which
et piscium ubertate ditissima et pecoribus alendis habetur
both of-fish in-plenty most-rich and for-cattle to-be-fed is-held
aptissima, pio Christo et apostolorum suorum principi Petro
most-fit to-holy Christ and of-apostles his to-the-prince Peter
pro gratiarum actione devote optulimus, sibique in Wigmodia
for of-thanks the-giving devoutly we-have-offered and-to-him in Wigmodia
in loco Bremon vocato, super flumen Wirraham ecclesiam
in the-place Bremen called on the-river Weser a-church
et episcopalem statuimus cathedram. Huic parrochiae
and an-episcopal we-have-established chair to-this diocese
decem pagos subiecimus, quos etiam abiectis eorum antiquis
ten districts we-have-subjected which also cast-off of-them the-ancient

vocabulis et divisionibus, in duas redegimus provintias,
names and divisions into two we-have-reduced provinces
his nominibus appellantes, Wigmodiam et Lorgoe. Insuper
by-these names calling Wigmodia and Lorgoe moreover
ad praefatae constructionem ecclesiae in supradictis pagis
for of-the-aforesaid the-construction church in the-above-said districts
septuaginta mansos cum suis colonis offerentes, tocius
seventy manses with their tenants offering of-all
huius parrochiae incolas decimas suas ecclesiae suoque
this diocese the-inhabitants tithes their to-the-church and-to-its
provisori fideliter persolvere hoc nostrae maiestatis praecepto
overseer faithfully to-pay by-this of-our majesty command
iubemus, donamus et confirmamus. Adhuc etiam summi
we-order give and confirm further also of-the-supreme
pontificis et universalis papae Adriani praecepto, necnon et
pontiff and universal pope Hadrian by-the-command and-indeed also
Mogonciacensis episcopi Lullonis, omniumque qui affuere
of-Mainz of-the-bishop Lull and-of-all who were-present
pontificum consilio, eandem Bremensem ecclesiam cum
of-the-pontiffs by-the-counsel the-same Bremen church with
omnibus suis appendiciis Willehado, probabilis vitae viro,
all its appurtenances to-Willehad of-approved life a-man
coram Deo et sanctis eius commisimus. Quem etiam primum
before God and saints his we-have-committed whom also first
eiusdem ecclesiae tertio Idus Iulii consecrari fecimus
of-the-same church on-the-third Ides of-July to-be-consecrated we-had
episcopum, ut populis divini semina verbi secundum
bishop so-that to-the-peoples of-the-divine the-seeds word according-to
datam sibi sapientiam fideliter dispensando, et novellam hanc
the-given to-him wisdom faithfully by-dispensing and new this
ecclesiam canonico ordine et monasteriali competentia utiliter
church by-canonical order and monastic fitness usefully

instruendo, interim plantet et riget, quousque precibus
by-instructing meanwhile he-may-plant and water until by-the-prayers
sanctorum suorum exoratus, incrementum det omnipotens
of-saints his entreated the-increase may-give almighty
Deus. Innotuit etiam isdem venerabilis vir serenitati nostrae,
God made-known also the-same venerable man to-serenity our
eam quam diximus parrochiam propter barbarorum
that which we-have-spoken-of diocese because-of of-barbarians
infestantium pericula seu varios eventus, qui in ea solent
attacking the-perils or various events which in it are-wont
contingere, ad sustentacula sive stipendia Dei servorum inibi
to-happen for the-supports or stipends of-God of-the-servants there
Deo militantium minime sufficere posse. Quamobrem quia
for-God serving by-no-means to-suffice to-be-able wherefore since
Deus omnipotens in gente Fresonum, sicut et Saxonum,
God almighty in the-nation of-the-Frisians as also of-the-Saxons
ostium fidei aperuerat, partem praenominatae regionis,
the-door of-faith had-opened part of-the-aforenamed region
videlicet Fresiae, quae huic contigua parrochiae esse dinoscitur,
namely of-Frisia which to-this adjoining diocese to-be is-known
eidem Bremensi ecclesiae suoque provisori Willehado
to-the-same Bremen church and-to-its overseer Willehad
episcopo eiusque successoribus perpetualiter delegavimus
bishop and-to-his successors perpetually we-have-assigned
retinendam. Et quia casus praeteritorum cautos nos faciunt
to-be-kept and since the-falls of-things-past cautious us make
in futurum, ne quis, quod non optamus, aliquam sibi
for the-future lest anyone which not we-wish any for-himself
in eadem diocesi usurpet potestatem, certo eam limite
in the-same diocese should-usurp power by-fixed it boundary
fecimus terminari, eique hos terminos, mare occeanum,
we-have-had to-be-bounded and-to-it these bounds the-sea ocean

Albiam fluvium, Liam, Steinbach, Hasalam, Wimarcham,
the-Elbe river the-Lühe Steinbach Hasalam Wimarcham
Sneidbach, Ostam, Mulimbach, Motam, paludem quae dicitur
Sneidbach the-Oste Mulimbach Motam the-marsh which is-called
Sigefridismor, Quistinam, Chissenmor, Ascbroch, Wissebroch,
Sigefridismor Quistinam Chissenmor Ascbroch Wissebroch
Bivernam, Uternam, iterumque Ostam, ab Osta vero usque
Bivernam Uternam and-again the-Oste from the-Oste indeed up-to
quo perveniatur ad paludem quae dicitur Chaltenbach,
where one-may-arrive at the-marsh which is-called Chaltenbach
deinde paludem ipsam usque in Wemmam fluvium, a
then the-marsh itself all-the-way into the-Wümme river from
Wemma vero Bicinam, Faristinam usque in Wirraham
the-Wümme indeed Bicinam Faristinam all-the-way into the-Weser
fluvium, de hinc ab orientali parte eiusdem fluminis viam
river from there from the-eastern part of-the-same river the-road
publicam, quae dicitur Hessewech, Sturmegoe et Lorgoe
public which is-called Hessewech Sturmegoe and Lorgoe
disterminantem, Scebbasam. Alapam, Chaldhowa, iterumque
dividing Scebbasam Alapam Chaldhowa and-again
Wirraham, ex occidentali autem parte viam publicam, quae
the-Weser from the-western moreover part the-road public which
dicitur Folcwech, Derue et Lorgoe dividentem, usque in
is-called Folcwech Derue and Lorgoe dividing all-the-way into
Huntam flumen, dein ipsum flumen, et Amrinum lucum
the-Hunte river then itself the-river and Amrinum the-grove
silvestrem, quem incolae loci Windloch nominant,
wooded which the-inhabitants of-the-place Windloch name
Finolam, Waldesmor, Bercbol, Endiriad paludem, Emisgoe et
Finolam Waldesmor Bercbol Endiriad the-marsh Emisgoe and
Ostergoe disterminantem, Brustlacho, Biberlacho, iterumque
Ostergoe dividing Brustlacho Biberlacho and-again

mare, firmos et intransibiles circumscribi iussimus. Et
the-sea firm and impassable to-be-drawn-round we-have-ordered and
ut huius donationis ac circumscriptionis auctoritas nostris
that of-this donation and circumscription the-authority in-our
futurisque temporibus Domino protegente valeat inconvulsa
and-future times the-Lord protecting may-avail unshaken
manere, manu propria subscripsimus et anuli nostri
to-remain with-hand own we-have-subscribed and of-ring our
inpressione signare iussimus.
by-impression to-seal we-have-ordered
Signum domni Karoli imperatoris ac regis invictissimi.
the-sign of-lord Charles emperor and king most-invincible
Hildibaldus archiepiscopus Coloniensis et sacri palatii
Hildibald archbishop of-Cologne and of-the-sacred palace
capellanus recognovi. Data pridie Idus Iulii, anno
chaplain I-have-reviewed given on-the-day-before the-Ides of-July in-the-year
dominicae incarnationis septingentesimo octogesimo octavo,
of-the-Lord's incarnation seven-hundred eighty eighth
indictione duodecima, anno autem regni domni Karoli
in-the-indiction twelfth in-the-year moreover of-the-reign of-lord Charles
vicesimo primo. Actum in palatio Nemetensi feliciter, Amen.'
twenty first done in the-palace of-Speyer happily amen

Liber I, §§ 14–16

14–16 · WILLEHAD'S DEATH, WILLERIC, AND GODFRED

Willehad died at Blexen in Frisia and was buried at Bremen. Willeric succeeded him; Charles founded a church at Hamburg under Heridag, meaning it as metropolis of the Slavs and Danes, but Heridag's death and the cares of the realm prevented it. The Danish king Godfred threatened war; his successor Hemming made peace with the Eider as boundary, and Charles soon died.

Sedit igitur domnus et pater noster Willehadus post
sat therefore lord and father our Willehad after
ordinationem suam annos duos, menses 3, dies 26,
ordination his years two months 3 days 26
praedicavitque tam Fresos quam Saxones post martyrium
and-preached both the-Frisians and Saxons after the-martyrdom
sancti Bonifacii omnes annos triginta quinque. Obiit autem
of-saint Boniface all years thirty five died moreover
senex et plenus dierum in Fresia, in villa Pleccazze,
an-old-man and full of-days in Frisia in the-estate Blexen
quae sita est in Rustris. Corpus eius Bremam deportatum,
which situated is in Rüstringen the-body his to-Bremen carried
in basilica sancti Petri, quam ipse aedificavit, sepultum
in the-basilica of-saint Peter which he-himself built buried
est. Transitus eius celebratur festivis gaudiis sexto Idus
was the-passing his is-celebrated with-festive joys on-the-sixth Ides
Novembris, ordinatio tertio Idus Iulii. Extat vitae
of-November the-ordination on-the-third Ides of-July there-exists of-the-life
actuumque eius insignis liber, quem successor eius quartus
and-deeds his a-notable book which the-successor his fourth

fideli stilo exaravit Anscarius. Ad cuius lectionem, quia
with-faithful pen wrote-out Ansgar to whose reading since
nos ad alia properamus, cupientem scire transmittimus.
we to other-things hasten one-desiring to-know we-send-across
Proximum sancto Willehado ex discipulis eius Willericum in
the-next to-saint Willehad from disciples his Willeric in
Bremensi ecclesia praefuisse legimus, [quem alii Willeharium
the-Bremen church to-have-presided we-read whom others Willehar
nuncupant]. Seditque annos quinquaginta usque ad annum
call and-he-sat years fifty all-the-way to the-year
Ludvici senioris penultimum. Cum vero scriptum sit in
of-Louis the-elder next-to-last when indeed written it-is in
Libro donationum sive traditionum Bremensis ecclesiae a.
the-Book of-donations or of-conveyances of-the-Bremen church from
37. Karoli usque ad 25. annum Ludvici praesedisse
the-37th of-Charles all-the-way to the-25th year of-Louis to-have-presided
Willericum, 12 anni minus reperiuntur ab eo quem
Willeric 12 years fewer are-found than that which
praediximus numero. Et credi potest tanto tempore
we-have-said-before in-number and to-be-believed it-can for-so-long a-time
Bremensem episcopatum cessasse, quemadmodum et alios
the-Bremen bishopric to-have-lapsed just-as also others
propter novellam gentis Saxonum conversionem, qui nondum
because-of the-new of-the-nation of-the-Saxons conversion who not-yet
se episcopali ditione regi patiebantur: maxime cum,
themselves by-episcopal rule to-be-governed allowed most-of-all since
nullis fere annis a bello vacantibus, tandem Saxones
by-no almost years from war being-free at-last the-Saxons
ita profligati legantur, ut ex hiis qui incolunt utrasque
so routed are-read that from those who inhabit both
ripas Albis fluminis 10 milia hominum cum mulieribus
banks of-the-Elbe river 10 thousand men with women

et parvulis in Franciam translati sint. Et hic est annus
and little-ones into Francia transferred were and this is the-year
diuturni Saxonum belli tricesimus tertius, quem Francorum
of-the-long-lasting of-the-Saxons war thirty third which of-the-Franks
historici ponunt memorabilem; scilicet Karoli imperatoris
the-historians set-down as-memorable namely of-Charles the-emperor
tricesimum septimum. Quo tempore cum Sclavorum
thirty seventh at-which time when of-the-Slavs
quoque gentes Francorum imperio subicerentur, fertur
also the-nations of-the-Franks to-the-empire were-subjected it-is-reported
Karolus Hammaburg civitatem Nordalbingorum, extructa
Charles Hamburg city of-the-Nordalbingians built
ibidem ecclesia, Heridago cuidam sancto viro, quem loci
there a-church to-Heridag a-certain holy man whom of-the-place
episcopum designavit, ad regendum commendasse. Cui etiam
bishop he-designated for ruling to-have-entrusted to-whom also
propter infestacionem barbaricam, ubi interdum posset
because-of harassment barbarian where at-times he-might-be-able
consistere, cellam Rodnach in Gallia donavit, disponens eandem
to-stay a-cell Rodnach in Gaul he-gave arranging the-same
Hammaburgensem ecclesiam, cunctis Sclavorum Danorumque
Hamburg church for-all of-the-Slavs and-Danes
gentibus metropolem statuere. In qua re ad perfectum
nations a-metropolis to-establish in which matter to completion
ducenda et mors Heridagi presbyteri et occupatio regni
to-be-led both the-death of-Heridag the-presbyter and the-business of-the-kingdom
Karolum imperatorem, ne desiderata compleret, impedivit.
Charles the-emperor lest the-desired he-should-fulfill prevented
Legimus in Libro donationum Bremensis ecclesiae Willericum
we-read in the-Book of-donations of-the-Bremen church Willeric
Bremensem episcopum Transalbianos etiam ante Ansgarium
the-Bremen bishop to-the-Transalbians also before Ansgar

praedicasse et ecclesiam in Milindorp frequenter visitasse,
to-have-preached and the-church in Meldorf often to-have-visited
usque ad tempus quo Hammaburg metropolis facta est.
all-the-way to the-time when Hamburg a-metropolis made was
Et quoniam mentionem Danorum semel fecimus, dignum
and since mention of-the-Danes once we-have-made worthy
memoria videtur, quod victoriosissimus imperator Karolus, qui
of-memory it-seems that the-most-victorious emperor Charles who
omnia regna Europae subiecerat, novissimum cum Danis
all the-kingdoms of-Europe had-subjected the-last with the-Danes
bellum suscepisse narratur. Nam Dani et ceteri qui
war to-have-undertaken is-told for the-Danes and the-others who
trans Daniam sunt populi ab istoricis Francorum omnes
beyond Denmark are peoples by the-historians of-the-Franks all
Nordmanni vocantur. Quorum rex Gotafridus iam antea
Northmen are-called whose king Godfred already before
Fresis, itemque Nordalbingis, Obodritis et aliis Sclavorum
the-Frisians and-likewise the-Nordalbingians the-Obodrites and other of-the-Slavs
populis tributo subactis, ipsi Karolo bellum minatus est. Haec
peoples to-tribute subdued himself to-Charles war threatened has this
dissensio voluntatem imperatoris vel maxime de Hammaburg
dissension the-will of-the-emperor or most-of-all about Hamburg
retardavit. Tandem extincto celitus Gotafrido, Hemming
delayed at-last extinguished from-heaven Godfred Hemming
successit patruelis eius, qui mox pacem cum imperatore faciens,
succeeded cousin his who soon peace with the-emperor making
Egdoram fluvium accepit regni terminum. Nec multo post
the-Eider river received of-the-kingdom as-the-boundary nor much after
clarissimus imperator Karolus obiens Ludvicum filium heredem
the-most-renowned emperor Charles dying Louis his-son heir

imperii reliquit. Cuius transitus ad superos contigit anno
of-the-empire left whose passing to those-above happened in-the-year
Willerici vicesimo quinto, die quinta ante Kalendas Februarii.
of-Willeric twenty fifth on-the-day fifth before the-Kalends of-February

Liber I, §§ 17–18

17–18 · ANSGAR'S MISSION AND HAMBURG MADE A METROPOLIS

Louis the Pious gave the Transalbian province to Bremen and Verden. Harald the Dane was baptized at Mainz, and Ansgar, a monk of Corvey, went with him to Denmark and then into Sweden, where King Björn let him preach. In 832 Louis made Hamburg the metropolis for the Danes, Swedes, and Slavs, and Ansgar was consecrated its first archbishop.

Ludewicus voluntatem patris oblitus provinciam
Louis the-will of-his-father having-forgotten the-province
transalbianam Bremensi et Ferdensi episcopis commendavit.
Transalbian to-the-Bremen and Verden bishops entrusted
A quo tempore incipiunt Gesta sancti Anscarii. Et quoniam
from which time begin the-Deeds of-saint Ansgar and since
borealium gentium hystoria nostram, id est Bremensem
of-the-northern nations the-history our that is the-Bremen
ecclesiam in parte respicit, disposui, nec inutiliter, ut
church in part concerns I-have-arranged not uselessly as
arbitror, passim occurrentia tangere Danorum acta. Per
I-think here-and-there occurring to-touch-on of-the-Danes the-acts through
idem tempus Hemmingo Danorum rege mortuo, Sigafrid
the-same time Hemming of-the-Danes the-king dead Sigfred
et Anulo, nepotes Godafridi, cum inter se de primatu
and Anulo nephews of-Godfred when among themselves about the-primacy
regni convenire non possent, praelio sceptrum diviserunt,
of-the-kingdom to-agree not could by-battle the-scepter divided

in qua congressione 11 milibus hominum interemptis, reges
in which encounter 11 thousand men slain kings
ambo ceciderunt. Pars Anulonis cruenta victoria potiti,
both fell the-party of-Anulo bloody victory having-gained
Reginfridum et Haraldum in regnum posuerunt. Moxque
Reginfred and Harald in the-kingdom set and-soon
Reginfridus ab Haraldo pulsus classe piraticam exercuit;
Reginfred by Harald driven-out with-a-fleet piracy practiced
Haraldus cum imperatore foedus iniit. Hystoria Francorum
Harald with the-emperor a-treaty entered the-history of-the-Franks
haec plenius exequitur. In diebus illis scribitur, quod
these-things more-fully pursues in days those it-is-written that
Ebo Remensis, cum de salute gentium religionis studio
Ebo of-Reims when about the-salvation of-the-nations with-zeal of-religion
ferveret, legationem ad gentes cum Halitgario suscepit a
he-burned the-mission to the-nations with Halitgar undertook from
Pascali papa, quam postea noster Anscarius divina opitulante
Paschal the-pope which afterward our Ansgar divine helping
gratia feliciter peregit. Anno Willerici 33. Ludewicus
grace happily carried-through in-the-year of-Willeric 33rd Louis
imperator Novam in Saxonia Corbeiam exorsus, religiosissimos
the-emperor New in Saxony Corvey having-begun the-most-religious
Franciae monachos ad illud congregavit coenobium. Inter quos
of-Francia monks to that gathered monastery among whom
praecipuus legitur sanctissimus pater noster ac philosophus
foremost is-read the-most-holy father our and philosopher
Christi Anscarius, vitae ac scientiae merito clarus, et
of-Christ Ansgar of-life and knowledge by-merit renowned and
omni populo Saxonum acceptus. Eodemque tempore rex
to-all the-people of-the-Saxons acceptable and-at-the-same time the-king
Danorum Haraldus a filiis Gotafridi regno spoliatus,
of-the-Danes Harald by the-sons of-Godfred of-the-kingdom despoiled

ad Ludewicum supplex venit. Qui et mox christianae
to Louis a-suppliant came who and soon of-the-Christian
fidei cathecismo imbutus, apud Mogontiam cum uxore et
faith with-the-catechism imbued at Mainz with wife and
fratre ac magna Danorum multitudine baptizatus est. Hunc
brother and a-great of-Danes multitude baptized was him
imperator a sacro fonte suscipiens, cum decrevisset in
the-emperor from the-sacred font receiving when he-had-decided into
regnum suum restituere, dedit ei trans Albiam beneficium.
kingdom his to-restore gave him across the-Elbe a-benefice
Fratri eius Horuch, ut piratis obsisteret, partem Fresiae
to-the-brother his Horuch that the-pirates he-might-resist part of-Frisia
concessit. [Quae adhuc Dani reposcunt quasi legitima iuris
he-granted which still the-Danes demand-back as-if lawful of-right
sui]. Cum autem nemo doctorum facile posset inveniri,
their when moreover no-one of-teachers easily could to-be-found
qui cum illis ad Danos vellet pergere, propter crudelitatem
who with them to the-Danes wished to-go because-of the-cruelty
barbaricam, qua gens illa ab omnibus fugitur, sanctus
barbarian by-which nation that by all is-fled saint
Anscarius divino, ut credimus, spiritu accensus, et qui ad
Ansgar by-divine as we-believe spirit kindled and who to
martyrium aliqua occasione mallet pertingere, cum socio
martyrdom by-some occasion preferred to-attain with companion
se optulit ultroneum Autberto, non solum inter barbaros,
himself offered voluntary Autbert not only among the-barbarians
verum etiam in carcerem et in mortem pro Christo ire
but even into prison and into death for Christ to-go
paratus. Itaque biennium in regno Danorum commorati,
ready and-so two-years in the-kingdom of-the-Danes having-stayed
multos ex gentibus ad fidem converterunt christianam. Inde
many from the-nations to the-faith they-converted Christian thence

reversi, cum denuo ab imperatore postulati essent, ultimos
returned when again by the-emperor requested they-had-been the-farthest
Sueonum populos euangelii gratia temptare, intrepidus
of-the-Swedes peoples of-the-Gospel with-the-grace to-try the-fearless
atleta Christi Ansgarius, assumptis secum fratribus Gislemaro
athlete of-Christ Ansgar taken with-him the-brothers Gislemar
et Witmaro doctoribus, gaudens pervenit in Daniam. Ubi
and Witmar teachers rejoicing arrived in Denmark where
relinquens Gislemarum cum Haraldo, ipse in Sueoniam
leaving Gislemar with Harald himself into Sweden
transfretavit cum Witmaro. Ibi vero benigne a rege Beorn
crossed with Witmar there indeed kindly by king Björn
suscepti, verbum Dei publice praedicare permissi sunt.
received the-word of-God publicly to-preach permitted they-were
Multos itaque per annum integrum lucrati sunt domino
many and-so through a-year whole gained they-have for-the-Lord
Iesu Christo. In quibus Herigarium, Bircae opidi
Jesus Christ among whom Herigar of-Birka of-the-town
praefectum, quem tradunt etiam miraculis et virtutibus
the-prefect whom they-relate even by-miracles and powers
insignem. Hac legationis suae prosperitate gavisi, Corbeiam
notable by-this of-mission their prosperity having-rejoiced to-Corvey
novi apostoli cum triumpho duarum gentium regressi sunt.
the-new apostles with a-triumph of-two nations returned have
Et o mira omnipotentis Dei providentia de vocatione
and O wonderful of-almighty God providence about the-calling
gentium quam disponit artifex, ut vult, et quando
of-the-nations which arranges the-craftsman as he-wishes and when
vult, et per quem vult. Ecce quod longo prius tempore
he-wishes and through whom he-wishes behold what long before time
Willebrordum item alios et Ebonem voluisse legimus
Willibrord likewise others and Ebo to-have-wished we-read

nec potuisse, nunc Ansgarium nostrum et voluisse
nor to-have-been-able now Ansgar our both to-have-wished
et perfecisse miramur, dicentes cum apostolo: 'Non est
and to-have-accomplished we-marvel saying with the-apostle not it-is
volentis neque currentis, sed est Dei miserentis. Ergo
of-the-one-willing nor of-the-one-running but it-is of-God showing-mercy therefore
cui vult,' inquit, 'miseretur, et quem vult indurat'.
on-whom he-wishes he-says he-has-mercy and whom he-wishes he-hardens
Tunc imperator cum magnatibus sancto Ansgario de
then the-emperor with the-magnates with-saint Ansgar about
salute gentium congratulatus, ingentes Christo gratias
the-salvation of-the-nations having-rejoiced huge to-Christ thanks
persolverunt. Habito igitur generali sacerdotum consilio,
paid held therefore a-general of-priests council
pius cesar votum parentis implere cupiens, Hammaburg
the-pious caesar the-vow of-his-parent to-fulfill desiring Hamburg
civitatem Transalbianorum metropolem statuit omnibus
city of-the-Transalbians a-metropolis established for-all
barbaris nationibus Danorum, Sueonum, itemque Sclavorum
barbarian nations of-the-Danes of-the-Swedes and-likewise of-the-Slavs
et aliis in circuitu coniacentibus populis, eiusque cathedrae
and other in the-circuit lying-together peoples and-of-its chair
primum archiepiscopum ordinari fecit Ansgarium. Hoc
the-first archbishop to-be-ordained he-had Ansgar this
factum est anno Domini 832, qui est Ludvici imperatoris
done was in-the-year of-the-Lord 832 which is of-Louis the-emperor
18, Willerici Bremensis episcopi 43. Consecratus est autem
18th of-Willeric of-Bremen bishop 43rd consecrated was moreover
a Drogone Metensi episcopo, caesaris fratre germano,
by Drogo of-Metz bishop of-the-caesar brother full
astantibus atque faventibus Odgario Mogontiensi, Ebone
standing-by and favoring Otgar of-Mainz Ebo

Remensi, Heddi Treverensi et aliis; consentientibus etiam
of-Reims Hetti of-Trier and others consenting also
Willerico Bremensi et Helingaudo Ferdensi episcopis, quibus
Willeric of-Bremen and Helmgaud of-Verden bishops to-whom
antea diocesis illa commendata est; roborante id papa
before diocese that entrusted was confirming this pope
Gregorio quarto apostolica auctoritate et pallei datione.
Gregory fourth by-apostolic authority and of-the-pallium the-giving
Habentur in ecclesia Bremensi praecepta imperatoris et
there-are-held in the-church Bremen the-charters of-the-emperor and
privilegia papae sancto Ansgario data, in quibus hoc quoque
privileges of-the-pope to-saint Ansgar given in which this also
una continetur, quandam illi cellam in Gallia Turholz
together is-contained a-certain to-him cell in Gaul Torhout
vocatam ad supplementum legationis a caesare concessam
called for the-supplement of-the-mission by the-caesar granted
anno Domini 834, acta indictione 12, qui est Ludvici 21.
in-the-year of-the-Lord 834 done in-the-indiction 12th which is of-Louis 21st

Liber I, §§ 19–20

19–20 · EBO, GAUZBERT, AND WILLERIC'S CHURCHES

Ansgar preached among the Danes and Transalbians, and Ebo of Reims sent his nephew Gauzbert to Sweden as bishop under the name Simon. Willeric built churches throughout his diocese, rebuilt Saint Peter's at Bremen in stone, and laid Willehad's body in a new oratory. He died in 837 and was buried in Saint Peter's.

Ansgarius autem nunc Danos, nunc Transalbianos visitans,
Ansgar moreover now the-Danes now the-Transalbians visiting
innumerabilem utriusque gentis multitudinem traxit ad fidem.
a-countless of-each nation multitude drew to the-faith
Si quando etiam persecutione barbarorum impeditus est ab
if ever even by-the-persecution of-the-barbarians hindered he-was from
studio praedicandi, apud Turholz se cum discipulis retinuit.
the-zeal of-preaching at Torbout himself with disciples he-kept
In adiutorium praedicationis datus est ei Ebo Remensis,
into the-aid of-preaching given was to-him Ebo of-Reims
de quo antea diximus. Hic seu fatigatione itineris, sive
of whom before we-have-spoken he either by-the-fatigue of-the-journey or
corporis debilitate impeditus, sive potius occupatione seculi
of-body by-weakness hindered or rather by-the-business of-the-world
delectatus, vicarium pro se dedit Ansgario nepotem
delighted a-vicar for himself gave to-Ansgar his-nephew
Gaudbertum. Quem ipsi ambo consecrantes episcopum,
Gauzbert whom they-themselves both consecrating bishop
vocaverunt Symonem, eumque divinae gratiae commendatum
called Simon and-him to-divine grace commended
in Sueoniam miserunt. Haec in vita sancti Ansgarii
into Sweden sent these-things in the-life of-saint Ansgar
copiose descripta nobis abbreviandi locum praebuerunt.
copiously described to-us of-abridging an-opportunity have-offered

Verum quod distinctio temporum ibi obscura est, pleraque
but because the-distinction of-times there obscure is most-things
ab aliis scriptis congruentia tempori mutuavimus. Nunc
from other writings agreeing with-the-time we-have-borrowed now
ad cetera unde incepimus regrediamur.
to the-rest whence we-began let-us-go-back
Interea Willericus, Bremensis episcopus, diocesim suam
meanwhile Willeric of-Bremen bishop diocese his
sollicite circumeundo, gentiles baptizando et fideles in
carefully by-going-round the-gentiles by-baptizing and the-faithful in
Christo confortando, strennui praedicatoris officium peregit.
Christ by-strengthening of-a-vigorous preacher the-office carried-through
Ecclesias ubique in locis congruis per episcopium erexit,
churches everywhere in places fitting through the-bishopric he-raised
tres vero Bremae, quarum primam, scilicet domum sancti
three indeed at-Bremen of-which the-first namely the-house of-saint
Petri, de lignea lapideam fecit et corpus sancti Willehadi
Peter from wooden stone he-made and the-body of-saint Willehad
exinde translatum in australi, quod fecit, oratorio recondidit.
thence translated in the-southern which he-made oratory laid-away
Quod etiam scriptor Vitae eius noluit praeterire. Narrant
which also the-writer of-the-Life his did-not-wish to-pass-over relate
quoque posteri hoc factum pro timore piratarum, qui propter
also later-men this done for fear of-the-pirates who because-of
virtutem miraculorum confessoris nostri corpus auferre
the-power of-the-miracles of-the-confessor our the-body to-carry-off
maluerunt. Eodem tempore fertur beatus Ansgarius corpora
preferred at-the-same time is-reported the-blessed Ansgar the-bodies
sanctorum, quae dono Ebonis archiepiscopi susceperat, trans
of-saints which by-the-gift of-Ebo the-archbishop he-had-received across
Albiam deportasse, et corpus quidem sancti Materniani
the-Elbe to-have-carried and the-body indeed of-saint Maternian

apud Heligonstât reposuit, Sixti vero et Sinnicii, cum aliis
at Heiligenstedten he-laid-up of-Sixtus indeed and Sinnicius with other
martyrum patrociniis, collocavit in urbe Hammaburg, [beati
of-martyrs relics he-placed in the-city Hamburg of-the-blessed
vero Remigii cimilia cum decenti honore servavit Bremae].
indeed Remigius the-treasures with fitting honor he-kept at-Bremen
Willericus igitur clerum maximum collegit, de populo vero
Willeric therefore a-clergy very-large gathered from the-people indeed
magnam ecclesiae Bremensi hereditatem acquisivit. In diebus
a-great for-the-Bremen church inheritance acquired in days
illis Karolus elemosinam optulit Salvatori ad Bremensem
those Charles as-alms offered to-the-Savior to the-Bremen
ecclesiam centum mansos. Scriptum est in Libro Donationum
church a-hundred manses written it-is in the-Book of-Donations
tercio, capitulo 1, ubi etiam crebro versu hoc repetitur:
in-the-third chapter 1st where also with-frequent verse this is-repeated
'Sacrosanctae basilicae, quae constructa est in honore sancti
to-the-most-holy basilica which built is in honor of-saint
Petri apostoli, in loco seu villa publica nuncupato Brema, ubi
Peter the-apostle in the-place or estate public called Bremen where
Willericus episcopus, servus servorum Dei, praeesse videtur.'
Willeric bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-preside is-seen
Qui obiit senex et plenus dierum anno Domini 837, qui
who died an-old-man and full of-days in-the-year of-the-Lord 837 which
est annus Ludvici 26. et penultimus. Sepultus est in domo
is the-year of-Louis 26th and next-to-last buried he-was in the-house
sancti Petri, in parte altaris aquilonali 4. Nonas Maii.
of-saint Peter in the-part of-the-altar northern on-the-4th Nones of-May

Liber I, §§ 21–25

21–25 · LEUDERIC, THE BURNING OF HAMBURG, AND RAMELSLOH

Leuderic held Bremen for eight years. Northmen burned Hamburg, its church and library; Ansgar barely escaped with the relics. Gauzbert was driven from Sweden. After Louis's death the empire was divided, Ebo was deposed, and Torhout passed out of Ansgar's hands. Ansgar founded a monastery at Ramelsloh on land given by Ikia, and Leuderic died.

Leudericus, ordine tercius, sedit annos octo. Eius annos cum
Leuderic in-order third sat years eight his years since
pro certo scire nequimus, ex eodem Libro Traditionum
for certain to-know we-cannot from the-same Book of-Conveyances
didiscimus, et Willerici diaconem fuisse et sedisse
we-have-learned both of-Willeric the-deacon to-have-been and to-have-sat
usque ad annum Ludvici iunioris sextum, capitulo 58.
all-the-way to the-year of-Louis the-younger sixth in-chapter 58
scriptum. Hunc etiam tradunt superbum fuisse: quod
written him also they-relate proud to-have-been which
exinde conici potest, quia se aliquando custodem,
thence to-be-conjectured can because himself sometimes guardian
aliquando pastorem Bremensis ecclesie gloriabatur.
sometimes shepherd of-the-Bremen church he-boasted
In diebus illis sanctus pater noster Ansgarius legationem sibi
in days those holy father our Ansgar the-mission to-himself
creditam viriliter executus, apud Hammaburg novellae
entrusted manfully having-carried-out at Hamburg for-the-new
plantationi insudavit, doctrina oris et opere manuum exercens
planting toiled by-teaching of-mouth and by-work of-hands training
ecclesiam. Saepe etiam monasterium Galliae, quod dono caesaris
the-church often also the-monastery of-Gaul which by-gift of-the-caesar

possedit, Turholz visitans, fratribus ibidem Deo militantibus
he-possessed Torhout visiting to-the-brothers there for-God serving
salutaris regulae tramitem verbo exemploque monstravit. In
of-the-saving rule the-path by-word and-example he-showed in
quorum nobili contubernio iam tunc a puero sanctus
whose noble fellowship already then from a-boy holy
effulsit Rimbertus, quem sanctus pater Ansgarius adoptans
shone-forth Rimbert whom holy father Ansgar adopting
in filium, prophetico spiritu, quo plenus erat, longe ante
as son by-prophetic spirit with-which full he-was long before
praedixit, illum suae virtutis aemulum et in cathedra pontificali
foretold him of-his virtue the-emulator and in the-chair pontifical
succedere, gratiaque meritorum in caelesti regno consortem
to-succeed and-in-grace of-merits in the-heavenly kingdom a-partner
fore. In qua re providentia omnipotentis Dei, quae olim
to-be in which matter the-providence of-almighty God which once
Heliae substituit Helyseum, in Rimberto non fefellit Ansgarium.
for-Elijah substituted Elisha in Rimbert not deceived Ansgar
Interea Nortmanni piraticis excursionibus usquequaque
meanwhile the-Northmen in-piratical raids everywhere
degrassati, Frisones tributo subiciunt. Eodemque tempore
having-raged-through the-Frisians to-tribute subject and-at-the-same time
per Rhenum vecti Coloniam obsederunt, per Albiam vero
by the-Rhine carried Cologne besieged by the-Elbe indeed
Hammaburg incenderunt. Inclyta civitas tota aut praeda
Hamburg burned the-renowned city whole either by-plunder
aut incendio disperiit. Ibi ecclesia, ibi claustrum, ibi
or by-burning perished there the-church there the-cloister there
biblioteca, summo collecta studio, consumpta est. Sanctus
the-library with-highest gathered zeal consumed was saint
Ansgarius, ut scribitur, cum reliquiis sanctorum martyrum
Ansgar as it-is-written with the-relics of-the-holy martyrs

vix nudus evasit. Excidium Hammaburg Hystoria Francorum
scarcely naked escaped the-destruction of-Hamburg the-History of-the-Franks
non tacet, et privilegia Romanorum. Hoc, ut aiunt,
not is-silent-on and the-privileges of-the-Romans this as they-say
factum est anno Ludvici senioris novissimo.
done was in-the-year of-Louis the-elder last
Tunc quoque Gaudbertus episcopus zelo gentilium a
then also Gauzbert the-bishop by-the-zeal of-the-gentiles from
Sueonia depulsus, et Nithardus, capellanus eius, martyrio
Sweden driven-out and Nithard chaplain his with-martyrdom
coronatus est cum aliis. Et exinde Sueonia septennio caruit
crowned was with others and thereafter Sweden for-seven-years lacked
sacerdotali praesentia. Quo tempore Anundus regno
priestly presence at-which time Anund from-the-kingdom
pulsus, in christianos persecutionem habuit. Herigarius,
driven against the-Christians persecution had Herigar
Bircae praefectus, christianitatem ibi solus sustentavit. Qui
of-Birka the-prefect Christianity there alone sustained who
etiam tantam gratiam fidei meruit, ut potentia miraculorum
also so-great grace of-faith merited that by-the-power of-miracles
et exhortatione doctrinae multa paganorum milia salvaret.
and exhortation of-teaching many of-pagans thousands he-saved
Scriptum est in Actibus beati Ansgarii.
written it-is in the-Acts of-blessed Ansgar
Anno Leuderici Bremensis episcopi 3. Ludvicus imperator
in-the-year of-Leuderic of-Bremen bishop 3rd Louis the-emperor
obiit. Regnum in contentione remansit, multa inter fratres
died the-kingdom in contention remained much among the-brothers
discordia, bellum maximum, in quo, ut historici testantur,
discord war very-great in which as the-historians testify
omnes vires Francorum consumptae sunt. Discordiae
all the-strength of-the-Franks consumed were of-the-discord

incentor Ebo, qui et supra filios in patrem armaverat,
the-instigator Ebo who both above the-sons against the-father had-armed
et nunc fratres intestina seditione concitaverat, proinde
and now the-brothers with-internal sedition had-roused accordingly
conspirationis accusatus, a papa Gregorio depositus est.
of-conspiracy accused by pope Gregory deposed was
Sed aliis hoc criminantibus, aliis recte factum astruentibus,
but others this charging others rightly done asserting
veritatem nos in medio relinquemus, praesertim cum a sancto
the-truth we in the-middle shall-leave especially since by holy
patre nostro Ansgario ea dilectione, qua ab initio
father our Ansgar with-that love with-which from the-beginning
secum habuit, usque in finem habitus fuerit. Lege in
with-himself he-had all-the-way to the-end held he-was read in
Vita eius et in capitulo Rhabani de fama Ebonis ambigua.
the-Life his and in the-chapter of-Rabanus about the-fame of-Ebo doubtful
Tandem mediante papa Sergio, pax inter fratres convenit,
at-last mediating pope Sergius peace among the-brothers was-agreed
regnumque divisum est in tres partes, ita ut Lotharius
and-the-kingdom divided was into three parts so that Lothar
maior natu cum Italia Romam, Lotharingiam cum Burgundia
the-greater by-birth with Italy Rome Lotharingia with Burgundy
possideret, Ludvicus Rhenum cum Germania regeret, Karolus
should-possess Louis the-Rhine with Germany should-rule Charles
Galliam, Pippinus Aquitaniam. Hac inter fratres sortita
Gaul Pippin Aquitaine with-this among the-brothers allotted
divisione, Turholz monasterium in partem concessit Karoli,
division Torhout the-monastery into the-part fell of-Charles
et sic alienatum est a iure sancti Ansgarii.
and so alienated it-was from the-right of-saint Ansgar

At ille in paupertate sua Deum glorificans, verbum Dei,
but he in poverty his God glorifying the-word of-God
cuius legatione functus est, tam suis, quam alienis
whose mission he-discharged has as-much to-his-own as to-strangers
infatigabiliter seminavit. Unde contigit, ut praedium, quod
tirelessly sowed whence it-happened that the-estate which
Ramsolan dicitur, a quadam venerabili matrona susceperit,
Ramelsloh is-called from a-certain venerable matron he-received
nomine Ikia. Hic locus in episcopatu Ferdensi positus, ab
by-name Ikia this place in the-bishopric of-Verden placed from
Hammaburg disparatur tribus rastis. Ibi sanctus Dei cenobium
Hamburg is-separated by-three rasts there the-saint of-God a-monastery
constituens, reliquias sanctorum confessorum Sixti et Sinnicii
establishing the-relics of-the-holy confessors Sixtus and Sinnicius
locavit, et alia patrocinia, quae ab Hammaburg portavit
placed and other relics which from Hamburg he-had-carried
fugiens. Ibi gregem profugum collegit et depulsos a gentilibus
fleeing there the-flock fugitive he-gathered and the-driven-out by the-gentiles
socios retinuit in eo portu. Ab eo loco Hammaburgensem
companions he-kept in that haven from that place the-Hamburg
ecclesiam visitans, Nordalbingos in fide reformavit, quos ante
church visiting the-Nordalbingians in faith he-reformed whom before
persecutio turbavit. Tum quoque ne legatio gentium sua
persecution had-troubled then also lest the-mission of-the-nations by-his
quapiam tarditate frigesceret, praedicatores misit in Daniam;
any slowness should-grow-cold preachers he-sent into Denmark
Hartgarium vero heremitam direxit in Sueoniam. Fertur
Hartgar indeed the-hermit he-directed into Sweden it-is-reported
etiam Bremam venisse, verum ab episcopo loci, qui
also to-Bremen to-have-come but by the-bishop of-the-place who
doctrinae ac virtutibus eius invidit, depulsum esse. Post
teaching and virtues his envied driven-off to-have-been after

haec Leudericus, Bremensis episcopus, obiit, et sepultus est
these-things Leuderic of-Bremen bishop died and buried was
in ecclesia sancti Petri ab australi parte altaris. Decessit autem
in the-church of-saint Peter on the-southern part of-the-altar he-departed moreover
nono Kal. Septembris, et ecclesiae diu viduata permansit.
on-the-ninth Kalends of-September and the-church long widowed remained

Liber I, §§ 26–29

26–29 · ANSGAR RECEIVES BREMEN

Louis the Pious gave the vacant see of Bremen to Ansgar, who, though the canons allowed it, long resisted lest others take offense. Ansgar made King Horik a Christian, and Horik built a church at Schleswig; Ansgar then went to Birka, where lot and assembly allowed the faith. After long dispute Pope Nicholas united the sees of Bremen and Hamburg and made Ansgar and his successors legates to the northern nations.

Tunc Ludvicus Pius, caesar inclytus, Hammaburgensis
then Louis the-Pious caesar renowned of-the-Hamburg
ecclesiae desolationem miseratus, venerabili Ansgario contulit
church the-desolation having-pitied to-venerable Ansgar conferred
Bremensem episcopatum. At ille quamvis canonum decreta non
the-Bremen bishopric but he although of-the-canons the-decrees not
ignoraret, quibus cautum est, ut episcopus, qui a sua
he-was-ignorant-of by-which provided it-is that a-bishop who from his
civitate persecutionem passus expellitur, in alia vacante
city persecution having-suffered is-expelled in another vacant
recipiatur, tamen ne pro invidia ceteri scandalizarentur,
should-be-received yet lest for envy the-others should-be-scandalized
caesari super hac re diu restitit; postremo sicut absque
the-caesar on this matter long resisted finally as without

fratrum querela fieri posset, tum solummodo consensit.
of-the-brothers complaint to-be-done it-could then only he-consented
In Vita nostri antistitis haec plenissime describuntur;
in the-Life of-our bishop these-things most-fully are-described
obscure vero notatur tempus, quod Liber Donationum
obscurely indeed is-noted the-time which the-Book of-Donations
significat apertius: anno scilicet Ludvici secundi nono
indicates more-openly in-the-year namely of-Louis the-second ninth
domnum Ansgarium ab Aldrico clerico et comite Reginbaldo,
lord Ansgar by Aldric the-cleric and count Reginbald
legatis caesaris, ductum in episcopatum. Scripta sunt in
the-legates of-the-caesar led into the-bishopric written they-are in
libro III, capitulo 20. Sed et in Vita eius haec: 'Multum',
book third chapter 20th but also in the-Life his these-things much
inquit, 'temporis fluxit, ex quo beatus Ansgarius Bremensem
he-says of-time flowed from when blessed Ansgar the-Bremen
episcopatum suscepit, antequam hoc a papa Nikolao firmaretur'.
bishopric took-up before this by pope Nicholas was-confirmed
Sanctus itaque Ansgarius receptis Bremis, annos 18 sedit.
saint and-so Ansgar Bremen received years 18 sat
Nam antea in Hammaburgensi cathedra praefuit annis 16,
for before in the-Hamburg chair he-presided years 16
qui fiunt simul 34. Hoc regalis munificentiae dono confessor
which make together 34 by-this of-royal munificence gift the-confessor
Dei valde gavisus, in Daniam festinavit. Ubi regem
of-God greatly having-rejoiced into Denmark hastened where the-king
Danorum Horicum inveniens, christianum reddidit. Is statim
of-the-Danes Horik finding a-Christian he-made he at-once
ecclesiam in portu maritimo erexit apud Sliaswig, data
a-church in the-port sea-coast raised at Schleswig given
pariter licentia, ut quisquis vellet in regno suo, christianus
equally leave that whoever wished in kingdom his a-Christian

fieret. Infinita gentilium credidit multitudo. De quibus hic
should-become a-boundless of-gentiles believed multitude of whom here
in libris hoc memoriale relictum est, plures, ut aqua
in books this memorial left is several when with-the-water
baptismi loti sunt, ab omni corporis infirmitate liberatos.
of-baptism washed they-were from all of-body infirmity freed
Quibus rebus ex voto completis, dum adhuc sanctus
which things according-to wish fulfilled while still the-saint
Dei pro gente Sueonum aestuare coepisset, cum Gaudberto
of-God for the-nation of-the-Swedes to-burn had-begun with Gauzbert
episcopo consilium habuit, quis eorum laudabile pro Christo
the-bishop counsel he-held which of-them the-praiseworthy for Christ
periculum subiret. At ille periculum sponte declinans,
danger should-undergo but he the-danger willingly declining
Ansgarium potius, ut iret, rogavit. Extimplo atleta
Ansgar rather that he-should-go asked forthwith the-athlete
intrepidus Horici regis missum rogavit atque sigillum, et a
fearless of-Horik the-king the-envoy asked-for and the-seal and from
litore Danorum transfretans in Sueoniam pervenit, ubi tunc
the-shore of-the-Danes crossing into Sweden arrived where then
rex Oleph apud Bircam generale populi sui habuit placitum.
king Olef at Birka a-general of-people his held assembly
Quem, praeveniente misericordia Dei, ita placatum invenit, ut
whom forestalling the-mercy of-God so appeased he-found that
ex eius imperio et populi consensu et iactu sortis et
by his command and of-the-people the-consent and by-the-cast of-the-lot and
ydoli responso ecclesia ibidem fabricata et baptismi licentia
of-the-idol by-the-answer a-church there built and of-baptism leave
omnibus concessa sit. His etiam ex sententia finitis,
to-all granted was these-things also according-to intent finished
ewangelista noster ecclesiam Sueonum Erimberto commendavit
evangelist our the-church of-the-Swedes to-Erimbert entrusted

presbytero et rediit. Quae in vita sancti Ansgarii
the-presbyter and returned which in the-life of-saint Ansgar
latissima gestorum narratione descripta, nos brevitate nitentes
in-the-broadest of-deeds narrative described we brevity striving-for
amputavimus. Et nisi fallit opinio, prophetia Ezechielis de Gog
have-cut-off and unless deceives opinion the-prophecy of-Ezekiel about Gog
et Magog convenientissime hic impleta videtur. 'Et mittam',
and Magog most-fittingly here fulfilled seems and I-shall-send
inquit Dominus, 'ignem in Magog, et in his qui habitant
says the-Lord fire into Magog and into those who dwell
in insulis confidenter.' Aliqui haec et talia de Gothis,
in the-islands confidently some these-things and such about the-Goths
qui Romam ceperant, dicta arbitrantur. Nos vero considerantes
who Rome had-taken said think we indeed considering
Gothorum populos in Sueonia regnantes, omnemque hanc
of-the-Goths the-peoples in Sweden reigning and-all this
regionem passim in insulas dispertitam esse, prophetiam
region everywhere into islands divided to-be the-prophecy
opinamur eis posse commodari, cum praesertim multa
we-suppose to-them to-be-able to-be-applied since especially many-things
praedicta sint a prophetis, quae nondum videntur impleta.
foretold were by the-prophets which not-yet seem fulfilled
Interea quaestio magna surrexit in regno Francorum
meanwhile a-question great arose in the-kingdom of-the-Franks
de Bremensi episcopatu, ad invidiam Ansgarii conflata. Ea
about the-Bremen bishopric to the-envy of-Ansgar fanned that
contentio diu per regnum gravi et ancipiti dissensione
contention long through the-kingdom with-grave and doubtful dissension
profligata, multis partium studiis collidebatur. Tandem
fought-out by-many of-parties zeals was-clashed at-last
orthodoxus caesar Ludvicus, compositis hinc inde
the-orthodox caesar Louis settled on-this-side and-that

contradicentium voluntatibus, praecipue Guntharii, Coloniensis
of-the-gainsayers the-wills chiefly of-Gunthar of-Cologne
archiepiscopi, cuius suffraganea prius erat Brema, super
the-archbishop of-whom suffragan before was Bremen about
his Romam nuncios direxit ad sanctissimum papam
these-things to-Rome messengers sent to the-most-holy pope
Nikolaum. Ille quod necessitas ecclesiastica persuasit, et quod
Nicholas he what necessity ecclesiastical urged and what
patrum conciliis rationabiliter fieri posse comprobatum
of-the-fathers by-the-councils reasonably to-be-done to-be-able approved
est, facile consensit. Ergo Bremensem ac Hammaburgensem
was easily consented therefore the-Bremen and Hamburg
episcopatum auctoritate apostolica copulari, et deinceps
bishopric by-authority apostolic to-be-joined and thenceforth
sanxit pro uno haberi. Cuius rei privilegia diligenter adhuc
decreed for one to-be-held of-which matter the-privileges carefully still
conservantur in Bremensi ecclesia. In quibus etiam additum
are-kept in the-Bremen church in which also added
est, quod idem papa Nykolaus tam ipsum Ansgarium,
it-is that the-same pope Nicholas both himself Ansgar
quam successores eius legatos et vicarios apostolicae sedis
and successors his legates and vicars of-the-apostolic see
constituit in omnibus gentibus Sueonum, Danorum atque
established among all the-nations of-the-Swedes of-the-Danes and
Sclavorum; quod et antea Gregorius papa concessit. Igitur
of-the-Slavs which also before Gregory the-pope granted therefore
Bremensis atque Hammaburgensis parrochiae coadunatio facta
of-the-Bremen and Hamburg diocese the-union made
est ultimo tempore sancti Ansgarii. Vita eius annum non
was in-the-last time of-saint Ansgar the-Life his the-year not
ponit, praeceptum autem regis ponit annum regni
sets-down the-precept moreover of-the-king sets-down the-year of-the-reign

vicesimum primum; privilegium papae notat annum Domini
twenty first the-privilege of-the-pope marks the-year of-the-Lord
858, qui est ab ordinatione archiepiscopi vicesimus nonus.
858 which is from the-ordination of-the-archbishop twenty ninth

Liber I, §§ 30–35

30–35 · ANSGAR'S LAST LABORS

The younger Horik, at first a persecutor, was brought to the faith, and a second church was built at Ribe. Ansgar founded houses for canons and nuns, built hospices, served the sick himself, and translated Willehad's body. He redeemed captives, wrote to bishops and kings, and reported that the church was founded among both Danes and Swedes.

Post haec scribitur in Vita beati antistitis, qualiter
after these-things it-is-written in the-Life of-the-blessed bishop how
in Daniam veniens iuniorem Horicum in regno repperit.
into Denmark coming the-younger Horik in the-kingdom he-found
Cui tempori congruit Hystoria Francorum, quae sic
with-which time agrees the-History of-the-Franks which thus
de Danis meminit: Nortmannos per Ligerim Thurones
about the-Danes makes-mention the-Northmen by the-Loire Tours
succendisse, per Sequanam Parisios obsedisse, Karolum
to-have-burned by the-Seine Paris to-have-besieged Charles
timore compulsum terram eis dedisse ad habitandum.
by-fear compelled land to-them to-have-given for dwelling
Deinde Lotharingia, inquit, vastata, et subacta Fresia,
then Lotharingia it-says laid-waste and subdued Frisia

in sua victrici conversos viscera dextra.
in their with-victorious turned bowels right-hand

Contendentibus namque ad invicem Gudurm, principe
contending for with each-other Guthorm prince
Nortmannorum, cum patruo, scilicet rege Danorum Horico,
of-the-Northmen with uncle namely king of-the-Danes Horik
tanta caede utrique mactati sunt, ut wulgus omne
with-so-great slaughter both-sides slain were that the-common-people all
caderet, de styrpe autem regia nemo omnium remaneret,
fell of the-stock moreover royal no-one of-all remained
praeter puerum unum, nomine Horicum. Iste mox ut regnum
except boy one by-name Horik he soon as the-kingdom
Danorum suscepit, ingenito furore super christicolas
of-the-Danes took-up with-inborn fury against the-Christ-worshipers
efferatus, sacerdotes Dei expulit et ecclesias claudi praecepit.
made-savage the-priests of-God drove-out and the-churches to-be-shut ordered
Ad quem sanctus Dei confessor Ansgarius venire non
to whom holy of-God confessor Ansgar to-come not
trepidans, comitante gratia divina, crudelem tyrannum sic
fearing accompanying grace divine the-cruel tyrant so
placatum reddidit, ut christianitatem ipse susciperet, suisque
appeased made that Christianity himself he-took-up and-to-his
omnibus, ut christiani fierent, per edictum mandaret,
all that Christians they-should-become by edict he-ordered
insuper et in alio portu regni sui apud Ripam extrueret
moreover also in another port of-kingdom his at Ribe he-should-build
ecclesiam, in Dania secundam. Et his ecclesiastico ordine
a-church in Denmark the-second and these-things in-ecclesiastical order
compositis, beatus pastor noster ecclesiam illam Rimberto
settled blessed pastor our church that to-Rimbert
commendavit presbytero, et reversus est ad Hammaburg,
entrusted the-presbyter and returned has to Hamburg
ubi de venditione christianorum Nordalbingos correxit. Inde
where for the-selling of-Christians the-Nordalbingians he-corrected thence

Fresos adiens, castigavit eos pro labore dominici diei;
the-Frisians approaching he-chastised them for labor of-the-Lord's day
pertinatius vero agentes igne coelesti multavit; et alia,
too-obstinately indeed acting with-fire heavenly he-punished and other-things
quae antiquis miraculis non imparia leguntur in Vita eius.
which to-ancient miracles not unequal are-read in the-Life his
Et quoniam totum eius studium erat pro salute animarum,
and since all his zeal was for the-salvation of-souls
si quando a praedicatione gentilium foris liber erat, domi
if ever from the-preaching of-the-gentiles abroad free he-was at-home
congregationum suarum curam egit. Quarum primam, quae
of-congregations his care he-took of-which the-first which
ab Hammaburg olim barbarica incursione depulsa est, ipse,
from Hamburg once by-barbarian incursion driven-off was he
ut praediximus, ad Ramsolas transtulit. Secundam in Bremis
as we-have-said-before to Ramelsloh transferred the-second in Bremen
habuit sanctorum virorum, qui habitu quidem usi canonico,
he-had of-holy men who the-habit indeed using canonical
regula vivebant monastica usque ad nostri fere temporis
by-rule lived monastic all-the-way to of-our almost time
aetatem. Terciam sanctarum virginum congregationem in
age the-third of-holy virgins congregation in
Birxinon adunavit. Ubi devota Christi matrona Liutgart
Bassum he-united where the-devout of-Christ matron Liutgart
totum patrimonium suum offerens coelesti sponso, magnum
all patrimony her offering to-the-heavenly bridegroom a-great
chorum castitatis suo ducatu nutrivit. Ad curam autem
choir of-chastity by-her leadership nourished for the-care moreover
pauperum et susceptionem peregrinorum multis locis hospitalia
of-the-poor and the-reception of-pilgrims in-many places hospices
praeparavit. Unum autem vel praecipuum habuit Bremae, ubi
he-prepared one moreover or chief he-had at-Bremen where

per se ipsum cotidie veniens, infirmis non erubuit ministrare.
by him himself daily coming the-sick not he-blushed to-serve
Quorum plurimos dicitur verbo vel tactu sanasse.
of-whom very-many he-is-said by-word or touch to-have-healed
Ipse retranstulit corpus sancti Willehadi in matricem
he translated-back the-body of-saint Willehad into the-mother
ecclesiam beati Petri apostoli, [ab illo australi oratorio,
church of-blessed Peter the-apostle from that southern oratory
quo deportatum est a Willerico]. Et tunc facta sunt
to-which carried it-was by Willeric and then done were
illa miracula, quae per merita sancti Willehadi populo
those miracles which through the-merits of-saint Willehad to-the-people
ostensa sunt ab anno Domini 861, qui est ab ordinatione
shown were from the-year of-the-Lord 861 which is from the-ordination
archiepiscopi 30. Ipse enim qui transtulit, et vitam et
of-the-archbishop 30th he for who translated both the-life and
miracula eius singulis libris comprehendit.
miracles his in-single books comprised
Sique temporum seriem diligenter computemus, ipsum est
and-if of-times the-series carefully we-reckon itself it-is
tempus quo in Saxoniam translatio sancti Alexandri
the-time in-which into Saxony the-translation of-saint Alexander
contigit. In qua illud memorabile videtur, confessorem nostrum
happened in which that memorable seems the-confessor our
cum advena martyre certasse, quis eorum videretur esse
with the-stranger martyr to-have-vied which of-them should-seem to-be
maior et in gratia sanitatum populis acceptior. Einhardus
greater and in the-grace of-healings to-the-peoples more-acceptable Einhard
in Gestis Saxonum haec dulci calamo prosequitur.
in the-Deeds of-the-Saxons these-things with-sweet pen pursues

Interea beatus Ansgarius captivos redimendo, tribulatos
meanwhile blessed Ansgar captives by-redeeming the-troubled
refovendo, erudiendo domesticos, barbaris euangelizando, foris
by-cherishing by-teaching the-household to-barbarians by-evangelizing abroad
apostolus, intus monachus, nunquam legitur ociosus. Nec solum
an-apostle within a-monk never is-read idle nor only
erga suos, verum et alios, quomodo viverent, sollicitus.
toward his-own but also others how they-should-live anxious
Episcopos etiam tam voce quam litteris, ut vigilarent
bishops also as-much by-voice as by-letters that they-should-watch
supra dominicum gregem, hos arguit, illos obsecravit. At vero
over the-Lord's flock these he-reproved those he-besought but indeed
regibus Romanorum pro sua legatione, regibus Danorum pro
to-the-kings of-the-Romans for his mission to-the-kings of-the-Danes for
christiana fide crebro mandavit. Extant epistolae eius plures
the-Christian faith often sent-word there-exist letters his many
huiusmodi. Unam vero, quam scribit omnibus episcopis de sua
of-this-kind one indeed which he-writes to-all bishops about his
legatione, quam ab Ebone orsam asserit, ita claudit: 'Deprecor',
mission which by Ebo begun he-asserts so he-closes I-pray
inquiens, 'ut apud Deum intercedatis, quatinus haec legatio
saying that with God you-intercede so-that this mission
crescere et fructificare mereatur in Domino. Iam enim Deo
to-grow and to-bear-fruit may-merit in the-Lord already for God
propitio et apud Danos et apud Sueones fundata est ecclesia
being-gracious both among the-Danes and among the-Swedes founded is the-church
Christi, et sacerdotes absque prohibitione proprio funguntur
of-Christ and the-priests without prohibition their-own discharge
officio. Omnipotens Deus faciat vos omnes huius operis pia
office almighty God may-make you all of-this work by-pious
benivolentia participes, et in coelesti gloria Christi coheredes'.
benevolence sharers and in heavenly glory of-Christ coheirs

Liber I, §§ 36–39

36–39 · ANSGAR'S DEATH AND RIMBERT

Ansgar died in 865 and was buried in Saint Peter's, and his deacon Rimbert was chosen the same day; Rimbert wrote his master's Life. Consecrated at Mainz and made a monk at Corvey, Rimbert carried on the mission by sea despite shipwreck. Adam notes the Danish kings of the time, among them the cruel Ivar, son of Lothbrok.

Supervixit autem post illam plenariam Hammaburg et Bremae
survived moreover after that full of-Hamburg and Bremen
copulationem annos septem. Sedit omnes annos 34. Cuius
union years seven he-sat all years 34 whose
depositio summa veneratione colitur 3. Non. Februarii.
deposition with-highest veneration is-kept on-the-3rd Nones of-February
Obiit anno Domini 865, indictione 13, qui est Ludvici
he-died in-the-year of-the-Lord 865 in-the-indiction 13th which is of-Louis
secundi 26, sepultusque est in basilica sancti Petri ante
the-second 26th and-buried he-was in the-basilica of-saint Peter before
altare sanctae Dei genitricis Mariae. Eadem die, qua ipse
the-altar of-the-holy of-God mother Mary on-the-same day on-which he
commendatus est, Rimbertus, diaconus eius, a clero simul
commended was Rimbert deacon his by the-clergy together
et populo electus est. Qui etiam Vitam sanctissimi patris
and people chosen was who also the-Life of-the-most-holy father
veridico sermone describens, more beati Iohannis quasi
with-truthful speech describing in-the-manner of-blessed John as-if
de alio scribens, innuit se fidissimum eius discipulorum
about another writing hints himself the-most-faithful of-his disciples
testimonium perhibere sanctitati, quam cognoverat in viro
testimony to-bear to-the-holiness which he-had-known in the-man

Dei. Hunc librum ille ad fratres coenobii direxit Novae
of-God this book he to the-brothers of-the-monastery directed of-New
Corbeiae, beatificans illos, quod talem miserint, et nobis
Corvey blessing them because such they-had-sent and us
congratulans, quod talem suscipere meruimus pastorem.
congratulating because such to-receive we-merited a-pastor
Sanctus Rimbertus sedit annos 23. Annos eius et obitum
saint Rimbert sat years 23 the-years his and the-death
decessoris sui repperimus in quodam compoto a Corbeia
of-predecessor his we-have-found in a-certain reckoning from Corvey
delato. Ceterum Vita eius a fratribus eiusdem coenobii ad
brought however the-Life his by the-brothers of-the-same monastery to
nostros data, quis fuerit et qualiter vixerit, breviter et dilucide
ours given who he-was and how he-lived briefly and clearly
comprehendit. 'Mox', inquit, 'ut electus est, a Theoderico,
comprises soon it-says as chosen he-was by Theoderic
Mindensi episcopo, et Adalgario, abbate Corbeiensi, iussu
of-Minden bishop and Adalgar abbot of-Corvey at-the-order
caesaris Mogontiam ductus est. Ubi a clarissimo pontifice
of-the-caesar to-Mainz led he-was where by the-most-renowned pontiff
Liutberto consecratus, Corbeiam venit, vestemque suscepit cum
Liutbert consecrated to-Corvey he-came and-the-habit received with
professione monastica. Cui Adalgarius abba germanum et
profession monastic to-whom Adalgar the-abbot brother and
aequivocum suum concessit Adalgarium'. Qui postea et socius
namesake his granted Adalgar who afterward both companion
praedicationis, et meruit heres esse dignitatis. Pontificale
of-preaching and merited heir to-be of-the-dignity the-pontifical
palleum suscepit a papa Nicolao, ferulam pastoralem a
pallium he-received from pope Nicholas the-staff pastoral from

caesare Ludvico, sicut in privilegiis dinosci potest. Quae
caesar Louis as in the-privileges to-be-discerned can what-things
autem secuntur, ex libro Vitae eius decerpsimus capitulo 16.
moreover follow from the-book of-the-Life his we-have-plucked in-chapter 16th
'Praeterea legationis suae officium, quod ad praedicandum
besides of-mission his the-office which for preaching
gentibus verbum Dei primitus a decessore suo susceptum
to-the-nations the-word of-God first by predecessor his undertaken
est, et postmodum sibi iure successionis quasi
was and afterward to-himself by-right of-succession as-if
hereditarium provenit, impigre executus est. Ipse quidem per
hereditary came diligently carried-out he-has he indeed by
se, quotiens occupationes aliae sinerent, eidem legationi
himself as-often-as occupations other allowed to-the-same mission
insistens, semper autem constitutos habens presbyteros, per
applying-himself always moreover established having presbyters through
quos et verbum Dei gentiles audirent et solatium captivi
whom both the-word of-God the-gentiles should-hear and comfort the-captive
christiani haberent, ad ecclesias inter ipsos paganos longe
Christians should-have at churches among themselves the-pagans far
constitutas, quodque gravissimum erat, marinis discriminibus
established and-what most-grievous was by-sea perils
adeundas. Quae discrimina ipse frequentius sustinens, cum
to-be-approached which perils he more-often enduring with
apostolo saepe naufragium pertulit, saepe etiam alia pericula
the-apostle often shipwreck bore often also other dangers
sustinuit, spe futurae beatitudinis omnia praesentis vitae
endured with-hope of-future blessedness all of-the-present life
aspera leniens, illudque apostolicum continua meditatione
harsh-things softening and-that apostolic-word with-continual meditation

revolvens: non sunt condignae passiones huius temporis ad
turning-over not are worthy the-sufferings of-this time to
futuram gloriam, quae revelabitur in nobis.'
the-future glory which shall-be-revealed in us
Qui reges Danorum suo tempore fuerint, non invenitur
what kings of-the-Danes in-his time were not is-found
in Gestis eius. In Hystoria Francorum Sigafrid cum fratre
in the-Deeds his in the-History of-the-Franks Sigfred with brother
Halpdani regnasse leguntur. Qui etiam munera Ludvico
Halfdan to-have-reigned are-read who also gifts to-Louis
caesari miserunt, gladium videlicet capulo tenus aureum et
the-caesar sent a-sword namely the-hilt up-to golden and
alia, pacem rogantes, et missis utrinque ad Egdoram
other-things peace asking and sent from-both-sides to the-Eider
fluvium mediatoribus, pacem firmam ritu gentis
river mediators peace firm by-the-rite of-the-nation
per arma iuraverunt. Erant et alii reges Danorum vel
by arms swore there-were also other kings of-the-Danes or
Nortmannorum, qui piraticis excursionibus eo tempore
of-the-Northmen who with-piratical raids at-that time
Galliam vexabant. Quorum praecipui erant Horich, Orwig,
Gaul harried of-whom the-chief were Horik Orwig
Gotafrid, Rudolf et Inguar tyranni. Crudelissimus omnium
Godfred Rudolf and Ivar tyrants the-most-cruel of-all
fuit Inguar, filius Lodparchi, qui christianos ubique per
was Ivar son of-Lothbrok who the-Christians everywhere by
supplicia necavit. Scriptum est in Gestis Francorum.
tortures killed written it-is in the-Deeds of-the-Franks

Liber I, §§ 40–41

40–41 · THE NORTHMEN RAVAGE THE EMPIRE

After the death of the emperor Louis, the Danes and Northmen ravaged Saxony, Frisia, and the Rhineland, killing a duke and bishops, burning Cologne and Trier, and stabling horses in the palace at Aachen. Rimbert gave the altar vessels to redeem captives. Through his prayers the Frisians routed the pagans at Norden, and the Danes took Northumbria and held England.

Anno domni Rimberti 12. Ludvicus pius, caesar magnus,
in-the-year of-lord Rimbert 12th Louis the-pious caesar great
obiit. Ipse Boemanos, Sorabos, Susos et ceteros Sclavorum
died he the-Bohemians Sorbs Susi and the-other of-the-Slavs
populos ita perdomuit, ut tributarios efficeret. Nortmannos
peoples so subdued that tributaries he-made the-Northmen
autem foederibus ac bellis compressos eo modo retinuit,
moreover by-treaties and wars checked in-that way he-held
ut, cum Franciam totam vastaverint, regnum eius vel
that though Francia whole they-laid-waste the-kingdom his even
minime nocuerint. Post mortem vero imperatoris
not-at-all they-harmed after the-death indeed of-the-emperor

Effera barbaries laxis regnabat habenis.
savage barbarism with-slackened reigned reins

Et quoniam Dani cum Nortmannis Hammaburgensi ecclesiae
and since the-Danes with the-Northmen to-the-Hamburg church
pastorali cura subiecti sunt, praeterire nequeo, quanta mala
by-pastoral care subjected are to-pass-over I-cannot how-great evils
per eos Dominus illo tempore fieri permiserit, et
through them the-Lord at-that time to-be-done permitted and

quam late pagani super christianos extenderint potentiam
how widely the-pagans over the-Christians extended power
suam. Quae omnia lamentabiliter scripta sunt in hystoria
their which all lamentably written are in the-history
Francorum et in aliis libris. Tunc Saxonia vastata est a
of-the-Franks and in other books then Saxony laid-waste was by
Danis vel Nortmannis. Brun dux occisus cum aliis 12
the-Danes or Northmen Brun the-duke slain with other 12
comitibus, Thiadricus et Marcwardus episcopi obtruncati.
counts Theoderic and Marcward bishops cut-down
Tunc Fresia depopulata, Trajectum civitas excisa. Sanctus
then Frisia depopulated Utrecht city destroyed saint
Rabbodus, urbis episcopus, cedens persecutioni, Davantriae
Radbod of-the-city bishop yielding to-persecution at-Deventer
sedem constituit, ibique consistens anathematis gladio
a-see established and-there staying of-anathema with-the-sword
paganos ultus est. Tunc piratae Coloniam et Treveros
the-pagans avenged has then the-pirates Cologne and Trier
succendunt. Aquisgrani palatium stabulum equis suis
burn of-Aachen the-palace a-stable for-horses their
fecerunt. Mogontia vero propter metum barbarorum instaurari
they-made Mainz indeed for fear of-the-barbarians to-be-restored
coepit. Quid multa? urbes cum civibus, episcopi cum toto
began why much the-cities with citizens the-bishops with whole
grege simul obruti sunt; ecclesiae illustres cum fidelibus
flock together overwhelmed were the-churches illustrious with the-faithful
incensae sunt. Ludvicus noster cum paganis dimicans victor
burned were Louis our with the-pagans fighting victor
extitit, et mox obiit. Luthewicus Franciae victor et victus
proved and soon died Louis of-Francia victor and vanquished

occubuit. Haec tragoedico planctu scripta in annalibus
fell these-things with-tragic lament written in the-annals
cesarum nos propter mentionem Danorum perstrinximus.
of-the-caesars we because-of the-mention of-the-Danes have-touched-on
Quid autem dicimus interim fecisse nostrum archiepiscopum?
what moreover do-we-say meanwhile to-have-done our archbishop
Require in Gestis eius capitulo 20. 'Ad redemptionem',
look-up in the-Deeds his in-chapter 20th for the-redemption
inquit, 'captivorum cunctis pene quae habebat expensis, cum
he-says of-captives all almost which he-had spent when
multorum adhuc apud paganos detentorum miserias cernere
of-many still among the-pagans detained the-miseries to-behold
cogeretur, etiam altaris vasa impendere non dubitavit'.
he-was-forced even of-the-altar the-vessels to-spend not he-hesitated
Dicens cum beato Ambrosio: 'Melius est animas Domino,
saying with blessed Ambrose better it-is souls for-the-Lord
quam aurum servare.' Preciosa ergo sunt illa vasa, quae
than gold to-keep precious therefore are those vessels which
animas de morte redimunt.
souls from death redeem
Nec incongruum videtur, quoniam de persecutione diximus,
nor unfitting it-seems since about the-persecution we-have-spoken
quae tunc late in ecclesias efferbuit, grande miraculum per
which then widely against the-churches boiled-up a-great miracle through
merita sancti Rimberti Fresonibus ostensum tangere; quod
the-merits of-saint Rimbert to-the-Frisians shown to-touch-on which
scriptor Gestorum eius nescio cur praeterierit. Sed Bovo,
the-writer of-the-Deeds his I-know-not why passed-over but Bovo
Corbeiae abba, de sui temporis actis scribens, non reticuit
of-Corvey abbot about of-his time the-acts writing not kept-silent
dicens: 'Cum modernis temporibus gravis barbarorum irruptio
saying when in-modern times a-grave of-barbarians irruption

in omni pene regno Francorum immaniter debaccharetur,
in all almost the-kingdom of-the-Franks savagely was-raging
contigit etiam eos divino iudicio ad quendam Frisiae pagum
it-happened also them by-divine judgment to a-certain of-Frisia district
devolvi, qui in remotis ac mari magno vicinis locis situs,
to-roll-down which in remote and to-the-sea great neighboring places situated
Nordwidi appellatur. Hunc igitur subvertere aggressi sunt.
Norden is-called this therefore to-overthrow they-attempted have
Erat illic eo tempore venerabilis episcopus Rimbertus,
there-was there at-that time the-venerable bishop Rimbert
cuius adhortacionibus et doctrinis confortati et instructi
by-whose exhortations and teachings strengthened and instructed
christiani, congressi sunt cum hostibus, et prostraverunt ex
the-Christians engaged have with the-enemies and laid-low of
eis 10377, pluribus insuper, dum fuga praesidium quaerunt,
them 10377 very-many besides while in-flight protection they-seek
in transitu fluviorum necatis'. Haec ille scripta reliquit.
in the-crossing of-the-rivers killed these-things he written left
Cuius rei miraculo usque hodie merita sancti Rimberti
of-which matter by-the-miracle all-the-way-to today the-merits of-saint Rimbert
penes Fresones egregia, et nomen eius singulari quodam
among the-Frisians are-eminent and the-name his with-singular a-certain
gentis colitur desiderio, adeo ut collis in quo sanctus
of-the-nation is-honored desire so-much that the-hill on which the-saint
oravit, dum pugna fieret, perpetua cespitis viriditate notetur.
prayed while the-fight was-made with-perpetual of-turf greenness is-marked
Nordmanni plagam, quam in Frisia receperunt, in totum
the-Northmen the-blow which in Frisia they-received on the-whole
imperium ulturi, cum regibus Sigafrido et Gotafrido per
empire about-to-avenge with the-kings Sigfred and Godfred by
Rhenum et Mosam et Scaldam fluvios Galliam invadentes,
the-Rhine and the-Meuse and the-Scheldt rivers Gaul invading

miserabili caede christianos obtruncarunt, ipsumque regem
with-miserable slaughter the-Christians cut-down and-himself the-king
Karolum bello petentes, ludibrio nostros habuerunt. In
Charles in-war attacking as-a-mockery ours they-held into
Angliam quoque miserunt unum ex sociis Halpdani, qui
England also they-sent one of the-companions of-Halfdan who
dum ab Anglis occideretur, Dani constituerunt in locum
when by the-English he-was-slain the-Danes set-up in the-place
eius Gudredum. Is autem Nordimbriam expugnavit. Atque
his Guthred he moreover Northumbria stormed and
ex illo tempore Frisia et Anglia in ditione Danorum esse
from that time Frisia and England in the-power of-the-Danes to-be
feruntur. Scriptum est in Gestis Anglorum.
are-reported written it-is in the-Deeds of-the-English

Liber I, §§ 42–46

42–46 · RIMBERT'S VIRTUES AND DEATH

Rimbert worked miracles in the old manner: he calmed a storm, healed a blind man, and drove a demon from a king's son. He broke a chain of captives at Schleswig by prayer and bought them with his horse. He loved the poor, wrote letters of exhortation, and died in 888, leaving his helper Adalgar as successor.

Frustra in sanctis signa et miracula quaeruntur, quae
in-vain in the-saints signs and miracles are-sought which
habere possunt et mali, quia secundum auctoritatem
to-have are-able even the-wicked because according-to the-authority
sanctorum patrum maius miraculum est, animam, quae
of-the-holy fathers a-greater miracle it-is a-soul which
in aeternum victura est, a peccato convertere, quam
into eternity about-to-live is from sin to-convert than

corpus, quod denuo moriturum est, suscitare a morte.
a-body which again about-to-die is to-raise from death
Ut autem sciamus, nec sancto Rimberto hanc gratiam
that moreover we-may-know nor to-saint Rimbert this grace
defuisse, fertur antiquorum more sanctorum
to-have-been-lacking he-is-reported of-the-ancient in-the-manner of-saints
quaedam fecisse miracula, frequenter scilicet, dum iret
certain to-have-done miracles often namely while he-went
in Sueoniam, tempestatem maris oratione sedasse, et
into Sweden the-storm of-the-sea by-prayer to-have-calmed and
cecum illuminasse per confirmationem, quam episcopali
a-blind-man to-have-enlightened through the-confirmation which in-episcopal
more faciebat in eo. Sed et filium regis dicitur a
manner he-was-performing on him but also the-son of-a-king he-is-said from
daemonio liberasse. Ubi multis astantibus episcopis spiritus
a-demon to-have-freed where with-many standing-by bishops the-spirit
immundus saepe clamabat ex ore vexati, Rimbertum
unclean often cried from the-mouth of-the-afflicted Rimbert
solum inter eos digne commissum egisse officium,
alone among them worthily the-committed to-have-performed office
ipsum ergo sibi esse cruciatui. Require in Vitae eius
him therefore to-itself to-be a-torment look-up in of-the-Life his
libro, capitulo 20. Hunc filium regis Ludvici Karolum
the-book in-chapter 20th this son of-king Louis Charles
esse arbitramur, qui novissimis archiepiscopi temporibus a
to-be we-judge who in-the-last of-the-archbishop times from
regno depositus, Arnolfum, germani sui filium, accepit
the-kingdom deposed Arnulf of-brother his the-son received
successorem. Hystoria Francorum haec veraciter acta
as-successor the-History of-the-Franks these-things truly done
commemorat in Franconford, anno caesaris Ludvici 34.
records at Frankfurt in-the-year of-the-caesar Louis 34th

Erat igitur sanctus Rimbertus cum Moyse vir mitissimus,
was therefore holy Rimbert with Moses a-man most-gentle
cum apostolo qui omnium infirmitatibus compateretur.
with the-apostle one-who of-all with-the-infirmities suffered-with
Praecipuam vero curam habuit in elemosinis pauperum et in
especial indeed care he-had in the-alms of-the-poor and in
redemptione captivorum. Unde quadam vice, cum venisset
the-redemption of-captives whence on-one occasion when he-had-come
ad partes Danorum, ubi ecclesiam novellae christianitati
to the-parts of-the-Danes where a-church for-the-new Christianity
constructam habebat in loco qui dicitur Sliaswig, vidit
built he-had in the-place which is-called Schleswig he-saw
multitudinem christianorum catena trahi captivam. Quid
a-multitude of-Christians by-a-chain to-be-dragged captive why
multa? Duplex ibi miraculum operatus est. Nam et
much a-double there miracle worked he-has for both
catenam oratione dirupit, et captivos equo suo redemit.
the-chain by-prayer he-burst and the-captives with-horse his he-redeemed
Capitulo Gestorum eius nota 18.
in-the-chapter of-the-Deeds his note 18th
Et quia vastacio Nortmannorum vel Danorum excedit
and since the-devastation of-the-Northmen or of-the-Danes exceeds
omnem credulitatem, eo plus mirum videri possit, quod
all belief by-so-much more wonderful to-seem can that
sancti confessores Dei Ansgarius et Rimbertus per tanta
the-holy confessors of-God Ansgar and Rimbert through so-great
pericula maris et terrae illas gentes intrepidi adibant vel
perils of-sea and land those nations fearless approached or
praedicabant, ante quarum impetum nec armati reges aut
preached before whose onset neither armed kings nor
potentes Francorum populi subsistere poterant. Nunc autem
mighty of-the-Franks peoples to-stand could now moreover

‘quoniam defecit sanctus, quoniam diminutae sunt veritates
since has-failed the-holy-man since diminished are truths
a filiis hominum’, vix possibile credimus
from the-sons of-men scarcely possible we-believe

Nos genus ignavum, quod tecto gaudet et umbra,
we a-race slothful which in-a-roof rejoices and in-shade

ut in tam aspero persecutionis tempore, in tam feroci, quae
that in so harsh of-persecution a-time in so fierce which
vix hominem vivit, natione, in tam remotissima, inquam,
scarcely a-man lives a-nation in so most-remote I-say
ab nostro mundo regione, quisquam vel apostolus auderet
from our world a-region anyone even an-apostle would-dare
accedere, nescientes illud cotidie et nobis dici, quod Salvator
to-approach not-knowing that daily also to-us to-be-said which the-Savior
ait apostolis: ‘Ite in orbem universum, et ecce ego vobiscum
says to-the-apostles go into the-world whole and behold I with-you
sum omnibus diebus usque ad consummationem seculi’.
am all days all-the-way to the-consummation of-the-world
Sunt alia multa quae de nostro sancto copiose in libro suo
there-are other many-things which about our saint copiously in book his
exarata sunt. In quibus illud memoriale est, quod presbyteri
written-out are among which that memorial is that of-a-presbyter
animam defuncti, quia sic in visu apparens supplicavit, 40 dies
the-soul dead since so in vision appearing he-besought 40 days
in pane et aqua ieiunans, a tormento absolvit. Decessor
on bread and water fasting from torment he-freed predecessor
eius 4 coenobia fundavit, his ille quintum addidit in
his 4 monasteries founded to-these he a-fifth added in
solitudine Buggin. Ceterum omnium districtam sollicitudinem
the-solitude of-Bücken moreover of-all strict anxiety

habens, Hammaburgensis cathedrae praecipuam curam egit,
having of-the-Hamburg chair chief care he-took
tam fratribus quam pauperibus oportuna ministrans solatia.
as-much to-the-brothers as to-the-poor fitting providing comforts
Xenodochium Bremae, quod a sancto Ansgario ad
the-hospice at-Bremen which by saint Ansgar for
sustentationem pauperum institutum est, ipse nobiliter
the-support of-the-poor established was he nobly
auxit, et non solum in episcopatu, sed ubicunque esset,
increased and not only in the-bishopric but wherever he-was
pauperibus alimoniam cum omni diligentia ministravit, nobile
for-the-poor nourishment with all diligence he-provided a-noble
verbum exhortacionis relinquens posteris, 'Non est', inquiens,
word of-exhortation leaving to-posterity not it-is he-says
'tardandum, ut pauperibus cunctis succurramus, quia quis
to-be-delayed that to-the-poor all we-may-give-help because who
sit Christus, vel quando ad nos veniat, ignoramus'.
may-be Christ or when to us he-may-come we-know-not
Elemosinam verbi incessanter omnibus ministravit; ad quod
the-alms of-the-word unceasingly to-all he-provided for which
opus dicta sancti Gregorii curavit excerpere, quae et manu
work the-sayings of-saint Gregory he-took-care to-excerpt which also with-hand
sua descripsit. Epistolae eius diversae ad plures, praecipua
his he-copied the-letters his various to many a-chief
quaedam ad virgines, in qua virginitatem corporis extollens,
certain to virgins in which virginity of-body extolling
ostendit multas in mente fieri meretrices. Tandem morbo
he-shows many in mind to-become harlots at-last by-disease
confectus et senio, quos per se non potuit, per
worn-out and age those-whom through himself not he-could through
Adalgarium adiutorem in Domino confortavit, quem etiam
Adalgar (his)-helper in the-Lord he-strengthened whom also

manibus regis commendavit. Obiit anno Domini 888,
into-the-hands of-the-king he-commended he-died in-the-year of-the-Lord 888
indictione 6. Cuius depositio est 3. Idus Iunii. Sepultus
in-the-indiction 6th whose deposition is on-the-3rd Ides of-June buried
est extra basilicam sancti Petri ab oriente, ut ipse rogavit.
he-was outside the-basilica of-saint Peter from the-east as he-himself asked

Liber I, §§ 47–51

47–51 · ADALGAR AND THE CLAIMS OF COLOGNE

Adalgar, Rimbert's coadjutor from Corvey, received the pallium in a time of barbarian raids, and Arnulf's victory over the Northmen ended their long persecution. King Svein told Adam of the Danish kings after that disaster. Hermann of Cologne tried to make Bremen subject to Cologne, and the synod of Tribur ruled for him.

Adalgarius archiepiscopus sedit annos 20. Annos eius ex
Adalgar archbishop sat years 20 the-years his from
compoto quo supra tulimus, vitam ex libro sancti Rimberti
the-reckoning which above we-have-cited the-life from the-book of-saint Rimbert
didiscimus. Capitulo 12, cum sanctus Rimbertus vestem et
we-have-learned in-chapter 12th when saint Rimbert the-habit and
professionem susciperet monasticam, mox additur: 'Ad quod
the-profession was-taking monastic soon is-added for which
ei solatium deputari placuit insignem conversatione virum
to-him as-comfort to-be-assigned it-pleased a-distinguished in-conduct man
gradu diaconem, nomine Adalgarium. Hic vir', inquiunt,
in-rank deacon by-name Adalgar this man they-say
'venerabilis in conversationis eius imitatione simul et
venerable in of-conduct his in-imitation at-once and
successionis dignitate, adhuc hodie superest, cum multis aliis
of-succession in-dignity still today survives with many others

attestans, quod sanctus pontifex Rimbertus nichil ex occasione
attesting that the-holy pontiff Rimbert nothing by occasion
curae pastoralis de monachica perfectione perdiderit', et
of-care pastoral of monastic perfection lost and
reliqua. Item capitulo 21: 'Cum iam', inquit, 'senio gravaretur
the-rest likewise in-chapter 21st when now it-says by-age was-burdened
sanctus Rimbertus, etiam continuus pedum dolor ei accessit.
saint Rimbert also a-continuous of-the-feet pain him came-upon
Unde apud gloriosissimos reges Ludvicum et filios eius
whence with the-most-glorious kings Louis and sons his
hoc optinuit, ut insignis vir Adalgarius, monachus
this he-obtained that the-distinguished man Adalgar a-monk
videlicet Corbeiae, in adiutorium illi confirmaretur, quatinus
namely of-Corvey as aid to-him should-be-confirmed so-that
ipse infirmitate detentus, in Adalgario haberet solatium
he by-infirmity held-back in Adalgar should-have a-comfort
circandi episcopatum, placita adeundi; et quando
of-going-round the-bishopric the-assemblies of-attending and when
exigeretur, vel in expeditionem vel ad palatium cum
it-should-be-demanded either on campaign or to the-palace with
comitatu suo proficisci. Impetravit etiam, ut ipse illi in
retinue his to-set-out he-obtained also that he to-him in
electione successor confirmaretur et inter consiliarios regis
election as-successor should-be-confirmed and among the-counselors of-the-king
locaretur, assentientibus fratribus et abbate monasterii
should-be-placed assenting the-brothers and the-abbot of-the-monastery
eius, ac sancta synodo haec omnia roborante'.
his and the-holy synod these-things all confirming
Ferulam pastoralem suscepit ab Arnulfo rege, palleum a papa
the-staff pastoral he-received from Arnulf the-king the-pallium from pope
Stephano. Consecratus est autem a Sundroldo, Mogontino
Stephen consecrated he-was moreover by Sunderold of-Mainz

archiepiscopo, seditque difficili tempore barbaricae vastationis.
archbishop and-he-sat in-a-difficult time of-barbarian devastation
Nec tamen legationis suae ad gentes, ut in privilegiis videtur,
nor yet of-mission his to the-nations as in the-privileges is-seen
studium omiserat, verum, sicut decessores sui, presbyteros
the-zeal had-he-neglected but as predecessors his presbyters
ad hoc opus et ipse constitutos habere curavit.
for this work also he-himself established to-have took-care
De hystoria Danorum nichil amplius aut scriptum vidi
of the-history of-the-Danes nothing more either written I-have-seen
aut ab alio visum comperi; ea forte causa reor,
or by another seen I-have-found for-that perhaps reason I-think
quod Nortmanni vel Dani tunc ab Arnulfo rege gravibus
that the-Northmen or Danes then by Arnulf the-king in-heavy
praeliis usque ad internicionem deleti sunt. Bellum
battles all-the-way to extermination destroyed were a-war
celitus administratum. Siquidem centum milibus paganorum
from-heaven administered since a-hundred thousand of-pagans
prostratis, vix unus de christianis cecidisse repertus est.
laid-low scarcely one of the-Christians to-have-fallen found was
Et ita restincta est persecutio Nortmannorum, Domino
and so extinguished was the-persecution of-the-Northmen the-Lord
vindicante sanguinem servorum suorum, qui iam per annos
avenging the-blood of-servants his which now through years
60 vel 70 effusus est. Narrat haec Hystoria Francorum.
60 or 70 shed was relates these-things the-History of-the-Franks
Audivi autem ex ore veracissimi regis Danorum Suein,
I-heard moreover from the-mouth of-the-most-truthful king of-the-Danes Svein
cum nobis stipulantibus numeraret atavos suos: 'Post cladem',
when to-us inquiring he-counted-up forefathers his after the-disaster
inquit, 'Nortmannicam Heiligonem regnasse comperi, virum
he-says Northman Heiligo to-have-reigned I-found a-man

populis amabilem propter iusticiam et sanctitatem suam.
to-the-peoples lovable because-of justice and holiness his
Successit illi Olaph, qui veniens a Sueonia, regnum optinuit
succeeded him Olaf who coming from Sweden the-kingdom obtained
Danicum vi et armis, habuitque filios multos, ex quibus
Danish by-force and arms and-he-had sons many of whom
Chnob et Gurd regnum optinuerunt post obitum patris'.
Chnob and Gurd the-kingdom obtained after the-death of-(their)-father
Anno Adalgarii 7. Hermannus, archiepiscopus Coloniensis,
in-the-year of-Adalgar 7th Hermann archbishop of-Cologne
magnis Adalgerum nostrum fatigabat iniuriis, Coloniae Bremam
with-great Adalgar our was-wearying wrongs to-Cologne Bremen
subiugare conatus. Collecta igitur synodo apud Triburiam,
to-subject having-tried gathered therefore a-synod at Tribur
Haddone Mogontino praesidente, cassata sunt apostolicae sedis
Hatto of-Mainz presiding quashed were of-the-apostolic see
privilegia et gloriosorum principum annullata sunt praecepta,
the-privileges and of-glorious princes annulled were the-charters
consentientibus, ut aiunt, iniquis decretis Formoso papa
consenting as they-say to-the-wicked decrees Formosus the-pope
et rege Arnulfo. Deinde facta subscriptione Adalgarius
and king Arnulf then made the-subscription Adalgar
archiepiscopus in cauda concilii positus est. Fabula grandis
archbishop at the-tail of-the-council placed was a-fable great
de Adelino et Widgero, qui disceptantes ad spectacula
about Adelin and Widger who disputing to a-spectacle
synodum traxerunt tragoedię lugubris. Widgerum nostrae partis
the-synod drew of-a-tragedy mournful Widger of-our side
victum et postero die mortuum, et amplius sub Adalgero et
defeated and on-the-next day dead and further under Adalgar and
Hogero omni tempore dicunt Bremam Coloniae suffraganeam
Hoger for-all time they-say Bremen of-Cologne suffragan

mansisse. Haec quoniam in eodem concilio scripta
to-have-remained these-things since in the-same council written
repperimus, verane sint an ficta, in medio relinquemus.
we-have-found whether-true they-be or invented in the-middle we-shall-leave

Liber I, § 52

52 · ADALGAR'S OLD AGE AND DEATH

After the deaths of Pope Formosus and King Arnulf, the Hungarians invaded. Adalgar, now old, took Hoger of Corvey as his helper; Pope Sergius restored the privileges of Bremen and gave him five neighboring bishops to assist him. Adam doubts that any bishops were ordained for the nations in his time. Adalgar died in 909 and was buried in Saint Michael's.

Anno deinde secundo Formosus papa obiit, quarto
in-the-year then second Formosus the-pope died in-the-fourth
vero Arnulfus rex decessit. Sequitur irruptio Ungrorum,
indeed Arnulf the-king departed follows the-irruption of-the-Hungarians
persecutio ecclesiarum. Archiepiscopus noster, valde senex,
the-persecution of-the-churches archbishop our very old
minus poterat vel inimicis resistere vel agenda disponere.
less could either the-enemies to-resist or things-to-be-done to-arrange
Quare fertur illum a monasterio Corbiensi Hogerum
wherefore it-is-reported him from the-monastery of-Corvey Hoger
suscepisse adiutorem, cuius ope fultus ac ministerio, ipse
to-have-taken as-helper by-whose aid supported and ministry he
emeritae senectutis ocio potiretur. Ita omnipotens Deus, qui
of-well-earned old-age the-leisure might-enjoy so almighty God who
aliquando iustos, ut meliores fiant, temptari permittit,
sometimes the-just that better they-may-become to-be-tempted permits
fecit etiam nostro archiepiscopo cum temptatione proventum,
made also for-our archbishop with the-temptation an-outcome

ut posset sustinere. Nam Sergius papa, qui fere per
that he-might-be-able to-endure for Sergius the-pope who almost through
totidem annos septimus erat a Formoso, calumpnias Adalgarii
as-many years seventh was from Formosus the-calumnies of-Adalgar
miseratus, privilegia Bremensis ecclesiae renovavit, et omnia,
having-pitied the-privileges of-the-Bremen church renewed and all-things
quae a Gregorio et Nicolao, decessoribus suis, Ansgario et
which by Gregory and Nicholas predecessors his to-Ansgar and
Rimberto concessa sunt, roboravit. Ad hoc quia senectutis
Rimbert granted were confirmed to this since of-old-age
pondere gravatus pontifex Adalgarius pastorale officium obire
by-the-weight burdened the-pontiff Adalgar the-pastoral office to-discharge
non poterat, circueundo, praedicando et consecrando episcopos,
not could by-going-round by-preaching and by-consecrating bishops
dati sunt ei adiutores a papa circumvicini quinque episcopi,
given were to-him as-helpers by the-pope neighboring five bishops
Simundus [Halverstadensis], Wigbertus [Ferdensis], Biso
Sigismund of-Halberstadt Wigbert of-Verden Biso
[Podarbrunnensis], Bernarii duo, [Mindensis et Osnabrugensis],
of-Paderborn the-Bernhars two of-Minden and of-Osnabrück
quorum ope senex fulciretur. Ad manum sunt privilegia
by-whose aid the-old-man might-be-supported at hand are the-privileges
Sergii papae utrisque data, quibus haec ita continentur.
of-Sergius the-pope to-both given in-which these-things thus are-contained
Mirum tamen neque satis cognitum est nobis, an aliqui
wonderful yet nor enough known is to-us whether any
episcopi in gentes ordinati sint ab Adalgario, ut privilegium
bishops to the-nations ordained were by Adalgar as the-privilege
insinuat, an haec ordinatio episcoporum inacta remanserit
suggests or-whether this ordination of-bishops undone remained
usque ad dies Adaldagi, ut melius confidimus, praesertim
all-the-way to the-days of-Adaldag as better we-trust especially

quod vastacio barbarica vixdum presbyteros inter se
because the-devastation barbarian scarcely presbyters among itself
morari consenserit. Nondum enim completae sunt iniquitates
to-stay allowed not-yet for fulfilled were the-iniquities
Amorraeorum, nec adhuc venit tempus miserendi eorum. Post
of-the-Amorites nor yet came the-time of-having-mercy on-them after
haec migravit archiepiscopus anno Domini 909, 7.
these-things departed the-archbishop in-the-year of-the-Lord 909 on-the-7th
Idus Maii, et sepultus est in basilica sancti Mykaelis, quam
Ides of-May and buried he-was in the-basilica of-saint Michael which
ipse pro dilectione magistri super tumbam eius erexit.
he for love of-(his)-master over the-tomb his raised

Liber I, §§ 53–55

53–55 · HOGER AND REGINWARD

Hoger was ordained by Cologne after a dispute; a verse calls him holy, and he once hastened by night to Ramelsloh to see that the brothers kept the vigils. In his time Danish and Slavic, Bohemian and Hungarian raids devastated the churches. Reginward held the see barely a year, when a storm drove shingles from the half-burned roofs into the faces of Hungarians who had sacked Bremen.

Hogerus archiepiscopus sedit annos 7. Et huius annos
Hoger archbishop sat years 7 and of-him the-years
repperimus in libro superiori, et quod per contentionem
we-have-found in the-book above and that through contention
ordinatus est a Coloniensi archiepiscopo. Pallium suscepit
ordained he-was by the-Cologne archbishop the-pallium he-received
a papa Sergio, ferulam a Ludvico rege. Unde fuerit, aut
from pope Sergius the-staff from Louis the-king whence he-was or

qualiter vixerit, Deo cognitum est. Invenimus tamen scriptum
how he-lived to-God known is we-have-found yet written
in antiquioribus ecclesiae libris uno versu [quis fuerit], ita:
in the-older of-the-church books in-one verse who he-was thus

'Sanctus et electus fuit Hoger septimus heros'.
holy and chosen was Hoger the-seventh hero

Sanctitati eius testimonium asserit veterum tradicio, quae
to-the-holiness his testimony asserts of-the-ancients the-tradition which
narrat eum severissimum in ecclesiastica disciplina, pro
relates him most-severe in ecclesiastical discipline according-to
consuetudine monasteria suae diocesis crebro circuisse.
custom the-monasteries of-his diocese often to-have-gone-round
Unde etiam cum apud Hammaburg consisteret, exploraturus
whence also when at Hamburg he-was-staying about-to-explore
quid fratres agerent, nocte intempesta Ramsolan ad vigilias
what the-brothers were-doing at-night unseasonable to-Ramelsloh for the-vigils
properavit matutinas. Fidelis, inquam, dispensator et prudens,
he-hastened morning a-faithful I-say steward and prudent
qui et ipse vigilans pernoctavit, suamque familiam dormire
who also himself watching passed-the-night and-his household to-sleep
prohibens, venienti sponso laetus occurrit, dicens: 'Ecce ego
forbidding the-coming bridegroom glad met saying behold I
et pueri, quos dedit mihi Dominus'.
and the-children whom gave me the-Lord
Anno domni Hogeri secundo Ludvicus Puer depositus,
in-the-year of-lord Hoger second Louis the-Child deposed
et Conradus, Francorum dux, in regem levatus est. In
and Conrad of-the-Franks duke to king raised was in
isto Ludvico vetus Karoli finitur prosapia. Hactenus etiam
this Louis the-old of-Charles is-ended stock thus-far also

Francorum tendit Hystoria. Quae deinceps dicturi sumus,
of-the-Franks reaches the-History what-things henceforth about-to-say we-are
in aliis et aliis repperimus non mendacibus libris. Aliqua
in other and other we-have-found not lying books some-things
vero recitavit nobis clarissimus rex Danorum ita rogantibus:
indeed recited to-us the-most-renowned king of-the-Danes so asking
'Post Olaph', inquit, 'Sueonum principem, qui regnavit in
after Olaf he-says of-the-Swedes the-prince who reigned in
Dania cum filiis suis, ponitur in locum eius Sigerich. Cumque
Denmark with sons his is-set in the-place his Sigeric and-when
parvo tempore regnasset, eum Hardegon, filius Suein, veniens
for-a-short time he-had-reigned him Hardegon the-son of-Svein coming
a Nortmannia, privavit regno.' Tanti autem reges, immo
from Norway deprived of-the-kingdom so-many moreover kings rather
tyranni Danorum, utrum simul aliqui regnaverint, an alter
tyrants of-the-Danes whether together some reigned or one
post alterum brevi tempore vixerit, incertum est. Nobis hoc
after another for-a-short time lived uncertain is to-us this
scire sufficiat, omnes adhuc paganos fuisse, ac in tanta
to-know let-it-suffice all still pagans to-have-been and in so-great
regnorum mutatione vel excursione barbarorum christianitatem
of-kingdoms change or raiding of-barbarians Christianity
in Dania, quae a sancto Ansgario plantata est, aliquantulam
in Denmark which by saint Ansgar planted was a-little
remansisse, non totam defecisse. In diebus illis inmanissima
to-have-remained not wholly to-have-failed in days those a-most-savage
persecucio Saxoniam oppressit, cum hinc Dani et Sclavi,
persecution Saxony oppressed when on-this-side the-Danes and Slavs
inde Behemi et Ungri laniarent ecclesias. Tunc parrochia
on-that the-Bohemians and Hungarians were-tearing the-churches then the-diocese
Hammaburgensis a Sclavis, et Bremensis Ungrorum impetu
of-Hamburg by the-Slavs and of-Bremen of-the-Hungarians by-the-onset

demolita est. Interea confessor Dei Hogerus obiit, et
demolished was meanwhile the-confessor of-God Hoger died and
sepultus est in ecclesia sancti Mykaelis cum decessore suo,
buried was in the-church of-saint Michael with predecessor his
anno Domini 915. Depositio 13. Kalend. Ianuarii habetur.
in-the-year of-the-Lord 915 the-deposition 13th Kalends of-January is-held
Huius corpus episcopi, cum post annos centum et viginti,
of-this the-body bishop when after years a-hundred and twenty
diruta senio capellula, quaereretur, praeter cruces pallii
ruined by-age the-little-chapel it-was-sought except the-crosses of-the-pallium
et cervical episcopi, nichil potuit inveniri. Et credimus
and the-pillow of-the-bishop nothing could to-be-found and we-believe
resurrectionem eius inpletam esse, quod ab aliis traditur
the-resurrection his fulfilled to-be which by others is-handed-down
in David et in Iohanne euangelista contigisse veraciter.
in David and in John the-evangelist to-have-happened truly
Reginwardus vix annum unum sedit. De cuius vita praeter
Reginward scarcely year one sat about whose life besides
nomen aliud nichil ad manum venit. Cum autem successorem
the-name other nothing to hand has-come since moreover the-successor
eius concilio apud Altheim interfuisse didicerim, quod
his at-the-council at Altheim to-have-been-present I-have-learned which
habitum est anno Conradi regis quinto, quo Hogerus
held was in-the-year of-Conrad the-king fifth in-which Hoger
etiam noster decessit, medium his Reginwardum, non vixisse
also our departed between these Reginward not to-have-lived
plenum annum deprehendi, nec privilegium eius uspiam
a-full year I-have-detected nor the-privilege his anywhere
reperire valui. In diebus illis grande miraculum fertur a
to-find was-I-able in days those a-great miracle is-reported by
posteris Bremae contigisse. Ungros scilicet incensis ecclesiis
later-men at-Bremen to-have-happened the-Hungarians namely burned the-churches

sacerdotes ante altaria trucidasse, clerum vulgo
the-priests before the-altars to-have-slaughtered the-clergy with-the-commons
mixtum aut impune occisos aut ductos in captivitatem.
mixed either with-impunity slain or led into captivity
Tunc etiam cruces a paganis truncatae, ludibrio habitae; cuius
then also the-crosses by the-pagans cut-down in-mockery held of-which
signa furoris usque ad nostram aetatem duraverunt. Sed
the-signs of-fury all-the-way to our age lasted but
Deus zelotes, cuius passio ibi derisa est, incredulos abire
God the-jealous whose passion there mocked was the-unbelieving to-go-away
non passus est inultos. Nam subita et mirabilis orta
not allowed has unavenged for a-sudden and marvelous having-arisen
tempestas, a semicremis ecclesiarum tectis scindulas elevavit,
storm from the-half-burned of-the-churches roofs shingles lifted
quas in faciem atque ora paganorum rotans, dum fugae
which into the-face and mouths of-the-pagans whirling while of-flight
praesidium quaerunt, aut in fluvium praecipitari compulit,
protection they-seek either into the-river to-be-hurled it-compelled
aut in manus civium concludi. Nec mora, prostratum
or into the-hands of-the-citizens to-be-shut-up nor delay the-laid-low
gregem boni pastoris occubitus cito secutus est. Qui
flock of-the-good shepherd the-death quickly followed has who
depositus in Kal. Octrobis una cum praedecessoribus
deposed on the-Kalends of-October together with predecessors
suis in basilica sancti Mykaelis commendatus est.
his in the-basilica of-saint Michael committed was

Liber I, §§ 56–61

56–61 · UNNI AND THE OPENING OF DENMARK

King Conrad gave the staff to the little chaplain Unni rather than to Leidrad. The Hungarians and the Danish king Worm laid Saxony waste until King Henry defeated them and set a march at Schleswig. Unni then went to Denmark, where he could not move Worm but won his son Harald; he ordained priests for the churches of the Danish kingdom and preached through all the Danish islands.

Unni archiepiscopus sedit annos 18. Annos eius obitumque
Unni archbishop sat years 18 the-years his and-death
ut supra cognovi. Memoriae traditum est a fratribus:
as above I-learned to-memory handed-down it-is by the-brothers
cum Reginwardus transisset, Leidradum, Bremensis chori
when Reginward had-passed-away Leidrad of-the-Bremen choir
praepositum, a clero et populo electum. Qui hoc Unni
the-provost by the-clergy and people chosen who this Unni
pro capellano utens, ad curiam venit. Rex autem Conradus,
as chaplain using to the-court came the-king moreover Conrad
divino, ut creditur, spiritu afflatus, contempta Leidradi
by-divine as it-is-believed spirit inspired despised of-Leidrad
specie, parvulo Unni, quem retro stare conspexerat, virgam
the-appearance to-the-little Unni whom behind standing he-had-noticed the-staff
pastoralem optulit. Cui etiam papa Iohannes decimus, ut
pastoral offered to-whom also pope John tenth as
privilegium indicat, palleum dedit. Erat autem vir, sicut in
the-privilege shows the-pallium gave he-was moreover a-man as in
electione ac transitu eius videri potest, sanctissimus, pro
the-election and passing his to-be-seen can most-holy for

qua sanctitate Conrado et Heinrico regibus familiaris et
which holiness to-Conrad and Henry the-kings familiar and
reverendus permansit. Unde et ita versu depingitur:
revered he-remained whence also so in-verse he-is-depicted

'Principibus notus Unni fuit, ordine nonus'.
to-the-princes known Unni was in-order the-ninth

In diebus suis Ungri non solum nostram Saxoniam
in days his the-Hungarians not only our Saxony
aliasque cis Rhenum provincias, verum etiam trans
and-other on-this-side-of the-Rhine provinces but also across
Rhenum Lotharingiam et Franciam demoliti sunt. Dani
the-Rhine Lotharingia and Francia demolished have the-Danes
quoque Sclavos auxilio habentes, primo Transalbianos Saxones,
also the-Slavs as-aid having first the-Transalbian Saxons
deinde cis Albim vastantes, magno Saxoniam terrore
then on-this-side-of the-Elbe laying-waste with-great Saxony terror
quassabant. Apud Danos eo tempore Hardecnudth Wrm
were-shaking among the-Danes at-that time Harthacnut Worm
regnavit, crudelissimus, inquam, vermis et christianorum
reigned a-most-cruel I-say worm and of-the-Christians
populis non mediocriter infestus. Ille christianitatem, quae in
to-the-peoples not moderately hostile he the-Christianity which in
Dania fuit, prorsus delere molitus, sacerdotes Dei a finibus
Denmark was utterly to-destroy having-striven the-priests of-God from borders
suis depulit, plurimos quoque ille per tormenta necavit.
his drove very-many also he through tortures killed
At vero Heinricus rex, iam tunc a puero timens
but indeed Henry the-king already then from a-boy fearing
Deum et in eius misericordia totam suam habens fiduciam,
God and in his mercy all his having trust

Ungros quidem multis gravibusque praeliis triumphavit;
over-the-Hungarians indeed in-many and-heavy battles triumphed
itemque Behemos et Sorabos ab aliis regibus domitos, et
and-likewise the-Bohemians and Sorbs by other kings tamed and
ceteros Sclavorum populos uno grandi praelio ita percussit,
the-other of-the-Slavs peoples in-one great battle so struck
ut residui, qui fere pauci remanserant, et regi tributum
that the-rest who almost few had-remained both to-the-king tribute
et Deo christianitatem ultro promitterent.
and to-God Christianity of-their-own-accord promised
Deinde cum exercitu ingressus Daniam, Worm regem primo
then with an-army having-entered Denmark Worm the-king at-the-first
impetu adeo perterruit, ut imperata se facere mandaret
onset so terrified that the-commands himself to-do he-sent-word
et pacem supplex deposceret. Sic Heinricus victor apud
and peace a-suppliant begged thus Henry the-victor at
Sliaswich, quae nunc Heidiba dicitur, regni terminos
Schleswig which now Hedeby is-called of-the-kingdom the-boundaries
ponens, ibi et marchionem statuit et Saxonum coloniam
setting there both a-margrave established and of-Saxons a-colony
habitare praecepit. Haec omnia referente quodam episcopo
to-dwell ordered these-things all relating a-certain bishop
Danorum, prudenti viro, nos veraciter ut accepimus, sic
of-the-Danes a-prudent man we truly as we-have-received so
fideliter ecclesiae nostrae tradimus.
faithfully to-the-church our hand-down
Tunc beatissimus archiepiscopus noster Unni videns ostium
then the-most-blessed archbishop our Unni seeing the-door
fidei gentibus apertum esse, gratias Deo egit de salute
of-faith to-the-nations opened to-be thanks to-God gave for the-salvation
paganorum, praecipue vero quoniam legatio Hammaburgensis
of-the-pagans chiefly indeed since the-mission of-the-Hamburg

ecclesiae, pro temporis importunitate diu neglecta, praeveniente
church for of-time the-unfavorableness long neglected forestalling
misericordia Dei et virtute regis Heinrici, locum et tempus
the-mercy of-God and the-strength of-king Henry place and time
operandi accepit. Igitur nichil asperum et grave arbitrans
of-working received therefore nothing harsh and grave judging
subiri posse pro Christo, latitudinem suae diocesis per
to-be-undergone to-be-able for Christ the-breadth of-his diocese by
se ipsum elegit circuire. Secutus est eum grex universus,
him himself he-chose to-go-round followed has him the-flock whole
ut aiunt, Bremensis ecclesiae, pastoris boni absentia mesti,
as they-say of-the-Bremen church of-the-shepherd good at-the-absence sad
secumque et in carcerem et in mortem ire parati.
and-with-him both into prison and into death to-go ready
Postquam vero confessor Dei pervenit ad Danos, ubi
after indeed the-confessor of-God came to the-Danes where
tunc crudelissimum Worm diximus regnasse, illum quidem
then the-most-cruel Worm we-have-said to-have-reigned him indeed
pro ingenita flectere nequivit saevitia; filium autem regis
for inborn to-bend he-could-not savagery the-son moreover of-the-king
Haroldum, sua dicitur praedicatione lucratus. Quem ita
Harald by-his he-is-said preaching to-have-won whom so
fidelem Christo perfecit, ut christianitatem, quam pater
faithful to-Christ he-made that the-Christianity which father
eius semper odio habuit, ipse haberi publice permitteret,
his always in-hatred had he to-be-held publicly permitted
quamvis nondum baptismi sacramentum percepit.
although not-yet of-baptism the-sacrament he-received
Ordinatis itaque in regno Danorum per singulas
ordained and-so in the-kingdom of-the-Danes through the-several
ecclesias sacerdotibus, sanctus Dei multitudinem credentium
churches priests the-saint of-God the-multitude of-believers

commendasse fertur Haroldo. Cuius etiam fultus adiutorio
to-have-commended is-reported to-Harald whose also supported by-the-aid
et legato, omnes Danorum insulas penetravit, euangelizans
and envoy all of-the-Danes the-islands he-penetrated evangelizing
verbum Dei gentilibus et fideles, quos invenit illic
the-word of-God to-the-gentiles and the-faithful whom he-found there
captivatos, in Christo confortans.
captive in Christ strengthening

Liber I, §§ 62–65

62–65 · UNNI AT BIRKA

Following Ansgar, Unni sailed to Birka, the Swedish harbor protected by hidden rocks, where no teacher had gone for seventy years, and recalled the Swedes and Goths to the faith. He died there in 936; his body was buried at Birka and his head brought to Bremen. Adam rebukes the bishops who sit at home while Unni died at the ends of the earth.

Deinde vestigia secutus magni praedicatoris Ansgarii, mare
then the-footsteps having-followed of-the-great preacher Ansgar the-sea
Balticum remigans, non sine labore pervenit ad Bircam. Quo
Baltic rowing not without labor he-came to Birka where
iam post obitum sancti Ansgarii annis 70 nemo doctorum
already after the-death of-saint Ansgar for-years 70 no-one of-teachers
ausus est pertingere, praeter solum, ut legimus, Rimbertum.
dared has to-reach except alone as we-read Rimbert
Ita persecutio nostros retinuit. Bircа est oppidum Gothorum,
so persecution ours held-back Birka is a-town of-the-Goths
in medio Suevoniae positum, non longe ab eo templo,
in the-middle of-Sweden placed not far from that temple
quod celeberrimum Sueones habent in cultu deorum,
which most-famous the-Swedes have in the-worship of-the-gods

Ubsola dicto; in quo loco sinus quidam eius freti, quod
Uppsala called in which place a-gulf certain of-that strait which
Balticum vel barbarum dicitur, ad boream vergens, portum
Baltic or barbarian is-called to the-north turning a-harbor
facit barbaris gentibus, quae hoc mare diffusi habitant,
makes for-the-barbarian nations which this sea spread-out inhabit
optabilem, sed valde periculosum incautis et ignaris
desirable but very dangerous to-the-incautious and ignorant
eiusmodi locorum. Bircani enim pyratarum excursionibus,
of-such places the-people-of-Birka for of-pirates by-raids
quorum ibi est magna copia, saepius impugnati, cum vi
of-whom there is a-great abundance quite-often attacked since by-force
et armis nequeunt resistere, callida hostes aggrediuntur arte
and arms they-cannot to-resist by-cunning the-enemies they-attempt art
decipere. Qui sinum maris impacati per centum et amplius
to-deceive who the-gulf of-the-sea unquiet for a-hundred and more
stadia latentium molibus saxorum obstruentes, periculosum
stadia with-hidden masses of-rocks blocking dangerous
aeque suis ac praedonibus iter meandi fecerunt. Ad
equally for-their-own and for-the-robbers the-way of-passing made to
quam stationem, quia tutissima est in maritimis Suevoniae
which station since safest it-is in the-coastal of-Sweden
regionibus, solent omnes Danorum vel Nortmannorum itemque
regions are-wont all of-the-Danes or of-the-Northmen and-likewise
Sclavorum ac Semborum naves aliique Scithiae populi pro
of-the-Slavs and of-the-Sembi the-ships and-other of-Scythia peoples for
diversis commerciorum necessitatibus sollempniter convenire.
various of-trade needs regularly to-gather
In eo portu confessor Domini egressus, insolita populos
in that harbor the-confessor of-the-Lord disembarked to-unaccustomed the-peoples
appellare coepit legatione. Quippe Sueones et Gothi, vel si
to-address began by-mission indeed the-Swedes and Goths or if

ita melius dicuntur Nortmanni, propter barbaricae excursionis
so better they-are-called Northmen because-of barbarian of-raiding
tempora, qua paucis annis multi reges cruento imperio
the-times in-which in-few years many kings by-bloody rule
dominati sunt, christianae religionis penitus obliti, haut
had-dominion have of-the-Christian religion utterly forgetful not
facile poterant ad fidem persuaderi. Accepimus a saepe
easily could to the-faith to-be-persuaded we-have-received from the-often
dicto rege Danorum Suein, tunc apud Sueones imperitasse
mentioned king of-the-Danes Svein then among the-Swedes to-have-ruled
quendam Ring cum filiis Herich et Edmund, ipsumque
a-certain Ring with sons Eric and Emund and-himself
Ring ante se habuisse Anund, Bern, Olaph, de quibus in
Ring before himself to-have-had Anund Björn Olaf about whom in
Gestis sancti Anscharii legitur, et alios, quorum non occurrit
the-Deeds of-saint Ansgar it-is-read and others whose not occurs
vocabulum. Et credibile est athletam Dei Unnim eosdem
the-name and believable it-is the-athlete of-God Unni the-same
reges, quamvis non crediderint, adisse eorumque
kings although not they-believed to-have-approached and-their
licentia verbum Dei per Sueoniam praedicasse. Meo autem
by-leave the-word of-God through Sweden to-have-preached in-my moreover
arbitratu, sicut inutile videtur, eorum acta scrutari, qui
judgment as useless it-seems their acts to-search-out who
non crediderunt, ita impium est, praeterire salutem eorum,
not believed so impious it-is to-pass-over the-salvation of-those
qui primum crediderunt, et per quos crediderunt. Sueones
who first believed and through whom they-believed the-Swedes
igitur et Gothi a sancto Ansgario primum in fide plantati,
therefore and Goths by saint Ansgar first in faith planted
iterumque ad paganismum relapsi, a sancto patre Unni sunt
and-again to paganism relapsed by holy father Unni were

revocati. Sufficit hoc scire, ne, si plura dicimus, mentiri
called-back it-suffices this to-know lest if more we-say to-lie
velle dicamur. ‘Melius enim est’, ut ait beatus Ieronimus,
to-wish we-be-said better for it-is as says blessed Jerome
‘vera dicere rustice, quam falsa diserte proferre’.
true-things to-say rustically than false-things eloquently to-utter
Perfecto autem legationis suae ministerio, cum tandem
completed moreover of-mission his the-ministry when at-last
redire disponeret, euangelista Dei apud Bircam aegritudine
to-return he-was-arranging the-evangelist of-God at Birka by-sickness
correptus, ibidem fessi corporis tabernaculum deposuit.
seized there of-the-tired body the-tent laid-down
Anima vero, cum multo animarum triumpho stipata,
the-soul indeed with much of-souls triumph thronged
coelestis patriae capitolium semper laetatura conscendit.
of-the-heavenly fatherland the-capitol always about-to-rejoice ascended
Tunc discipuli pontificis exequias eius cum fletu et gaudio
then the-disciples of-the-pontiff the-funeral his with weeping and joy
procurantes, cetera quidem membra sepelierunt in eodem
taking-care-of the-other indeed limbs buried in the-same
oppido Birca, solum caput Bremam reportantes, quod decenti
town Birka only the-head to-Bremen carrying-back which with-fitting
honore condiderunt in ecclesia sancti Petri coram altari. Obiit
honor they-laid-away in the-church of-saint Peter before the-altar he-died
autem peracto boni certaminis cursu in Scitia, ut scribitur,
moreover completed of-the-good contest the-course in Scythia as is-written
anno dominicae incarnationis 936, indictione 9, circa
in-the-year of-the-Lord's incarnation 936 in-the-indiction 9th about
medium Septembris. Hic est annus Ottonis Magni primus,
the-middle of-September this is the-year of-Otto the-Great first
a transitu sancti Willehadi primi Bremensis episcopi 148.
from the-passing of-saint Willehad first of-Bremen bishop the-148th

Eia vos episcopi, qui domi sedentes, gloriae, lucri, ventris et
come you bishops who at-home sitting of-glory of-gain of-belly and
somni breves delicias in primo episcopalis officii loco ponitis;
of-sleep the-brief delights in the-first of-episcopal office place set
respicite, inquam, istum pauperem seculi et modicum,
look-back I-say at-that poor-man of-the-world and small
immo laudabilem magnumque sacerdotem Christi, qui nuper
rather praiseworthy and-great priest of-Christ who lately
tam nobili fine coronatus, exemplum dedit posteris, nulla
by-so noble an-end crowned an-example gave to-posterity by-no
temporum vel locorum asperitate vestram pigriciam excusari
of-times or of-places harshness your sloth to-be-excused
posse: cum per tanta pericula maris et terrae feroces
to-be-able when through so-great perils of-sea and land the-fierce
aquilonis populos ipse pertransiens, ministerium legationis
of-the-north peoples he passing-through the-ministry of-mission
suae tanto impleret studio, ut in ultimis terrae finibus
his with-so-much fulfilled zeal that in the-farthest of-the-earth bounds
exspirans animam suam poneret pro Christo.
breathing-out soul his he-laid-down for Christ

Liber II, §§ 1–3

1–3 · ADALDAG AND OTTO'S DANISH WAR

Otto the Great gave the staff to Adaldag, kinsman of Adalward of Verden; Adaldag freed Bremen from the counts' jurisdiction. He kept close to the king. Otto invaded Denmark after the Danes killed his envoys at Hedeby; Harald was defeated and baptized with his wife and son Svein, and Pope Agapetus confirmed Hamburg's rights and the ordination of bishops.

Hic habeas libri, lector bone, gesta secundi.
here you-may-have of-the-book reader good the-deeds of-the-second

Adaldagus archiepiscopus sedit annos 53. Iste est qui nobis,
Adaldag archbishop sat years 53 he is who for-us
ut dicitur, rem publicam restituit. Genere illustris, aetate
as it-is-said the-thing public restored in-family illustrious in-age
iuvenis, decorus specie morumque probitate speciosior,
young comely in-appearance and-of-morals in-uprightness more-beautiful
a choro sumptus est Hiltineshemensi, consanguineus et
from the-choir taken he-was of-Hildesheim kinsman and
discipulus beati Adalwardi, Ferdensis episcopi, cuius tunc vita
disciple of-blessed Adalward of-Verden bishop whose then life
probata, fama illaesa et fides in palatio erat cognitissima.
proved reputation unharmed and faith in the-palace was most-known
Quem ferunt etiam doctrina et miraculis celebrem, Sclavorum
whom they-report also by-doctrine and miracles celebrated of-the-Slavs
populos eo tempore praedicasse, quo noster Unni ad
the-peoples at-that time to-have-preached when our Unni to
Scythas legatus extitit. Eius nimirum opera et testimonio
the-Scythians legate proved of-him surely by-the-work and testimony

commendatus in curia Adaldagus ferulam pastoralem suscepit
commended in the-court Adaldag the-staff pastoral received
a magno Ottone; palleum episcopale sumpsit a papa VII.
from the-great Otto the-pallium episcopal he-took from pope seventh
Leone, manus impositionem, sicut praedecessores eius, a
Leo of-the-hand the-imposition as predecessors his from
Magontino praesule. Necdum autem Hammaburgensis cathedra
the-Mainz prelate not-yet moreover the-Hamburg chair
habuit suffraganeos, quos huius Adaldagi studio recepit.
had suffragans which of-this Adaldag by-the-zeal it-received
Adaldagus itaque primo ut ingressus est episcopatum,
Adaldag and-so first as entered he-has the-bishopric
Bremam longo prius tempore potestatibus ac iudiciaria
Bremen long before time by-powers and judicial
manu compressam, praecepto regis absolvi, et instar
hand oppressed by-the-precept of-the-king to-be-freed and in-the-likeness
reliquarum urbium immunitate simulque libertate fecit
of-the-other cities with-immunity and-at-once liberty he-had
donari. Praecepta regis haec continentia praesto sunt, et
to-be-presented the-charters of-the-king these containing at-hand are and
alia. Mox de legatione sua, quae pro gentium salute primo
others soon of mission his which for of-the-nations salvation first
a decessoribus suis recepta, hoc sibi ordine provenit, ut
from predecessors his received in-this to-him order it-came that
quod alii in lacrimis seminarunt, ipse in gaudio meteret,
what others in tears sowed he in joy should-reap
toto, inquam, animi desiderio succensus, aestuabat, quomodo
with-whole I-say of-mind desire kindled he-burned how
perficeret, quod religioso pietatis formabat affectu. Et
he-might-accomplish what with-religious of-piety he-formed affection and
quoniam diligentibus Deum omnia cooperantur in bonum,
since for-those-loving God all-things work-together for good

dedit ei Dominus ad voti successum, et prosperitatem
gave him the-Lord for of-the-vow the-success both prosperity
temporis et gratiam regis. Cuius ita usus est familiaritate,
of-the-time and grace of-the-king whose so used he-has familiarity
quod a latere eius raro unquam develleretur. Nunquam tamen
that from the-side his rarely ever he-was-torn never yet
aut parrochiae necessitati defuit, aut legationis suae curam
either of-the-diocese to-the-need he-was-wanting or of-mission his the-care
posthabuit; quin immo victoriosi et iustissimi animum regis
postponed rather indeed of-the-victorious and most-just the-mind king
in omnibus quae Dei sunt paratum cernens, tum praecipue
in all-things which of-God are ready perceiving then chiefly
studium eius ad conversionem paganorum incitare non cessavit;
the-zeal his for the-conversion of-the-pagans to-arouse not he-ceased
quod etiam pro sententia eius ita evenit, Deo cooperante
which also according-to the-wish his so came-about God working-with
et piissimi regis dexteram in omnibus corroborante.
and of-the-most-pious king the-right-hand in all-things strengthening
Otto igitur rex divino fultus auxilio, cum primum ab
Otto therefore the-king by-divine supported aid when first from
insidiis fratrum suorum ereptus est, iusticiam et iudicium
the-plots of-brothers his rescued he-was justice and judgment
populis fecit. Deinde postquam omnia ferme regna, quae
for-the-peoples did then after all almost the-kingdoms which
post mortem Karoli defecerant, suo imperio subiugaret, in
after the-death of-Charles had-fallen-away to-his rule he-subjected against
Danos arma corripuit, quos antea pater eius bello compressit.
the-Danes arms seized whom before father his in-war checked
Illi vero bellare moliti, apud Heidibam legatos Ottonis
they indeed to-make-war having-attempted at Hedeby the-envoys of-Otto
cum marchione trucidarunt, omnem Saxonum coloniam
with the-margrave slaughtered the-whole of-the-Saxons colony

funditus extinguentes. Ad quam rem ulciscendam rex cum
utterly extinguishing for which thing to-be-avenged the-king with
exercitu statim invasit Daniam; transgressusque terminos
an-army at-once invaded Denmark and-having-crossed the-boundaries
Danorum, apud Sliaswig olim positos, ferro et igne
of-the-Danes at Schleswig once set with-iron and fire
vastavit totam regionem usque ad mare novissimum, quod
laid-waste the-whole region all-the-way to the-sea farthest which
Nortmannos a Danis dirimit et usque praesentem diem a
the-Northmen from the-Danes divides and up-to the-present day from
victoria regis Ottinsund dicitur. Cui egredienti Haroldus
the-victory of-the-king the-Ottensund is-called to-him going-out Harald
apud Sliaswig occurrens bellum intulit. In quo utrisque viriliter
at Schleswig meeting war brought in which both manfully
concertantibus Saxones victoria potiti sunt, Dani victi
contending the-Saxons victory gained have the-Danes conquered
ad naves cesserunt. Tandemque condicionibus ad pacem
to the-ships withdrew and-at-last the-terms toward peace
inclinatis, Haroldus Ottoni subicitur, et ab eo regnum
inclined Harald to-Otto is-subjected and from him the-kingdom
suscipiens, christianitatem in Dania recipere spopondit. Nec
receiving Christianity in Denmark to-receive promised nor
mora, baptizatus est ipse Haroldus cum uxore Gunhild et
delay baptized was himself Harald with wife Gunnhild and
filio parvulo, quem rex noster a sacro fonte susceptum
son little whom king our from the-sacred font received
Sueinotto vocavit. Eo tempore Dania cismarina, quam
Svein-Otto called at-that time Denmark on-this-side-of-the-sea which
Iudland incolae appellant, in tres divisa episcopatus,
Jutland the-inhabitants call into three divided bishoprics
Hammaburgensi episcopatui subiecta est. Servantur in Bremensi
to-the-Hamburg bishopric subjected was are-kept in the-Bremen

ecclesia praecepta regis, quae signant, Ottonem regem in sua
church the-charters of-the-king which mark Otto the-king in his
ditione regnum Danicum tenuisse, adeo ut etiam episcopatus
power the-kingdom Danish to-have-held so-far that even the-bishoprics
ille donaverit. In privilegiis autem Romanae sedis videri potest,
he he-endowed in the-privileges moreover of-the-Roman see to-be-seen can
quod Agapitus papa Hammaburgensi ecclesiae de salute
that Agapetus the-pope with-the-Hamburg church about the-salvation
gentium congratulatus, omnia quae a decessoribus suis
of-the-nations having-rejoiced all-things which by predecessors his
Gregorio, Nicolao, Sergio et ceteris Bremensi archiepiscopatui
Gregory Nicholas Sergius and the-others to-the-Bremen archbishopric
concessa sunt, et ipse concessit Adaldago. Cui etiam sua
granted were also himself granted to-Adaldag to-whom also in-his
vice ius ordinandi episcopos tam in Daniam, quam in
place the-right of-ordaining bishops both into Denmark and into
ceteros septentrionis populos, apostolica auctoritate concessit.
the-other of-the-north peoples by-apostolic authority he-granted

Liber II, §§ 4–8

4–8 · BISHOPS FOR DENMARK AND DUKE HERMANN

Adaldag ordained the first bishops for Schleswig, Ribe, and Aarhus. Otto subdued the Slavs, Bruno of Cologne renewed the old claim on Bremen and gave it up, and the archbishop's zeal for the conversion of the nations was known to all. Going to Italy, Otto left Hermann, a man of humble birth, as his deputy in Saxony.

Igitur beatissimus pater noster primus ordinavit episcopos
therefore most-blessed father our first ordained bishops
in Daniam, Horit vel Haredum ad Sliaswig, Liafdagum
into Denmark Horit or Hared at Schleswig Liafdag
ad Ripam, Reginbrondum ad Harusam. Quibus etiam
at Ribe Reginbrond at Aarhus to-whom also
commendavit illas ecclesias, quae trans mare sunt, in Fune,
he-commended those churches which across the-sea are in Funen
Seland et Scone, ac in Sueonia. Anno archiepiscopi factum
Zealand and Scania and in Sweden in-the-year of-the-archbishop done
est hoc 12. Et haec quidem initia coelestis misericordiae
was this 12th and these indeed beginnings of-heavenly mercy
secutum est tale incrementum, Deo cooperante, ut ab illo
followed has such an-increase God working-with that from that
tempore usque in hodiernum diem ecclesiae Danorum
time all-the-way into the-present day the-churches of-the-Danes
multiplici borealium gentium fructu redundare videantur.
with-manifold of-the-northern nations fruit to-overflow seem
Fertur etiam ipso tempore fortissimum Ottonem regem
it-is-reported also at-that-very time the-most-mighty Otto the-king
universos populos Sclavorum imperio subiecisse. Quos pater
all the-peoples of-the-Slavs to-(his)-rule to-have-subjected whom father
eius uno grandi bello domuerat, ipse tanta virtute
his in-one great war had-tamed he with-so-much strength

deinceps constrinxit, ut tributum et christianitatem pro vita
thereafter constrained that tribute and Christianity for life
simul et patria libenter offerrent victori, baptizatusque
together and fatherland willingly they-offered to-the-victor and-baptized
est totus gentilium populus. Ecclesiae in Sclavania tunc
was the-whole of-the-gentiles people churches in Slavia then
primum constructae, de quibus rebus circa finem, ut gestae
first built about which things toward the-end as done
sunt, oportunius aliquid sumus dicturi
they-were more-fittingly something we-are about-to-say
Invenimus adhuc in scriniis ecclesiae nostrae Coloniensem
we-have-found still in the-chests of-the-church our the-Cologne
archiepiscopum, qui tunc claruit, Brunonem, postquam
archbishop who then was-famous Bruno after
Hammaburg nostram vidit habere suffraganeos, veterem de
Hamburg our he-saw to-have suffragans the-old about
Brema instaurasse quęrelam, sperans se quae voluit eo
Bremen to-have-renewed complaint hoping himself what he-wished by-so-much
facilius adepturum, quod regis erat confrater Ottonis.
more-easily about-to-obtain because of-the-king he-was the-brother Otto
Sed dum frustra laborasset omnibus modis, nec papae
but while in-vain he-had-labored in-all ways neither of-the-pope
consilium, nec dicitur fratris meruisse auxilium. Ita
the-counsel nor he-is-said of-(his)-brother to-have-merited the-aid so
vir nobilis idemque sapiens auctoritate pontificis Adaldagi
the-man noble and-also wise by-the-authority of-the-pontiff Adaldag
facile superatus, in gratiam nostrae ecclesiae, ut scribitur,
easily overcome into the-favor of-our church as it-is-written
cum satisfactione redivit, praedicans Hammaburgensem
with amends returned proclaiming the-Hamburg
ecclesiam, quae in tanto gentilium periculo constituta sit, non
church which in so-great of-gentiles peril set is not

debere laedi ab aliquo, verum dignam esse, quae omni
ought to-be-harmed by anyone but worthy to-be which with-every
consolationis amore foveatur et celebretur ab omnibus
of-consolation love should-be-cherished and celebrated by all
ubique ecclesiis. Adhuc posteris in memoria est, quendam
everywhere churches still to-posterity in memory it-is a-certain
Erp, diaconem pontificis Adaldagi, quia fideliter ei astiterit
Erp deacon of-the-pontiff Adaldag because faithfully him he-stood-by
in praefata contentione, Ferdensi ab rege episcopatu
in the-aforesaid contention with-the-Verden by the-king bishopric
donatum, simul et alios fratrum, qui in praedicatione
presented and-at-once also others of-the-brothers who in the-preaching
Danorum et Sclavorum cum archiepiscopo studiosi fuerunt,
of-the-Danes and of-the-Slavs with the-archbishop zealous were
pro labore suo maioribus asserunt cathedris intronizatos.
for labor their to-greater they-assert chairs enthroned
Nempe studium patris Adaldagi totum fuit in conversione
surely the-zeal of-father Adaldag whole was in the-conversion
gentium, in exaltacione ecclesiarum, in salute animarum, pro
of-the-nations in the-exaltation of-the-churches in the-salvation of-souls for
cuius rei magisterio meruit vir dilectus Deo et hominibus,
of-which thing the-mastery merited the-man beloved by-God and by-men
ut omnibus in veneratione haberetur, etiam inimicis.
that by-all in veneration he-was-held even by-enemies
Post haec cum rex victoriossissimus Otto ad liberandum
after these-things when the-king most-victorious Otto for freeing
sedem apostolicam vocaretur in Italiam, consilium fertur
the-see apostolic was-called into Italy counsel he-is-reported
habuisse, quem post se vicarium potestatis ad faciendam
to-have-held whom after himself as-vicar of-power for doing
iusticiam relinqueret in his partibus, quae barbaris confines
justice he-should-leave in these parts which to-the-barbarians bordering

sunt terminis. Nondum enim post tempora Karoli, propter
are in-boundaries not-yet for after the-times of-Charles because-of
veteres illius gentis seditiones, Saxonia ducem accepit, nisi
the-old of-that nation seditions Saxony a-duke received except
caesarem. Qua necessitate rex persuasus, Hermanno primum
the-caesar by-which necessity the-king persuaded to-Hermann first
tutelae vicem in Saxonia commisit. De quo viro et progenie
of-guardianship the-office in Saxony committed about which man and the-progeny
viri, quoniam tam Bremensi ecclesiae, quam aliis magno
of-the-man since as-much for-the-Bremen church as for-others to-great
excidio surrexisse videntur, altius ordiri necessarium duxi.
ruin to-have-arisen they-seem more-deeply to-begin necessary I-thought
Vir iste pauperibus ortus natalibus, primo, ut aiunt, 7
man this from-poor born parentage at-first as they-say with-7
mansis totidemque manentibus ex hereditate parentum fuit
manses and-as-many tenants from the-inheritance of-his-parents was
contentus. Deinde quod erat acris ingenii decorisque formae,
content then because he-was of-keen wit and-of-comely form
cum pro merito fidei et humilitatis, quam dominis et
when for the-merit of-faith and humility which to-lords and
paribus exhibuit, facile notus in palatio, ad familiaritatem
equals he-showed easily known in the-palace to the-familiarity
pervenit ipsius regis. Qui comperta iuvenis industria,
came of-the-very king who learned of-the-young-man the-diligence
suscepit eum in numero ministrorum, deinde nutricium
received him into the-number of-the-ministers then tutor
praecepit esse filiorum; mox etiam succedentibus prosperis,
he-ordered to-be of-his-sons soon also following prosperous-things
commisit ei vices praefectorum. In quibus officiis strennue
he-committed to-him the-offices of-prefects in which offices vigorously
administratis, dicitur manentes suos pro furto [in iudicium]
administered he-is-said tenants his for theft into judgment

delatos, data sententia simul omnes dampnasse ad mortem.
brought given the-sentence together all to-have-condemned to death
Cuius novitate facinoris et tunc carus in populo et
of-which by-the-novelty of-deed both then dear among the-people and
clarissimus deinceps factus est in palatio. Postquam vero
most-famous thereafter made he-was in the-palace after indeed
ducatum Saxoniae meruit, iudicio et iusticia gubernavit
the-duchy of-Saxony he-merited with-judgment and justice he-governed
provinciam, et in defensione ecclesiarum sanctarum studiosus
the-province and in the-defense of-the-churches holy zealous
permansit usque in finem. Nam et Bremensi ecclesiae ac
remained all-the-way into the-end for both to-the-Bremen church and
matri Hammaburg fidelis extitit ac devotus, multa bona
to-mother Hamburg faithful he-proved and devoted many good-things
faciens in fratres et in omnes Saxoniae congregationes.
doing toward the-brothers and toward all of-Saxony congregations

Liber II, §§ 9–13

9–13 · ADALDAG IN ITALY AND MAGDEBURG

Otto deposed Pope John and was crowned emperor in Rome; Adaldag stayed with him five years and gathered relics for Bremen. He kept the deposed Pope Benedict at Hamburg until his death. He founded a convent of virgins at Heslingen and a house of holy men at Reepsholt and enlarged the hospice at Bremen, and Otto founded Magdeburg as the metropolis of the Slavs under Adalbert.

Igitur tali viro piissimus rex et archiepiscopus noster vices
therefore to-such a-man the-most-pious king and archbishop our offices
suas in hac regione commendantes, in Italiam discesserunt. Ubi
their in this region entrusting into Italy departed where
rex habito concilio episcoporum, Iohannem papam, cui
the-king held a-council of-bishops John the-pope to-whom
Octaviano cognomen tum erat, multis accusatum criminibus
Octavian as-surname then was by-many accused crimes
deponi fecit, quamvis absentem, nam fuga iudicium
to-be-deposed had although absent for by-flight the-judgment
subterfugerat, et in locum eius protum Leonem ordinari.
he-had-evaded and in the-place his the-protoscrinius Leo to-be-ordained
A quo ipse mox coronatus, imperator et augustus a populo
by whom he soon crowned emperor and augustus by the-people
Romano consalutatus est, anno regni 28, post coronatum
Roman hailed was in-the-year of-the-reign 28th after crowned
Romae Karulum 153. Eo tempore imperator cum filio
at-Rome Charles the-153rd at-that time the-emperor with his-son
quinquennium in Italia commoratus, filios Beringarii debellavit
for-five-years in Italy having-stayed the-sons of-Berengar subdued
Romamque pristinae reddidit libertati. His diebus annisque
and-Rome to-former restored liberty in-these days and-years

totidem noster archiepiscopus, apud quem summa consiliorum
as-many our archbishop on whom the-sum of-counsels
pendebat, in regno Italiae conversatus est, non sponte,
hung in the-kingdom of-Italy dwelt has not willingly
inquam, sed quod a regum latere divelli non potuit.
I-say but because from of-the-kings the-side to-be-torn-away not he-could
Ingens lucrum de peregrinatione sua Bremensi ecclesiae
a-huge gain from pilgrimage his for-the-Bremen church
paravit. Tunc enim collegisse traditur patrocinia sanctorum,
he-prepared then for to-have-gathered he-is-said the-relics of-saints
quibus nunc et in aevum hoc triumphat nostrum episcopium.
in-which now and into eternity this triumphs our bishopric
Fertur eius populus itaque non ferens diuturnam boni
is-reported his people and-so not bearing the-long-lasting of-the-good
pastoris absentiam, nuntiis et litteris metum ingerentibus
shepherd absence by-messengers and letters fear inspiring
tandem effecisse, ut suum gregem visere dignaretur.
at-last to-have-brought-about that his flock to-visit he-should-deign
Cui etiam venienti perhibent suos et extraneos itinere
to-whom also coming they-relate his-own and strangers a-journey
tridui occurrisse, prae gaudio flentes, et quasi alteri Iohanni
of-three-days to-have-met for joy weeping and as-if to-another John
clamabant, dicentes: 'Benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini'.
they-cried saying blessed who comes in the-name of-the-Lord
Reversus ergo in patriam archiepiscopus, sicut audivimus
having-returned therefore into the-fatherland the-archbishop as we-have-heard
et cognovimus et patres nostri narraverunt nobis, duxit
and known and fathers our have-told to-us led
in comitatu suo Benedictum, papam ordinatum, sed tunc
in retinue his Benedict a-pope ordained but then
ab Ottone depositum, quem ille in Hammaburg custodiae
by Otto deposed whom he in Hamburg to-custody

mandari praecepit, archiepiscopus vero magno cum honore
to-be-consigned ordered the-archbishop indeed great with honor
detinuit usque ad obitum eius. Nam vir sanctus
kept all-the-way to the-death his for a-man holy
litteratusque fuisse dicitur, et qui dignus apostolicae
and-lettered to-have-been he-is-said and who worthy of-the-apostolic
sedi videretur, a populo Romano nisi quod per tumultum
for-the-see should-seem by the-people Roman except that through tumult
electus est, expulso eo, quem ordinari iussit imperator.
chosen he-was expelled him whom to-be-ordained ordered the-emperor
Igitur apud nos in sancta conversatione vivens, aliosque sancte
therefore among us in holy conversation living and-others holily
vivere docens, cum iam Romanis poscentibus ab caesare
to-live teaching when already the-Romans demanding by the-caesar
restitui deberet, apud Hammaburg in pace quievit. Transitus
to-be-restored he-ought at Hamburg in peace rested the-passing
eius quarto Nonas Iulii contigisse describitur. [Praepositus
his on-the-fourth Nones of-July to-have-happened is-described the-provost
illius temporis Bremae claruit Eilhardus, vir spontanea
of-that time at-Bremen was-famous Eilhard a-man by-voluntary
paupertate clarus, et custos regulae canonicae. Tuncque
poverty renowned and guardian of-the-rule canonical and-then
scolas ecclesiae florentissimo studio rexit Tiadhelmus, qui
the-schools of-the-church with-most-flourishing zeal ruled Thiadhelm who
erat ex discipulis magni Octrici Magdeburgensis].
was of the-disciples of-the-great Ohtric of-Magdeburg
Archiepiscopus autem reliquias sanctorum martyrum, quas
the-archbishop moreover the-relics of-the-holy martyrs which
ab urbe Roma deportavit, magna per parrochias suas
from the-city Rome he-brought with-great through dioceses his
diligentia distribuit. Antecessores sui Deo servientium
diligence distributed predecessors his God of-serving

animarum quinque coenobia fundasse dicti sunt. His
of-souls five monasteries to-have-founded said are to-these
ille sextum addidit apud Hesilingun, ubi nobilissima virgo
he a-sixth added at Heslingen where the-most-noble virgin
Christi Wendilgart et pater eius Haldo nomine, totum Deo
of-Christ Wendilgart and father her Haldo by-name all to-God
et sancto Vito martyri patrimonium suum offerens, magnam
and to-saint Vitus martyr patrimony his offering a-great
virginum turmam congregavit. Septimam congregationem
of-virgins troop gathered the-seventh congregation
in Frisia Ripesholt fecit sanctorum virorum de praedio
in Frisia Reepsholt he-made of-holy men from the-estate
et oblatione quarundam fidelium matronarum, Reingerd et
and offering of-certain faithful matrons Reingerd and
Wendilae, ubi reliquias sancti locavit Mauritii, et alia alibi.
Wendila where the-relics of-saint he-placed Maurice and others elsewhere
[Hae sunt reliquiae sanctorum, quas dominus Adaldagus ab
these are the-relics of-saints which lord Adaldag from
Italia portavit: corpora Quiriaci et Caesarii, item Victoris
Italy brought the-bodies of-Quiriacus and of-Caesarius likewise of-Victor
et Coronae, Felicis et Feliciani, Cosmae et Damiani.]
and Corona of-Felix and of-Felician of-Cosmas and of-Damian
Cumque sanctus pontifex omnium ecclesiarum suarum paternam,
and-when the-holy pontiff of-all churches his fatherly
ut apparet, sollicitudinem gereret, xenodochii Bremensis
as appears anxiety bore of-the-hospice of-Bremen
dicitur magnam habuisse curam. Quod ipse multo maioribus
he-is-said great to-have-had care which he by-much greater
auxit reditibus, quam antecessores eius: adeo ut praeter
increased revenues than predecessors his so-far that besides
hospites, qui frequenter suscipiebantur, cotidie pascerentur in
the-guests who often were-received daily were-fed in

hospitali pauperes 24. In quo ministerio fidelissimus extitit
the-hospital paupers 24 in which ministry most-faithful proved
Libentius, quem secum duxit ab Italia pontifex.
Libentius whom with-him led from Italy the-pontiff
Ipso tempore magnus Otto, subiugatis christianaeque fidei
at-that-very time the-great Otto subjugated and-to-the-Christian faith
copulatis Sclavorum gentibus, inclytam urbem Magedburg super
joined of-the-Slavs the-nations the-renowned city Magdeburg on
ripas Albiae fluminis condidit, quam Sclavis metropolem
the-banks of-the-Elbe river founded which for-the-Slavs a-metropolis
statuens, Adalbertum, summae sanctitatis virum, ibidem
establishing Adalbert of-highest holiness a-man there
consecrari fecit archiepiscopum. Is primus in Magedburg
to-be-consecrated had archbishop he the-first in Magdeburg
ordinatus, 12 annis strennue pontificatum administravit
ordained for-12 years vigorously the-pontificate administered
multosque Sclavorum populos ille praedicando convertit. Cuius
and-many of-the-Slavs peoples he by-preaching converted whose
ordinatio facta est anno imperatoris et nostri archiepiscopi
ordination done was in-the-year of-the-emperor and our archbishop
35, et sunt anni post ordinationem sancti Ansgarii 137.
35th and they-are the-years after the-ordination of-saint Ansgar 137

Liber II, §§ 14–17

14–17 · THE SLAVIC SEES AND THE SAXON BORDER

Magdeburg received five suffragans, and the sixth Slavic see, Oldenburg, was put under Hamburg. Adam describes the three Saxon peoples beyond the Elbe and their churches, Hamburg in their midst, and quotes the border Charlemagne set against the Slavs. He then quotes Einhard on the Baltic gulf and turns to describe Slavia.

Magedburgensi archiepiscopatui subiecta est tota Sclavonia
to-the-Magdeburg archbishopric subjected is all Slavia
usque Penem fluvium. Episcopatus suffraganei quinque, quorum
up-to the-Peene river bishoprics suffragan five of-which
Mersiburg et Ciscia super Salam flumen condita, Misna vero
Merseburg and Zeitz on the-Saale river founded Meissen indeed
super Albiam, Brandanburg et Hevelberg interius vadunt.
on the-Elbe Brandenburg and Havelberg further-inland go
Sextus episcopatus Sclavoniae est Aldinburg. Eum, quod vicinior
the-sixth bishopric of-Slavia is Oldenburg it because nearer
nobis est, imperator Hammaburgensi archiepiscopatui subiecit,
to-us it-is the-emperor to-the-Hamburg archbishopric subjected
ibique archiepiscopus noster primum ordinavit episcopum
and-there archbishop our first ordained as-bishop
Euraccum vel Egwardum, quem latine dicimus Euagrium.
Euracc or Egward whom in-Latin we-call Evagrius
Et quoniam occasio se locorum praebuit, utile videtur
and since occasion itself of-places has-offered useful it-seems
exponere, quae gentes trans Albiam Hammaburgensi pertinentes
to-set-out what nations across the-Elbe to-the-Hamburg belonging
sint dyocesi. Haec clauditur ab occidente occeano Brittannico,
are diocese this is-closed from the-west by-the-ocean British
a meridie Albia flumine, ab oriente Pene fluvio, qui
from the-south by-the-Elbe river from the-east by-the-Peene river which

currit in mare Barbarum, ab aquilone vero Egdore fluvio,
runs into the-sea Barbarian from the-north indeed by-the-Eider river
qui Danos dirimit a Saxonibus. Transalbianorum Saxonum
which the-Danes divides from the-Saxons of-the-Transalbian Saxons
populi sunt tres: primi ad occeanum sunt Tedmarsgoi, et
the-peoples are three the-first by the-ocean are the-Dithmarschers and
eorum ecclesia mater in Melindorp; secundi Holcetae, dicti
their church mother in Meldorf the-second the-Holsatians called
a silvis quas accolunt; eos Sturia flumen interluit, ecclesia
from the-woods which they-dwell-by them the-Stör river flows-through the-church
Scanafeld; tercii et nobiliores Sturmarii dicuntur, eo quod
Schenefeld the-third and nobler Stormarians are-called for-this that
seditionibus ea gens frequens agitur. Inter quos metropolis
by-seditions that nation often is-driven among whom the-metropolis
Hammaburg caput extollit, olim viris et armis potens, agro
Hamburg its-head lifts once in-men and arms mighty in-land
et frugibus felix; nunc vero peccatorum vindictae patens,
and crops happy now indeed of-sins to-the-vengeance lying-open
in solitudinem redacta est. Et quamvis decorem urbis
into a-wilderness reduced is and although the-beauty of-a-city
amiserit, vires adhuc retinet metropolis, viduitatis suae
it-has-lost its-strength still retains the-metropolis of-widowhood her
dampna consolans in provectu filiorum, quos per totam
the-losses consoling in the-advancement of-the-sons whom through the-whole
septentrionis latitudinem suae legationi cotidie videt accrescere.
of-the-north breadth to-her mission daily she-sees to-grow
De quibus etiam tam laeta clamare videtur: ‘Annuntiavi et
about whom also so glad to-cry-out she-seems I-have-declared and
locuta sum, multiplicati sunt super numerum.’
spoken I-have multiplied they-are above number

Invenimus quoque limitem Saxoniae, quae trans Albiam
we-have-found also the-boundary of-Saxony which across the-Elbe
est, praescriptum a Karolo et imperatoribus ceteris, ita se
is prescribed by Charles and emperors other thus itself
continentem. Hoc est ab Albiae ripa orientali usque
containing this is from of-the-Elbe the-bank eastern all-the-way
ad rivulum quem Sclavi Mescenreiza vocant, a quo
to the-brook which the-Slavs Mescenreiza call from which
sursum limes currit per silvam Delvunder usque
upward the-boundary runs through the-wood Delvunder all-the-way
in fluvium Delvundam; sicque pervenit in Horchenbici
into the-river Delvunda and-so it-arrives at Horchenbici
et Bilenispring; inde ad Liudwinestein et Wispircon et
and Bilenispring thence to Liudwinestein and Wispircon and
Birznig progreditur. Tunc in Horbinstenon vadit usque
Birznig it-proceeds then into Horbinstenon it-goes all-the-way
in Travena silvam, sursumque per ipsam in Bulilunkin;
into the-Trave wood and-upward through it into Bulilunkin
mox in Agrimeshov, et recto ad vadum, quod dicitur
soon into Agrimeshov and straight to the-ford which is-called
Agrimeswidil, ascendit. Ubi et Burwido fecit duellum contra
Agrimeswidil it-climbs where also Burwido fought a-duel against
campionem Sclavorum, interfecitque eum: et lapis in eodem
the-champion of-the-Slavs and-killed him and a-stone in the-same
loco positus est in memoriam. Ab eadem igitur aqua
place set was as memorial from the-same therefore water
sursum procurrens terminus in stagnum Colse vadit; sicque
upward running the-boundary into the-pool Colse goes and-so
ad orientalem campum venit Zuentifeld, usque in ipsum
to the-eastern field it-comes Zuentifeld all-the-way into itself

flumen Zuentinam, per quem limes Saxoniae usque in
the-river Zuentina through which the-boundary of-Saxony all-the-way into
pelagus Scythicum et mare quod vocant orientale delabitur.
the-sea Scythian and the-sea which they-call eastern slips-down
De cuius freti natura breviter in Gestis Karoli meminit
about whose strait the-nature briefly in the-Deeds of-Charles makes-mention
Einhardus, cum de bello diceret Sclavanico. ‘Sinus’, ait,
Einhard when about the-war he-spoke Slavic a-gulf he-says
‘quidam ab occidentali occeano versus orientem porrigitur,
certain from the-western ocean toward the-east stretches
longitudinis quidem incompertae, latitudinis vero, quae nusquam
of-length indeed unexplored of-breadth indeed which nowhere
centum milia passuum excedat, cum in multis locis contractior
a-hundred thousand of-paces exceeds since in many places narrower
inveniatur. Hunc multae circumsident nationes, Dani siquidem
it-is-found this many surround nations the-Danes indeed
ac Sueones, quos Nortmannos vocamus, et septentrionale litus
and the-Swedes whom Northmen we-call both the-northern shore
et omnes in eo insulas tenent. At litus australe Sclavi et aliae
and all in it the-islands hold but the-shore southern the-Slavs and other
diversae incolunt nationes, inter quos vel praecipui sunt, quibus
various inhabit nations among whom or chief are on-whom
tunc a rege bellum inferebatur, Wilzi, quos ille una tantum
then by the-king war was-brought the-Wilzi whom he by-one only
et quam per se gesserat, expeditione ita contudit ac domuit,
and which by himself he-had-waged campaign so crushed and tamed
ut ulterius imperata facere minime rennuendum iudicarent’.
that further the-commands to-do by-no-means to-be-refused they-judged
Haec ille. Nos autem, quoniam mentio Sclavorum totiens
these-things he we moreover since mention of-the-Slavs so-often
incidit, non ab re arbitramur, si de natura et
occurs not from the-matter we-think if about the-nature and

gentibus Sclavaniae historico aliquid dicemus compendio, eo
nations of-Slavia in-historical something we-shall-say compendium for-this
quod Sclavi eo tempore studio nostri pontificis Adaldagi
that the-Slavs at-that time by-the-zeal of-our pontiff Adaldag
narrantur ad christianam religionem fere omnes conversi.
are-told to the-Christian religion almost all converted

Liber II, §§ 18–19

18–19 · SLAVIA, RETHRA, AND JUMNE

Adam describes Slavia, ten times larger than Saxony, and its peoples from the Wagrians to the Retharii, whose city Rethra with its nine gates holds the temple of the idol Redigast. At the mouth of the Oder lies Jumne, the greatest city of Europe, open to Slavs, Greeks, barbarians, and Saxons who keep their faith hidden. He traces the routes to Kiev and the courses of the Oder and Elbe.

Sclavania igitur, amplissima Germaniae provintia, a Winulis
Slavia therefore the-most-ample of-Germany province by the-Winuli
incolitur, qui olim dicti sunt Wandali. Decies maior esse
is-inhabited who once called were Vandals ten-times greater to-be
fertur, quam nostra Saxonia, praesertim si Boemiam et
is-reported than our Saxony especially if Bohemia and
eos qui trans Oddaram sunt Polanos, quia nec habitu
those who across the-Oder are the-Poles because neither in-dress
nec lingua discrepant, in partem adieceris Sclavaniae. Haec
nor in-tongue they-differ into the-part you-add of-Slavia this
autem regio cum sit armis, viris et frugibus opulentissima,
moreover region though it-is in-arms men and crops most-wealthy
firmis undique saltuum vel terminis fluminum clauditur. Eius
by-firm on-all-sides of-forests or by-bounds of-rivers is-closed its
latitudo est a meridie usque in boream, hoc est ab
breadth is from the-south all-the-way into the-north that is from

Albia fluvio usque ad mare Scythicum. Longitudo autem
the-Elbe river all-the-way to the-sea Scythian the-length moreover
illa videtur, quae initium habet ab nostra Hammaburgensi
that seems which the-beginning has from our Hamburg
parrochia et porrigitur in orientem, infinitis aucta spatiis,
diocese and stretches into the-east by-boundless increased spaces
usque in Beguariam, Ungriam et Graeciam. Populi
all-the-way into Bavaria Hungary and Greece the-peoples
Sclavorum multi, quorum primi sunt ab occidente confines
of-the-Slavs many of-whom the-first are from the-west neighbors
Transalbianis Waigri, eorum civitas Aldinburg maritima.
to-the-Transalbians the-Wagrians their city Oldenburg on-the-sea
Deinde secuntur Obodriti, qui nunc Reregi vocantur, et
then follow the-Obodrites who now Reregi are-called and
civitas eorum Magnopolis. Item versus nos Polabingi, quorum
the-city their Mecklenburg likewise toward us the-Polabians whose
civitas Razispurg. Ultra illos sunt Lingones et Warnabi.
city Ratzeburg beyond them are the-Linones and Warnabi
Mox habitant Chizzini et Circipani, quos a Tholosantibus
soon dwell the-Chizzini and Circipani whom from the-Tholosantes
et Retheris separat flumen Panis, et civitas Dimine. Ibi est
and Retharii separates the-river Peene and the-city Demmin there is
terminus Hammaburgensis parrochiae. Sunt et alii Sclavaniae
the-boundary of-the-Hamburg diocese there-are also other of-Slavia
populi, qui inter Albiam et Oddaram degunt, sicut Heveldi,
peoples who between the-Elbe and Oder live as the-Heveldi
qui iuxta Habolam fluvium sunt et Doxani, Leubuzzi, Wilini
who next-to the-Havel river are and the-Doxani Leubuzzi Wilini
et Stoderani cum multis aliis. Inter quos medii et
and Stoderani with many others among whom in-the-middle and
potentissimi omnium sunt Retharii, civitas eorum vulgatissima
most-powerful of-all are the-Retharii the-city their most-celebrated

Rethre, sedes ydolatriae. Templum ibi magnum constructum
Rethra the-seat of-idolatry a-temple there great built
est demonibus, quorum princeps est Redigast. Simulacrum eius
is to-demons of-whom the-prince is Redigast the-image his
auro, lectus ostro paratus. Civitas ipsa novem portas habet,
of-gold the-couch with-purple prepared the-city itself nine gates has
undique lacu profundo inclusa, pons ligneus transitum
on-all-sides by-a-lake deep enclosed a-bridge wooden passage
praebet, per quem tantum sacrificantibus aut responsa
affords by which only to-those-sacrificing or answers
petentibus via conceditur. Credo, ea significante causa,
seeking the-way is-granted I-believe that signifying the-cause
quod perditas animas eorum, qui ydolis serviunt, congrue
that the-lost souls of-those who idols serve fittingly

'novies Styx interfusa cohercet'.
nine-times Styx flowing-between confines

Ad quod templum ferunt a civitate Hammaburg iter
to which temple they-report from the-city Hamburg the-journey
esse quatuor dierum.
to-be of-four days
Ultra Leuticios, qui alio nomine Wilzi dicuntur, Oddara
beyond the-Leutici who by-another name Wilzi are-called the-Oder
flumen occurrit, ditissimus amnis Sclavaniae regionis. In cuius
river meets-one the-richest stream of-the-Slavic region in whose
ostio, qua Scyticas alluit paludes, nobilissima civitas Iumne
mouth where the-Scythian it-washes marshes the-most-noble city Jumne
celeberrimam praestat stacionem barbaris et Graecis, qui sunt
a-most-celebrated affords station to-barbarians and Greeks who are
in circuitu. De cuius praeconio urbis, quia magna quaedam
in the-circuit about whose praise city since great certain

et vix credibilia recitantur, volupe arbitror pauca inserere
and scarcely believable-things are-recited pleasant I-think a-few to-insert
digna relatu. Est sane maxima omnium quas Europa claudit
worthy of-telling it-is truly the-greatest of-all which Europe encloses
civitatum, quam incolunt Sclavi cum aliis gentibus, Graecis et
cities which inhabit the-Slavs with other nations Greeks and
barbaris. Nam et advenae Saxones parem cohabitandi legem
barbarians for also the-strangers Saxons an-equal of-cohabiting law
acceperunt, si tamen christianitatis titulum ibi morantes non
received if yet of-Christianity the-title there staying not
publicaverint. Omnes enim adhuc paganicis ritibus oberrant,
they-made-public all for still in-pagan rites wander-astray
ceterum moribus et hospitalitate nulla gens honestior aut
otherwise in-morals and hospitality no nation more-honorable or
benignior poterit inveniri. Urbs illa mercibus omnium
kinder shall-be-able to-be-found the-city that with-wares of-all
septentrionalium nationum locuples, nichil non habet iocundi
northern nations rich nothing not has of-pleasant
aut rari. Ibi est Olla Vulcani, quod incolae Graecum ignem
or rare there is the-Pot of-Vulcan which the-inhabitants Greek fire
vocant, de quo etiam meminit Solinus. Ibi cernitur Neptunus
call of which also makes-mention Solinus there is-seen Neptune
triplicis naturae: tribus enim fretis alluitur illa insula, quorum
of-threefold nature by-three for straits is-washed that island of-which
aiunt unum esse viridissimae speciei, alterum subalbidae,
they-say one to-be of-greenest appearance another of-whitish
tertium motu furibundo perpetuis saevit tempestatibus. Ab
the-third with-motion furious perpetual rages with-storms from
illa civitate brevi remigio traiicitur, hinc ad Dyminem
that city with-a-short rowing one-crosses hence to Demmin
urbem quae sita est in hostio Peanis fluvii, ubi et Runi
the-city which situated is in the-mouth of-the-Peene river where also the-Rani

habitant; inde ad Semland provinciam, quam possident Pruzi.
dwell thence to Samland the-province which possess the-Prussians
Iter eiusmodi est, ut ab Hammaburc vel ab Albia flumine
the-journey of-such-kind is that from Hamburg or from the-Elbe river
septimo die pervenias ad Iumne civitatem per terram; nam
on-the-seventh day you-may-come to Jumne the-city by land for
per mare navim ingrederis ab Sliaswig vel Aldinburc, ut
by sea a-ship you-enter at Schleswig or Oldenburg that
pervenias ad Iumne. Ab ipsa urbe vela tendens quartodecimo
you-may-come to Jumne from that city sails stretching on-the-fourteenth
die ascendes ad Ostrogard Ruzziae. Cuius metropolis civitas
day you-will-go-up to Ostrogard of-Russia whose metropolis city
est Chivę, aemula sceptri Constantinopolitani, clarissimum
is Kiev the-rival of-the-scepter of-Constantinople the-most-brilliant
decus Graeciae. Sicut ergo praedictum est, Oddara flumen
ornament of-Greece as therefore said-before it-is the-Oder river
oritur in profundissimo saltu Marahorum, ubi et Albia noster
rises in the-deepest forest of-the-Moravians where also the-Elbe our
principium sortitur, nec longis ab invicem spatiis, sed diverso
its-beginning obtains nor by-long from each-other spaces but by-different
currunt meatu. Alter enim, id est Oddara, vergens in boream,
they-run course the-one for that is the-Oder turning into the-north
transit per medios Winulorum populos, donec pertranseat
passes through the-midst of-the-Winuli peoples until it-passes-through
usque ad Iumnem, ubi Pomeranos dividit a Wilzis.
all-the-way to Jumne where the-Pomeranians it-divides from the-Wilzi
Alter vero, id est Albia, in occasum ruens, primo impetu
the-other indeed that is the-Elbe into the-west rushing at-the-first onset
Bechemos alluit cum Sorabis, medio cursu paganos dirimit
the-Bohemians washes with the-Sorbs in-mid course the-pagans divides

a Saxonia, novissimo alveo Hammaburgensem parrochiam
from Saxony in-its-last bed the-Hamburg diocese
scindens a Bremensi, victor occeanum ingreditur Brittanicum.
cutting from the-Bremen victor the-ocean enters British

Liber II, §§ 20–23

20–23 · HARALD, HAKON, AND THE DANISH BISHOPS

Otto the Great died, succeeded by his son and grandson, both close to Adaldag. Harald of Denmark kept the faith and spread his power over Norway, where he restored Hakon. Adam names the bishops Adaldag ordained for Denmark, among them Odinkar the elder, a Dane who preached in Sweden.

Haec de Sclavis et patria eorum, quoniam virtute
these-things about the-Slavs and fatherland their since by-the-strength
magni Ottonis ad christianitatem omnes tempore eo
of-the-great Otto to Christianity all at-time that
conversi sunt, dicta sufficiant. Nunc ad ea, quae
converted were said let-suffice now to those-things which
post mortem imperatoris et reliqua tempestate nostri
after the-death of-the-emperor and in-the-remaining season of-our
pontificis acta sunt, calamum dirigamus.
pontiff done were the-pen let-us-direct
Anno pontificis Adaldagi 38. Otto magnus imperator, domitor
in-the-year of-the-pontiff Adaldag 38th Otto the-great emperor tamer
omnium septentrionis nationum, feliciter migravit ad Dominum,
of-all of-the-north nations happily departed to the-Lord
et sepultus est in civitate sua Magadburc. Cui filius Otto
and buried was in city his Magdeburg to-whom his-son Otto
medianus succedens, per decem annos strennue gubernavit
the-middle succeeding for ten years vigorously governed

imperium. Is statim Lothario et Karolo, Francorum regibus,
the-empire he at-once Lothar and Charles of-the-Franks kings
subactis, cum in Calabriam bellum transferret, a Sarracenis et
subdued when into Calabria the-war he-carried by the-Saracens and
Graecis victor et victus, apud Romam decessit. Illi tercius
Greeks victor and vanquished at Rome departed to-him the-third
Otto, cum adhuc puer esset, in regnum substitutus, annos 18
Otto when still a-boy he-was into the-kingdom substituted for-years 18
forti et iusto sceptrum ornavit imperio. His tribus aeque
with-strong and just the-scepter adorned rule to-these three equally
fortissimis ac iustissimis imperatoribus tam carus ac familiaris
most-mighty and most-just emperors so dear and familiar
erat sanctus Adaldagus pro virtutis merito et doctrinae
was holy Adaldag for of-virtue the-merit and of-teaching
magisterio, ut a latere eorum vix aut raro divelleretur,
mastery that from the-side their scarcely or rarely he-was-torn
sicut ostendunt praecepta imperatorum ad nutum archiepiscopi
as show the-charters of-the-emperors at the-nod of-the-archbishop
disposita. In quibus etiam hoc est notandum, quod tercius
arranged in which also this is to-be-noted that the-third
Otto consistens in Wildashusin praecepta fecit. Eodem
Otto staying in Wildeshausen charters made at-the-same
tempore Hermannus, Saxonum dux, obiens, heredem suscepit
time Hermann of-the-Saxons duke dying as-heir took
filium Bennonem, qui etiam vir bonus et fortis memoratur,
his-son Benno who also a-man good and brave is-recorded
excepto quod degenerans a patre populum rapina gravavit.
except that degenerating from his-father the-people with-plunder he-burdened
Apud Magedburg quoque defuncto pontifice Adelberto,
at Magdeburg also dead the-pontiff Adalbert

Gisilharius successit in cathedram, et ipse vir sanctus, qui
Gisilher succeeded into the-chair and himself a-man holy who
novellos Winulorum populos doctrina et virtutibus illustravit.
the-new of-the-Winuli peoples by-teaching and virtues made-illustrious
Haroldus, rex Danorum, religione ac fortitudine insignis,
Harald king of-the-Danes in-religion and bravery notable
christianitatem in regno suo iam dudum benigne suscepit et
Christianity in kingdom his already long-since kindly took-up and
constanter retinuit usque in finem. Unde et regnum suum
constantly retained all-the-way into the-end whence also kingdom his
sanctitate et iusticia confirmans, ultra mare in Nortmannos
by-holiness and justice strengthening across the-sea over the-Northmen
et Anglos suam dilatavit potentiam. Emund, filius Herici,
and English his extended power Emund son of-Eric
tunc in Suedia regnavit. Is Haroldo confederatus, christianis
then in Sweden reigned he with-Harald allied to-the-Christians
eo venientibus placabilis fuit. In Norveia Haccon princeps
thither coming placable was in Norway Hakon prince
erat, quem, dum Nortmanni superbius agentem regno
was whom when the-Northmen too-proudly acting from-the-kingdom
depellerent, Haroldus sua virtute restituit et christicolis
drove-out Harald by-his strength restored and to-the-Christ-worshipers
placatum effecit. [Haccon iste crudelissimus, ex genere Inguar
appeased made Hakon this most-cruel from the-race of-Ivar
et giganteo sanguine descendens, primus inter Nordmannos
and from-giant blood descending first among the-Northmen
regnum arripuit, cum antea ducibus regerentur. Igitur
the-kingdom seized whereas before by-dukes they-were-ruled therefore
Haccon triginta quinque annis in regno exactis, obiit,
Hakon thirty five years in the-kingdom spent died
Hartildum relinquens sceptri heredem, qui simul Daniam
Hartild leaving of-the-scepter heir who together Denmark

possedit atque Nordmaniam.] Anglia, ut supra diximus et
possessed and Norway England as above we-have-said and
in Gestis Anglorum scribitur, post mortem Gudredi a filiis
in the-Deeds of-the-English is-written after the-death of-Guthred by sons
eius Analaph, Sigtrih et Reginold, per annos fere centum
his Anlaf Sihtric and Ragnald through years almost a-hundred
permansit in ditione Danorum. Tunc vero Haroldus Hiring
remained in the-power of-the-Danes then indeed Harald Hiring
filium cum exercitu misit in Angliam. Qui, subacta insula,
his-son with an-army sent into England who subdued the-island
tandem proditus et occisus est a Nordumbris.
at-last betrayed and slain was by the-Northumbrians
Adaldagus igitur archiepiscopus ordinavit in Daniam
Adaldag therefore the-archbishop ordained into Denmark
plures episcopos, quorum nomina quidem repperimus; ad
several bishops whose names indeed we-have-found to
quam vero sedem specialiter intronizati sint, haud facile
what but see specially enthroned they-were not easily
potuimus invenire. Aestimo, ea faciente causa, quod in
we-could to-find I-reckon that making the-cause that in
rudi christianitate nulli episcoporum adhuc certa sedes
raw Christianity to-none of-the-bishops yet a-fixed see
designata est, verum studio plantandae christianitatis quisque
designated was but in-zeal of-planting Christianity each
in ulteriora progressus, verbum Dei tam suis quam
into further-parts advanced the-word of-God as-much to-his-own as
alienis communiter praedicare certabant. Hoc hodieque trans
to-strangers in-common to-preach strove this even-today beyond
Daniam per Nordmanniam et Suediam facere videntur.
Denmark through Norway and Sweden to-do they-seem
Igitur episcopi in Daniam ordinati sunt hii: Hored, Liafdag,
therefore the-bishops into Denmark ordained were these Hored Liafdag

Raginbrond, et post eos Harig, Stercolf, Folgbract, [Adelbrect,]
Reginbrond and after them Harig Stercolf Folgbract Adelbrect
Merka et alii. Odinkarum seniorem ferunt ab Adaldago
Merka and others Odinkar the-elder they-report by Adaldag
in Sueoniam ordinatum strennue in gentibus legationem
into Sweden ordained vigorously among the-nations mission
suam perfecisse. Erat enim, sicut nos fama tetigit,
his to-have-accomplished he-was for as us report has-touched
vir sanctissimus et doctus in his, quae ad Deum
a-man most-holy and learned in those-things which to God
sunt, praeterea quantum ad seculum, nobilis et oriundus
are moreover as-far-as to the-world noble and sprung
ex Danis. Unde et facile barbaris quaelibet potuit de
from the-Danes whence also easily to-the-barbarians anything he-could about
nostra religione persuadere. Ceterorum vero episcoporum vix
our religion to-persuade of-the-other indeed bishops scarcely
aliquem sic clarum antiquitas prodit praeter Liafdagum
any so famous antiquity brings-forth except Liafdag
Ripensem, quem dicunt et miraculis celebrem transmarina
of-Ribe whom they-say also for-miracles celebrated overseas
praedicasse [hoc est in Sueonia vel Norvegia].
to-have-preached that is in Sweden or Norway

Liber II, §§ 24–26

24–26 · SVEIN'S REVOLT AND HARALD'S DEATH

The Slavs were Christian at this time, as King Svein told Adam. But Svein, Harald's son, conspired with the pagans against his father, who fought him like David against Absalom and fled wounded to Jumne, where he died. He was buried at Roskilde. Adaldag died in 988, in the fifty-fourth year of his office.

In Aldinburg ordinavit archiepiscopus primo, ut diximus,
in Oldenburg ordained the-archbishop first as we-have-said
Egwardum vel Evargum, deinde Wegonem, postea Eziconem,
Egward or Evagrius then Wago afterward Ezico
quorum tempore Sclavi permanserunt christiani. Ita etiam
in-whose time the-Slavs remained Christians so also
Hammaburg in pace fuit. Ecclesiae in Sclavania ubique
Hamburg in peace was churches in Slavia everywhere
erectae sunt; monasteria etiam virorum ac mulierum Deo
raised were monasteries also of-men and of-women for-God
servientium constructa sunt plurima. Testis est rex
serving built were very-many witness is the-king
Danorum, qui hodieque superest, Suein; cum recitaret
of-the-Danes who today survives Svein when he-recounted
Sclavaniam in duodeviginti pagos dispertitam esse, affirmavit
Slavia into eighteen districts divided to-be he-affirmed
nobis, absque tribus ad christianam fidem omnes fuisse
to-us except three to the-Christian faith all to-have-been
conversos, adiciens etiam: 'Principes eius temporis, Missizla,
converted adding also the-princes of-that time Mistislav
Naccon et Sederich. Sub quibus', inquit, 'pax continua fuit,
Nakon and Sederich under whom he-says peace continuous was
Sclavi sub tributo servierunt'.
the-Slavs under tribute served

Novissimis archiepiscopi temporibus res nostrae inter
in-the-last of-the-archbishop times affairs our among
barbaros fractae, christianitas in Dania turbata est,
the-barbarians broken Christianity in Denmark disturbed was
pulcrisque divinae religionis initiis invidens inimicus homo
and-the-fair of-divine religion beginnings envying the-enemy man
superseminare zizania conatus est. Nam tunc Suein Otto,
to-sow-over tares tried has for then Svein Otto
filius magni Haroldi, regis Danorum, multas in patrem
son of-the-great Harald king of-the-Danes many against his-father
molitus insidias, quomodo eum iam longaevum et minus
having-contrived plots how him already aged and less
validum regno privaret, consilium habuit et cum his,
strong of-the-kingdom he-might-deprive counsel held and with those
quos pater eius ad christianitatem coegit invitos. Subito
whom father his to Christianity had-forced unwilling suddenly
igitur facta conspiratione, Dani christianitatem abdicantes
therefore made a-conspiracy the-Danes Christianity renouncing
Suein regem constituunt, Haroldo bellum indicunt. At ille,
Svein king set-up on-Harald war declare but he
qui ab initio regni sui totam spem in Deo posuerat,
who from the-beginning of-reign his all hope in God had-placed
tunc vero et maxime commendans Christo eventum rei,
then indeed and most-of-all commending to-Christ the-outcome of-the-matter
cum bellum execraret, armis se tueri decrevit; et quasi
though war he-abhorred with-arms himself to-defend decided and as-if
alter David procedens ad bellum, filium lugebat Absalon,
another David going-out to war his-son he-mourned Absalom
magis dolens illius scelus, quam sua pericula. In quo
more grieving at-his crime than his-own dangers in which
miserabili et plus quam civili bello victa est pars Haroldi.
miserable and more than civil war conquered was the-party of-Harald

Ipse autem vulneratus ex acie fugiens, ascensa navi
he moreover wounded from the-battle-line fleeing having-boarded a-ship
elapsus est ad civitatem Sclavorum, quae Iumne dicitur.
escaped has to a-city of-the-Slavs which Jumne is-called
A quibus contra spem, quia pagani erant, humane receptus,
by whom against hope because pagans they-were humanely received
post aliquot dies ex eodem vulnere deficiens, in confessione
after some days from the-same wound failing in the-confession
Christi migravit. Corpus eius in patriam reportatum ab
of-Christ he-departed the-body his into the-fatherland carried-back by
exercitu, apud Roscald civitatem sepultum est in ecclesia,
the-army at Roskilde city buried was in the-church
quam ipse primus construxit in honore sanctae Trinitatis.
which he first built in honor of-the-holy Trinity
De cuius fine, cum istum pronepotem suum, qui nunc in
about whose end when this great-grandson his who now in
Dania regnat, Suen interrogare maluerim, velud alter Tideus,
Denmark reigns Svein to-question I-preferred like another Tydeus
crimen avi reticuit, me vero parricidium exaggerante,
the-crime of-his-grandfather he-kept-silent me indeed the-parricide exaggerating
'hoc est', inquit, 'quod nos posteri luimus et quod
this is he-says what we the-descendants pay-for and what
ipse parricida suo piavit exilio'. At ille noster Haroldus,
himself the-parricide by-his expiated exile but that our Harald
qui populo Danorum christianitatem primus indixit, qui
who to-the-people of-the-Danes Christianity first proclaimed who
totum septentrionem ecclesiis et praedicatoribus replevit,
the-whole north with-churches and preachers filled
ille, inquam, innocens vulneratus et pro Christo expulsus,
he I-say innocent wounded and for Christ expelled
martyrii palma, ut spero, non carebit. Regnavit autem annos
of-martyrdom the-palm as I-hope not he-shall-lack reigned moreover years

quinquaginta. Obitus eius in festivitate omnium sanctorum.
fifty the-death his on the-feast of-all saints
Memoria eius et uxoris Gunhilde apud nos perpetua manebit.
the-memory his and of-his-wife Gunnhild among us perpetual shall-remain
Haec in diebus Adaldagi pontificis comperimus facta, cum
these-things in the-days of-Adaldag the-pontiff we-have-found done although
tamen eius virtutes explorare non omnes potuimus. Sunt
yet his virtues to-explore not all we-could there-are
autem qui affirmant, per eum gratias sanitatum factas, et
moreover who affirm through him graces of-healings done both
tunc cum adhuc viveret, et post mortem ad sepulcrum eius,
then when still he-lived and after death at the-tomb his
et alia. [Sermo fratrum est, coecos frequenter illuminatos
and other-things the-talk of-the-brothers is the-blind often enlightened
fuisse et alias contigisse virtutes.] Certissimum vero est,
to-have-been and other to-have-happened powers most-certain indeed it-is
eum tam nostro populo quam Transalbianis et Fresonum
him as-much for-our people as for-the-Transalbians and of-the-Frisians
genti leges et iura constituisse, quae adhuc pro
for-the-nation laws and rights to-have-established which still for
auctoritate viri servare contendunt. Interea senex fidelis
the-authority of-the-man to-keep they-strive meanwhile the-old-man faithful
Adaldagus de legatione sua voti compos effectus, et in
Adaldag about mission his of-his-wish possessed made and in
omni opere suo domi forisque prosperatus, in senecta uberi
every work his at-home and-abroad prospered in old-age rich
migravit ad Dominum anno sacerdotii nobiliter ministrati
departed to the-Lord in-the-year of-priesthood nobly ministered
54. Cuius excessus anno Domini 988. contigit. Et sepultus
54th whose departure in-the-year of-the-Lord 988 happened and buried

est in ecclesia Bremensi, a capite Leuderici episcopi a
he-was in the-church of-Bremen at the-head of-Leuderic the-bishop on
meridiali plaga. Obiitque indictione prima 3. Kal. Maii.
the-southern side and-he-died in-the-indiction first on-the-3rd Kalends of-May

Liber II, §§ 27–29

27–29 · LIBENTIUS, SVEIN'S PUNISHMENT, AND THE PIRATES

Libentius, Adaldag's companion from Italy, was chaste, humble, and generous. King Svein persecuted the Christians, was twice captured by the Slavs and ransomed, and was driven from Denmark by Eric of Sweden. Pirates called Ascomanni sailed up the Elbe, defeated the Saxons at Stade, and mutilated their captives.

Libentius sedit annis 25. Palleum suscepit a papa XV.
Libentius sat years 25 the-pallium he-received from pope fifteenth
Johanne, virgam episcopalem meruit ab Ottone tercio.
John the-rod episcopal he-merited from Otto the-third
Primus omnium consecratus est a suffraganeis. Itaque vir
first of-all consecrated he-was by the-suffragans and-so a-man
litteratissimus et omni morum probitate decoratus ab Italia
most-lettered and with-every of-morals uprightness adorned from Italy
quondam pontificem secutus est Adaldagum. Cuius vitam
once the-pontiff followed has Adaldag whose life
emulatus et magisterium, solus ex dispositione tanti patris
having-emulated and mastery alone by the-disposition of-so-great a-father
dignus inventus est, cui Hammaburgensis cura parrochiae
worthy found he-was to-whom of-the-Hamburg the-care diocese
crederetur. Dicunt aliqui, vicedomnum Ottonem, licet
should-be-entrusted they-say some the-steward Otto although
avunculo gloriatus sit pontifice Adaldago, cessisse
in-uncle boasted he-may-have the-pontiff Adaldag to-have-yielded

tamen huius electioni Libentionis, in quo nichil reprehensibile
yet of-this to-the-election of-Libentius in whom nothing reprehensible
vel inimicus possit obicere. [Dicunt enim tantae castitatis, ut
even an-enemy could to-object they-say for of-such chastity that
raro se mulieribus videndum praebuerit, tantae abstinentiae,
rarely himself to-women to-be-seen he-offered of-such abstinence
ut pallida ieiuniis ora portaverit, tantaeque humilitatis vel
that pale with-fasts a-face he-bore and-such humility or
caritatis, ut in claustro sicut unus fratrum vixerit.] Multae
charity that in the-cloister as one of-the-brothers he-lived many
virtutes eius; quippe contentus acquisitis raro curiam
the-virtues his indeed content with-things-acquired rarely the-court
adiit pro acquirendis; domi sedens quietus, parrochiae
he-approached for things-to-be-acquired at-home sitting quiet of-diocese
suae curam egit diligentissimam, totumque studium vertens
his care he-took most-diligent and-all zeal turning
ad lucrum animarum, districtissima, ut aiunt, regula custodivit
to the-gain of-souls with-the-strictest as they-say rule he-guarded
omnes congregationes suas. [Archiepiscopus etiam per se
all congregations his the-archbishop also by himself
curam egit hospitalis, fratribus et infirmis cotidiano
care took of-the-hospital to-the-brothers and to-the-sick with-daily
ministrans obsequio, ipse quoque vice sua xenodochium
ministering service he also in-his place the-hospice
nepoti suo commendavit Libentio.] Dum adhuc pax esset
to-nephew his entrusted Libentius while still peace was
in Sclavania, Transalbianos populos frequenter visitavit et
in Slavia the-Transalbian peoples often he-visited and
matrem Hammaburg paterno fovit amore, legationem suam
mother Hamburg with-fatherly cherished love the-mission his
ad gentes magno, ut decessores sui, studio executus est,
to the-nations with-great as predecessors his zeal carried-out he-has

licet obstaret dierum malicia. Quo tempore cum magnam
although stood-against of-the-days the-malice at-which time when a-great
Suein rex persecutionem christianorum exercuisset in
Svein the-king persecution of-the-Christians had-practiced in
Dania, fertur archiepiscopus supplicibus legatis et crebris
Denmark it-is-reported the-archbishop by-suppliant envoys and frequent
muneribus laborasse, ut ferocis animum regis christianis
gifts to-have-labored that the-fierce mind of-the-king to-the-Christians
mansuetum redderet. Quibus ille reiectis, in sua crudelitate
gentle he-might-make which he rejected in his cruelty
ac perfidia sevire cepit. Secuta est ultio divina in
and perfidy to-rage began followed has the-vengeance divine upon
regem Deo rebellem. Nam cum bellum susciperet contra
the-king to-God rebellious for when war he-undertook against
Sclavos, bis captus et in Sclavaniam ductus, tociens a
the-Slavs twice captured and into Slavia led as-often by
Danis ingenti pondere auri redemptus est. Nec tamen
the-Danes with-a-huge weight of-gold redeemed was nor yet
adhuc reverti voluit ad Deum, quem primo in morte
still to-turn-back he-wished to God whom first in the-death
patris offendit et deinde in nece fidelium irritavit,
of-his-father he-offended and then in the-slaughter of-the-faithful provoked
et iratus est furore Dominus et tradidit eum in manus
and grown-angry has with-fury the-Lord and delivered him into the-hands
inimicorum suorum, ut disceret non blasphemare.
of-enemies his that he-might-learn not to-blaspheme
Tunc potentissimus rex Sueonum Hericus, exercitu
then the-most-mighty king of-the-Swedes Eric with-an-army
innumerabili sicut harena maris collecto, Daniam invadit,
countless as the-sand of-the-sea gathered Denmark invades
et occurrit ei Suein, derelictus a Deo, frustra sperans
and meets him Svein forsaken by God vainly hoping

in ydolis suis. Multa utrimque bella navalia — sic enim
in idols his many on-both-sides battles naval so for
ea gens confligere solet — copiae Danorum omnes
that nation to-fight is-accustomed the-forces of-the-Danes all
obtritae, Hericus rex victor optinuit Daniam. Suein a
crushed Eric the-king victor obtained Denmark Svein from
regno depulsus dignam factis suis a Deo zelote recepit
the-kingdom driven-out worthy of-deeds his from God the-jealous received
mercedem. Et haec nobis iunior Suein recitavit in
the-wage and these-things to-us the-younger Svein recounted in
avo suo contigisse, iusto Dei iudicio, quoniam illum
grandfather his to-have-happened by-the-just of-God judgment since him
dereliquit, quem pater eius bonum defensorem habuit.
he-forsook whom father his as-good defender had
Ferunt, eo tempore classem pyratarum, quos nostri
they-report at-that time a-fleet of-pirates whom our-people
Ascomannos vocant, Saxoniae appulsam, vastasse omnia
Ascomanni call to-Saxony driven-ashore to-have-laid-waste all
Fresiae atque Haduloae maritima. Cumque per Albiae fluminis
of-Frisia and of-Hadeln the-coasts and-when through of-the-Elbe river
ostium ascendentes irrumperent provintiam, tunc congregati
the-mouth ascending they-burst-into the-province then gathered
Saxonum magnates, cum parvum habuissent exercitum,
of-the-Saxons the-magnates though a-small they-had army
egredientes a navibus barbaros exceperunt apud Stadium,
the-ones-going-out from the-ships the-barbarians met at Stade
quod est oportunum Albiae portus et praesidium. Magnum
which is a-convenient of-the-Elbe port and stronghold great
et memoriabile nimisque infelix erat illud praelium, in
and memorable and-exceedingly unfortunate was that battle in
quo viriliter utrisque certantibus, nostri tandem minores sunt
which manfully both contending ours at-last fewer were

reperti. Sueones et Dani victores totam virtutem Saxonum
found the-Swedes and Danes victors the-whole strength of-the-Saxons
optrivere. Capti sunt ibi marchio Sigafridus, comes Thiadricus
crushed taken were there the-margrave Sigfred count Theoderic
et alii illustres viri, quos, vinctis post terga manibus,
and other illustrious men whom bound behind their-backs hands
barbari traxerunt ad naves, et pedes eorum catena
the-barbarians dragged to the-ships and the-feet their with-a-chain
strinxerunt, totam exinde provintiam impune praedantes. Sed
bound the-whole thereafter province with-impunity plundering but
cum de captivis solus marchio Sigafridus cuiusdam piscatoris
when of the-captives alone the-margrave Sigfred of-a-certain fisherman
auxilio furtim noctu sublatus evaderet, pyratae mox in furorem
by-the-aid secretly by-night carried-off escaped the-pirates soon into fury
versi, omnes quos in vinculis tenuerunt meliores ad ludibrium
turned all whom in chains they-held the-better-ones as a-mockery
habentes, manus eis pedesque truncarunt, ac nare praecisa
holding the-hands to-them and-feet cut-off and the-nose cut-off
deformantes, ad terram semianimes proiciebant. Ex quibus erant
disfiguring onto the-land half-dead were-throwing of whom were
aliqui nobiles viri, qui postea supervixerunt longo tempore,
some noble men who afterward survived a-long time
obprobrium imperio et miserabile spectaculum omni populo.
a-reproach to-the-empire and a-miserable spectacle to-all the-people

Liber II, §§ 30–33

30–33 · THE ASCOMANNI DESTROYED; SVEIN'S EXILE; POPPO

Duke Benno and the margrave Sigfred avenged the raid, and a captured horseman led another band of pirates into the marsh at Glinstermoor, where they were destroyed. Bremen was walled for fear of the pirates. Svein wandered in exile until the king of the Scots took him in. Under Eric, Bishop Poppo carried hot iron and wore a burning waxed tunic unharmed.

Quam plagam mox cum exercitu supervenientes dux Benno
which blow soon with an-army coming-upon duke Benno
et Sigafridus marchio vindicabant; et illi quidem pyratae,
and Sigfred the-margrave avenged and those indeed pirates
quos apud Stadium egressos fuisse diximus, ab eisdem
whom at Stade gone-out to-have-been we-have-said by the-same
contriti sunt.
crushed were
Altera pars Ascomannorum, qui per Wirraham flumen
the-other part of-the-Ascomanni who by the-Weser river
egressi Hadoloae fines usque ad Liestmonam depraedati
gone-out of-Hadeln the-bounds all-the-way to Lesum plundered
sunt, cum maxima captivorum multitudine pervenerunt ad
had with a-very-great of-captives multitude came to
paludem quae dicitur Chlindesmor. Ubi a nostris, qui pone
the-marsh which is-called Glinstermoor where by ours who behind
sequebantur, offensi, omnes usque ad unum obtruncati
were-following attacked all all-the-way to one cut-down
sunt; quorum numerus erat viginti milia. [Quidam eques
were whose number was twenty thousand a-certain horseman
Saxonum captus ab eis, dum facerent eum ducem itineris
of-the-Saxons captured by them when they-made him guide of-journey

sui, perduxit eos in difficiliora loca paludis, in qua diu
their led them into the-more-difficult places of-the-marsh in which long
fatigati, leviter a nostris superati sunt. Heriward nomen
wearied easily by ours overcome they-were Heriward name
habet, perenni Saxonum laude celebratur].
he-has by-perennial of-the-Saxons praise he-is-celebrated
Ex illo nimirum tempore pyratarum crebra et hostilis
from that surely time of-pirates frequent and hostile
eruptio facta est in hanc regionem. In metu erant omnes
eruption made was into this region in fear were all
Saxoniae civitates; et ipsa Brema vallo muniri coepit
of-Saxony the-cities and itself Bremen with-a-rampart to-be-fortified began
firmissimo. Tunc quoque, sicut antiqui meminerunt, Libentius
most-firm then also as the-ancients recall Libentius
archiepiscopus tesaurum ecclesiae omniaque ecclesiastica
the-archbishop the-treasure of-the-church and-all ecclesiastical-things
deportari fecit ad Bugginensem praeposituram. Tantus erat
to-be-carried had to the-Bücken provostship so-great was
timor in omnibus finibus huius parrochiae. Nam ipse
the-fear in all the-bounds of-this diocese for himself
Libentius, ut sermo est, pyratas, qui episcopatum vastabant,
Libentius as the-talk is the-pirates who the-bishopric were-wasting
anathematis gladio dampnavit. Quorum unus fertur
of-anathema with-the-sword condemned of-whom one it-is-reported
in Norvegia defunctus, per annos septuaginta corpore
in Norway dead through years seventy with-body
integro permansisse, usque ad tempora domni Adalberti
whole to-have-remained all-the-way to the-times of-the-lord Adalbert
archiepiscopi, quando Adalwardus episcopus illuc veniens
the-archbishop when Adalward the-bishop thither coming

defunctum [vinculo excommunicationis] absolvit, et mox
the-dead-man from-the-bond of-excommunication absolved and soon
cadaver in cinerem solutum est.
the-corpse into ash dissolved was
Post vindictam ergo scelerum, quae in ecclesias Dei
after the-vengeance therefore of-the-crimes which against the-churches of-God
et christianos commiserat, [Suein rex victus] et a suis
and the-Christians he-had-committed Svein the-king conquered and by his-own
derelictus, quippe quem Deus deseruit, errabundus et inops
forsaken since whom God deserted wandering and destitute
auxilii venit ad Nortmannos, ubi tunc filius Hacconis Thrucco
of-aid came to the-Northmen where then the-son of-Hakon Tryggvi
regnavit. Is quoniam paganus erat, nulla super exulem
reigned he since pagan he-was no over the-exile
misericordia motus est. Ita ille infelix, et a toto orbe
by-mercy moved was so he unhappy and by the-whole world
reiectus, in Angliam transfretavit, frustra solatium quaerens
rejected into England crossed vainly comfort seeking
ab inimicis. Quo tempore Brittannis Adelrad filius Edgaris
from enemies at-which time over-the-Britons Æthelred son of-Edgar
imperavit. Is non immemor iniuriarum, quas Dani ex antiquo
ruled he not unmindful of-the-wrongs which the-Danes from of-old
Anglis inflixerant, exulem reppulit. Quem tandem, miseratus
on-the-English had-inflicted the-exile repelled whom at-last having-pitied
infortunii, rex Scothorum benigne recepit ibidemque
of-the-misfortune the-king of-the-Scots kindly received and-there
Suein bis septem annos exulavit usque ad mortem Herici.
Svein twice seven years was-exiled all-the-way to the-death of-Eric
Haec parricidae avi pericula Suein rex nobis attonitis
these of-the-parricide grandfather perils Svein the-king to-us astonished
exposuit; deinde ad Hericum victorem reflexit narrationem.
set-forth then to Eric the-victor he-turned-back the-narrative

'Hericus', inquit, 'duo regna optinuit, Danorum Sueonumque,
Eric he-says two kingdoms obtained of-the-Danes and-of-the-Swedes
et ipse paganus, christianis valde inimicus'. Ad eum fertur
and himself a-pagan to-the-Christians very hostile to him it-is-reported
legatus fuisse caesaris ac Hammaburgensis episcopi
legate to-have-been of-the-caesar and of-the-Hamburg bishop
quidam Poppo, vir sanctus et sapiens, et tunc ad Sliaswig
a-certain Poppo a-man holy and wise and then at Schleswig
ordinatus, de regno Danorum seu pace christianorum
ordained about the-kingdom of-the-Danes or the-peace of-the-Christians
caesaris partes expostulans. Aiuntque, eum pro assertione
of-the-caesar part demanding and-they-say him for the-assertion
christianitatis, cum barbari suo more signum quaererent,
of-Christianity when the-barbarians in-their manner a-sign sought
nil moratum, statim ignitum ferrum gestasse manu et
nothing having-delayed at-once a-glowing iron to-have-carried in-hand and
illaesum apparuisse. Dumque hoc facile omnem gentilibus
unharmed to-have-appeared and-while this easily all from-the-gentiles
ambiguitatem erroris tollere videretur, iterum sanctus Dei, pro
ambiguity of-error to-remove seemed again the-saint of-God for
submovendo illius gentis paganismo, aliud dicitur ostendisse
removing of-that nation the-paganism another he-is-said to-have-shown
vel magnum miraculum: tunicam scilicet indutus ceratam,
even great miracle a-tunic namely having-put-on waxed
cum staret in medio populi circo, in nomine Domini
when he-stood in the-middle of-the-people in-a-circle in the-name of-the-Lord
praecepit eam incendi. Ipse vero, oculis ac manibus in
he-ordered it to-be-kindled he indeed with-eyes and hands to
coelum tensis, liquentes flammas tam patienter sustinuit, ut,
heaven stretched the-melting flames so patiently endured that
veste prorsus combusta et in favillam redacta, hylari
the-garment utterly burned and into ash reduced with-cheerful

et iocundo vultu nec fumum incendii se sensisse
and joyful face not-even the-smoke of-the-burning himself to-have-felt
testatus sit. Cuius novitati miraculi et tunc multa milia
testified he-has at-whose novelty of-miracle both then many thousands
crediderunt per eum; et usque hodie per populos et
believed through him and all-the-way-to today among the-peoples and
ecclesias Danorum celebre nomen Popponis effertur.
churches of-the-Danes celebrated the-name of-Poppo is-carried-forth

Liber II, §§ 34–37

34–37 · ODINKAR THE YOUNGER, OLAF TRYGGVASON, AND SVEIN'S RETURN

Odinkar the younger, a Dane of royal blood, became bishop of Ribe. In England Olaf Tryggvason was baptized and brought the faith to Norway. Eric of Sweden was baptized in Denmark but relapsed. After Eric's death Svein recovered his kingdom and married Eric's widow; driven out by her son Olaf of Sweden, he repented, was restored, and made a pact with Olaf to keep and spread Christianity.

Haec aliqui apud Ripam gesta confirmant, alii apud
these-things some at Ribe done confirm others at
Heidibam, quae Sliaswig dicitur. Claruit etiam tunc in Dania
Hedeby which Schleswig is-called was-famous also then in Denmark
felicis memoriae Odinkar senior, de quo supra diximus, quod in
of-happy memory Odinkar the-elder of whom above we-have-said that in
Fune, Seland, Scone ac in Suedia praedicans, multos ad fidem
Funen Zealand Scania and in Sweden preaching many to the-faith
christianam convertit. Eius discipulus et nepos fuit alter
Christian he-converted his disciple and nephew was the-other
Odinkar iunior, et ipse nobilis de semine regio Danorum,
Odinkar the-younger and himself noble of the-seed royal of-the-Danes
dives agri, adeo ut ex eius patrimonio narrent episcopatum
rich in-land so-much that from his patrimony they-relate the-bishopric

Ripensem fundatum. Quem dudum Bremae scolis traditum,
of-Ribe founded whom long-ago at-Bremen to-the-schools handed-over
pontifex Adaldagus suis fertur manibus baptizasse,
the-pontiff Adaldag with-his it-is-reported hands to-have-baptized
suoque nomine Adaldagus vocatus est. Is vero a Libentione
and-by-his name Adaldag called he-was he indeed by Libentius
archiepiscopo nunc ordinatus in gentes, apud Ripam sedem
the-archbishop now ordained for the-nations at Ribe a-see
accepit. Nam et illustri vita sanctae conversationis Deo
received for both by-illustrious life of-holy conduct to-God
et hominibus acceptus erat, et christianitatem in Dania
and men acceptable he-was and Christianity in Denmark
fortissime defendit. Hos viros comperimus illo tempore
most-bravely defended these men we-have-found at-that time
claros in ea regione, aliis qui adhuc supervixerant a diebus
famous in that region others who still had-survived from the-days
Adaldagi non ociosis. Qui etiam in Norvegiam et Suediam
of-Adaldag not idle who also into Norway and Sweden
progressi, populum multum Iesu Christo collegerunt. A
having-advanced a-people much for-Jesus Christ gathered by
quibus traditur Olaph, Trucconis filius, qui Nortmannis
whom it-is-handed-down Olaf of-Tryggvi the-son who over-the-Northmen
imperavit, baptizatus, ex ea gente primus fuisse christianus.
ruled baptized of that nation the-first to-have-been Christian
[Olaph, Thrucconis filius, expulsus a Norwegia, venit in
Olaf of-Tryggvi the-son expelled from Norway came into
Angliam ibique suscepit christianitatem, quam ipse primus in
England and-there took-up Christianity which he first into
patriam revexit duxitque uxorem a Dania, superbissimam
the-fatherland carried-back and-he-led as-wife from Denmark the-most-proud
Thore, cuius instinctu bellum Danis intulit.]
Thyre at-whose instigation war on-the-Danes he-brought

Alii dicunt olim et tunc ab Anglia quosdam episcopos vel
others say once and then from England certain bishops or
presbyteros euangelizandi gratia egressos a domo ab eisque
presbyters of-evangelizing for-the-sake gone-out from home by and-them
Olaph baptizatum et ceteros, quorum praecipuus esset quidam
Olaf baptized and the-others of-whom the-chief was a-certain
Iohannes episcopus, et alii postea dicendi. Si hoc verum
John bishop and others afterward to-be-mentioned if this true
est, non invidet inquam mater Hammaburgensis ecclesia, si
is not envies I-say the-mother Hamburg church if
filiis suis benefecerint etiam extranei, dicens cum apostolo:
to-sons her shall-have-done-good even strangers saying with the-apostle
'Quidam praedicant per invidiam et contentionem, quidam
some preach through envy and contention some
autem propter bonam voluntatem et karitatem. Quid enim?
moreover because-of good will and charity what for
Dum omni modo sive per occasionem, sive per veritatem
while in-every way whether through pretext or through truth
Christus annuncietur, et in hoc', inquit, 'gaudeo et gaudebo'.
Christ is-proclaimed and in this he-says I-rejoice and shall-rejoice
Hericus igitur Suedorum rex in Dania conversus ad
Eric therefore of-the-Swedes king in Denmark converted to
christianitatem, ibidem baptizatus est. Qua occasione
Christianity there baptized was by-which occasion
praedicatores in Suediam transeuntes a Dania, fiducialiter
the-preachers into Sweden crossing from Denmark confidently
agebant in nomine Domini. Audivi ego a prudentissimo
acted in the-name of-the-Lord I-heard I from the-most-prudent
rege Danorum, Hericum post susceptam christianitatem denuo
king of-the-Danes Eric after taken-up Christianity again

relapsum ad paganismum. Quod vero cum Ottone tercio
relapsed to paganism that indeed with Otto the-third
pugnaverit et victus sit, ab aliis comperi; rex tacuit.
he-fought and conquered was from others I-learned the-king kept-silent
Post mortem diu optatam Herici Suein ab exilio regressus
after the-death long desired of-Eric Svein from exile returned
optinuit regnum patrum suorum, anno depulsionis vel
obtained the-kingdom of-fathers his in-the-year of-expulsion or
peregrinationis suae 14; et accepit uxorem Herici relictam,
of-pilgrimage his 14th and took as-wife of-Eric the-widow
matrem Olaph, quae peperit ei Chnut. Sed nichil illi
the-mother of-Olaf who bore to-him Cnut but nothing him
profuit affinitas conubii, cui Deus iratus est. [Olaph rex
profited the-affinity of-marriage with-whom God angry has Olaf king
Sueonum christianissimus erat filiamque Sclavorum Estred
of-the-Swedes most-Christian was and-the-daughter of-the-Slavs Estrid
nomine de Obodritis accepit uxorem, ex qua genitus est
by-name of the-Obodrites took as-wife from whom begotten was
filius Iacobus et filia Ingrad, quam rex sanctus Gerzlef
a-son James and a-daughter Ingrid whom the-king holy Jaroslav
de Ruzzia duxit in coniugium.] Olaph sane, qui post obitum
of Russia led into marriage Olaf truly who after the-death
patris Herici regnum super Suevos accepit, cum exercitu
of-his-father Eric the-kingdom over the-Swedes received with an-army
superveniens infelicem Suein a regno expulit et ipse
coming-upon unhappy Svein from the-kingdom expelled and himself
optinuit Daniam. Cognovit autem Suein, quod Dominus
obtained Denmark knew moreover Svein that the-Lord
ipse est Deus, et reversus in semetipsum, peccata
himself is God and having-returned into himself sins
sua prae oculis habuit poenitensque oravit ad Dominum,
his before eyes had and-repenting prayed to the-Lord

qui exaudivit eum et dedit illi gratiam in conspectu
who heard him and gave to-him grace in the-sight
inimicorum suorum, et restituit eum Olaph in regnum
of-enemies his and restored him Olaf into kingdom
suum, eo quod matrem suam habuerit. Feceruntque pactum
his for-this that the-mother his he-had and-they-made a-pact
ad invicem firmissimum, ut christianitatem in regno suo
with each-other most-firm that Christianity in kingdom their
plantatam retinerent et in exteras effunderent nationes.
planted they-should-keep and into foreign should-pour-out nations

Liber II, §§ 38–42

38–42 · OLAF'S DEATH AND THE SLAVIC REVOLT

Olaf Tryggvason, a diviner called Crowbone, attacked Svein and drowned himself after his defeat between Scania and Zealand. Svein, master of two kingdoms, imposed Christianity on Norway. After Otto III's death the Slavs, oppressed by Christian judges, rose under Mistivoi and Mstislav, burned the churches, and martyred priests at Oldenburg and Hamburg.

Audiens autem rex Nortmannorum Olaph, filius Trucci,
hearing moreover the-king of-the-Northmen Olaf son of-Tryggvi
de coniunctione regum, iratus est contra Suein nimis,
about the-union of-the-kings angry was against Svein very-much
ratus eum quasi derelictum a Deo tociensque depulsum,
thinking him as-if forsaken by God and-so-often driven-out
a sua etiam multitudine facile posse depelli. Collecta
by his even multitude easily to-be-able to-be-driven-out gathered
igitur classe innumera bellum intulit regi Danorum. Hoc
therefore a-fleet countless war he-brought on-the-king of-the-Danes this
factum est inter Sconiam et Seland, ubi solent reges navali
done was between Scania and Zealand where are-wont kings in-naval

bello confligere. Est autem brevis traiectus Baltici maris
war to-clash there-is moreover a-short crossing of-the-Baltic sea
apud Halsinburg, in quo loco Seland a Sconia videri
at Helsingborg in which place Zealand from Scania to-be-seen
possit, familiare latibulum pyratis. Ibi ergo congressi,
can a-familiar hiding-place for-pirates there therefore having-engaged
Nortmanni a Danis sunt victi et fusi sunt. Olaph rex,
the-Northmen by the-Danes were conquered and routed were Olaf the-king
qui forte solus remansit, in mare se praecipitans, dignum
who by-chance alone remained into the-sea himself hurling a-worthy
vitae finem invenit. [Uxor eius post mortem viri
of-life end found the-wife his after the-death of-her-husband
fame inediaque miserabiliter vitam consumpsit, ut digna
by-hunger and-starvation miserably life consumed as worthy
erat.] Narrant eum aliqui illum christianum fuisse, quidam
she-was relate him some that-man Christian to-have-been some
christianitatis desertorem; omnes autem affirmant peritum
of-Christianity a-deserter all moreover affirm skilled
auguriorum, servatorem sortium, et in avium prognosticis
in-auguries an-observer of-lots and in of-birds prognostics
omnem spem suam posuisse. Quare etiam cognomen accepit,
all hope his to-have-placed wherefore also a-surname he-received
ut Olaph Cracabben diceretur. Nam et artis magicae, ut
that Olaf Crowbone he-should-be-called for also of-the-art magic as
aiunt, studio deditus, omnes, quibus illa redundat patria,
they-say to-the-study given all with-whom that abounds fatherland
maleficos habuit domesticos, eorumque deceptus errore periit.
sorcerers he-had as-household and-by-their deceived error perished
Suein, interfecto Cracabben, duo regna possedit. Ipse igitur,
Svein slain Crowbone two kingdoms possessed he therefore
mox destructo ritu ydololatriae, christianitatem in Nortmannia
soon destroyed the-rite of-idolatry Christianity in Norway

per edictum suscipere iussit. Tunc etiam Gotebaldum quendam
by edict to-take-up ordered then also Gotebald a-certain
ab Anglia venientem episcopum in Sconia posuit doctorem, qui
from England coming as-bishop in Scania he-set a-teacher who
aliquando in Suedia, saepe dicitur euangelizasse in Norvegia.
sometimes in Sweden often is-said to-have-evangelized in Norway
Interea millesimus ab incarnatione Domini annus feliciter
meanwhile the-thousandth from the-incarnation of-the-Lord year happily
impletus est, et hic est annus archiepiscopi 12. Sequenti
fulfilled was and this is the-year of-the-archbishop 12th in-the-following
anno fortissimus Otto imperator, qui iam Danos, Sclavos
year the-most-mighty Otto emperor who already the-Danes Slavs
itemque Francos et Italos domuerat, cum iam tercio
and-likewise the-Franks and Italians had-tamed when already for-the-third-time
Romam victor intrasset, inmatura morte preventus occubuit.
Rome as-victor he-had-entered by-untimely death overtaken fell
Post mortem eius regnum in contentione remansit. Tunc vero
after the-death his the-kingdom in contention remained then indeed
et Sclavi a christianis iudicibus plus iusto compressi, excusso
both the-Slavs by Christian judges more than-just oppressed shaken-off
tandem iugo servitutis, libertatem suam armis defendere
at-last the-yoke of-servitude liberty their with-arms to-defend
coacti sunt. Principes Winulorum erant Mystiwoi et Mizzidrog,
forced were the-princes of-the-Winuli were Mistivoi and Mstislav
quorum ductu sedicio inflammata est. His ducibus
by-whose leadership the-sedition inflamed was with-these leaders
Sclavi rebellantes totam primo Nortalbingiam ferro et igne
the-Slavs rebelling the-whole first Nordalbingia with-iron and fire
depopulati sunt. Deinde reliquam peragrantes Sclavoniam, omnes
depopulated have then the-rest traversing Slavia all
ecclesias incenderunt et ad solum diruerunt. Sacerdotes autem
the-churches burned and to the-ground pulled-down the-priests moreover

et reliquos ecclesiarum ministros variis suppliciis enecantes,
and the-other of-the-churches ministers with-various tortures killing
nullum christianitatis vestigium trans Albiam reliquerunt.
no of-Christianity trace across the-Elbe they-left
Apud Hammaburg eo tempore ac deinceps multi ex clero
at Hamburg at-that time and thereafter many of the-clergy
et civibus in captivitatem abducti sunt, plures etiam interfecti
and citizens into captivity led-away were more also killed
propter odium christianitatis. Narravit nobis diu memorandus
because-of hatred of-Christianity told us long to-be-remembered
rex Danorum, qui omnes barbarorum gestas res in memoria
the-king of-the-Danes who all of-the-barbarians the-done things in memory
tenuit acsi scriptae essent, Aldinburg civitatem populosissimam
held as-if written they-were Oldenburg the-city most-populous
de christianis inventam esse. 'Sexaginta', inquit, 'presbyteri,
of Christians found to-be sixty he-says presbyters
ceteris more pecudum obtruncatis, ibi ad ludibrium
the-others in-the-manner of-cattle cut-down there for mockery
servati sunt, quorum maior loci praepositus Oddar nomen
kept were of-whom the-elder of-the-place the-provost Oddar as-name
habuit, noster consanguineus. Ille igitur cum ceteris tali
had our kinsman he therefore with the-others by-such
martyrio consummatus est, ut, cute capitis in modum crucis
martyrdom consummated was that the-skin of-the-head in the-manner of-a-cross
incisa, ferro cerebrum singulis aperiretur. Deinde ligatis
cut with-iron the-brain to-each was-opened then bound
post tergum manibus confessores Dei per singulas civitates
behind the-back their-hands the-confessors of-God through the-several cities
Sclavorum tracti sunt [et aut verbere aut alio modo vexati],
of-the-Slavs dragged were and either by-the-lash or in-another way tormented
usque dum deficerent. Ista illi spectacula facti et angelis
all-the-way while they-failed these they spectacles made both to-angels

et hominibus in stadio medii cursus exhalaverunt victorem
and to-men in the-stadium of-mid course breathed-out victorious
spiritum'. Multa in hunc modum per diversas Sclavorum
spirit many-things in this manner through various of-the-Slavs
provintias tunc facta memorantur, quae scriptorum penuria
provinces then done are-recorded which of-writers for-lack
nunc habentur pro fabulis. De quibus cum regem amplius
now are-held for fables about which when the-king further
interrogarem: 'Cessa', inquit, 'fili, tantos habemus in Dania
I-was-questioning stop he-says son so-many we-have in Denmark
vel Sclavania martyres, ut vix possint libro comprehendi'.
or Slavia martyrs that scarcely they-could in-a-book to-be-comprised
Omnes igitur Sclavi, qui inter Albiam et Oddaram habitant,
all therefore the-Slavs who between the-Elbe and Oder dwell
per annos 70 et amplius christianitatem coluerunt, omni
through years 70 and more Christianity practiced in-all
tempore Ottonum, talique modo se absciderunt a
the-time of-the-Ottos and-in-such manner themselves cut-off from
corpore Christi et ecclesiae, cui antea coniuncti fuerant.
the-body of-Christ and the-church to-which before joined they-had-been
O vere occulta super homines Dei iudicia, qui miseretur
O truly hidden over men of-God the-judgments who has-mercy
cui vult, et quem vult indurat. Cuius omnipotentiam
on-whom he-wishes and whom he-wishes hardens whose omnipotence
mirantes, videmus eos ad paganismum esse relapsos, qui
marveling we-see those to paganism to-have relapsed who
primi crediderunt, illis autem conversis ad Christum, qui
first believed those moreover converted to Christ who
videbantur novissimi. Ille igitur iudex iustus, fortis et
seemed the-last he therefore the-judge just strong and
patiens, qui olim, deletis coram Israel septem gentibus
patient who once destroyed before Israel seven nations

Chanaan, solos reservavit Allophilos, a quibus transgressi
of-Canaan alone reserved the-Philistines by whom the-transgressors
punirentur, ille, inquam, modicam gentilium portionem nunc
should-be-punished he I-say a-small of-gentiles portion now
indurare voluit, per quos nostra confunderetur perfidia.
to-harden wished through whom our should-be-confounded perfidy

Liber II, §§ 43–46

43–46 · LIBENTIUS'S DEATH AND UNWAN

Libentius sent bishops to Sweden and Norway and died in 1013. Unwan, of the Immeding family, brought the congregations under the canonical rule and turned pagan groves into churches. Duke Bernard rebelled against Henry and harassed the churches, but Unwan's magnanimity shamed him into submission.

Haec facta sunt ultimo tempore senioris Libentii, sub duce
these-things done were in-the-last time of-the-elder Libentius under duke
Bernardo, filio Bennonis, qui populum Sclavorum graviter
Bernard son of-Benno who the-people of-the-Slavs heavily
afflixit. Eodemque tempore contentio Ferdensis episcopi
afflicted and-at-the-same time the-contention of-the-Verden bishop
Bernarii de Ramsolan coram papa Sergio terminata est.
Bernhar about Ramelsloh before pope Sergius ended was
Anno archiepiscopi 22. Benno, dux Saxonum, obiit
in-the-year of-the-archbishop 22nd Benno duke of-the-Saxons died
et Liudgerus, frater eius, qui cum uxore sua venerabili
and Liudger brother his who with wife his the-venerable
Emma Bremensi ecclesiae plurima fecerunt bona. Apud
Emma for-the-Bremen church very-many did good-things at

Magadburg vero Gisillario archiepiscopo Daganus successit,
Magdeburg indeed to-Gisilher the-archbishop Tagino succeeded
deinde Walthardus meruit cathedram.
then Walthard merited the-chair
Interea noster archiepiscopus de legatione sua in gentes
meanwhile our archbishop about mission his to the-nations
sollicitus, plures ordinavit episcopos, quorum nomina et sedes
anxious several ordained bishops whose names and sees
incertae sunt, quia tempus persecutionis incubuit. Sicut vero
uncertain are because the-time of-persecution pressed-upon as indeed
patrum relatione cognovimus, Esico apud Sliaswig Popponi
of-the-fathers by-the-account we-have-learned Ezico at Schleswig to-Poppo
successit. Odinkar, de quo supra diximus, apud Ripam
succeeded Odinkar of whom above we-have-spoken at Ribe
insignis fuit. Et sermo est, post obitum Adeldagi archiepiscopi
notable was and the-talk is after the-death of-Adaldag the-archbishop
totam regionem Iudlant usque ad nostram aetatem in duos
the-whole region Jutland all-the-way to our age into two
episcopatus bipartitam esse, tercio apud Arhusan deficiente.
bishoprics divided-in-two to-be the-third at Aarhus failing
In Sclavania vero ordinavit archiepiscopus Folcwardum, deinde
in Slavia indeed ordained the-archbishop Folcward then
Reginbertum; quorum prior a Sclavania pulsus, in
Reginbert of-whom the-former from Slavia driven into
Suediam vel Nordveiam missus est ab archiepiscopo, et ipse
Sweden or Norway sent was by the-archbishop and he
multos in Domino lucratus, cum gaudio remeavit. Posthaec
many in the-Lord having-gained with joy returned after-these-things
omnibus bene compositis obiit beatus archimandrita Libentius
all well settled died the-blessed archimandrite Libentius
unaque Ferdensis episcopus anno Domini 1013. et sepultus
and-together of-Verden the-bishop in-the-year of-the-Lord 1013 and buried

est in medio chori ante gradus sanctuarii, quod factum
he-was in the-middle of-the-choir before the-steps of-the-sanctuary which done
est pridie Nonas Ianuarii, indictione undecima.
was on-the-day-before the-Nones of-January in-the-indiction eleventh
Unwanus archiepiscopus sedit annis 16. Ferulam suscepit
Unwan archbishop sat years 16 the-staff he-received
ab Heinrico, palleum a maiore papa Benedicto. De
from Henry the-pallium from the-greater pope Benedict from
choro Podarbrunnensi assumptus est, clarissimo genere
the-choir of-Paderborn taken he-was of-the-most-renowned family
Inmedingorum oriundus, praeterea dives et largus, omnibus
of-the-Immedings sprung besides rich and generous to-all
hominibus acceptus, clero autem adprime benivolus, quibus
men acceptable to-the-clergy moreover especially well-disposed to-whom
etiam hortatu Libentii tunc praepositi curtem Botegun
also at-the-urging of-Libentius then provost the-estate Bottegun
optulit, cuius servitium esset per natales apostolorum.
he-offered whose service should-be for the-birthdays of-the-apostles
Unwanus primus omnium congregationes ad canonicam
Unwan first of-all the-congregations to the-canonical
regulam traxit, quae antea quidem mixta ex monachis
rule drew which before indeed mixed of monks
vel canonicis conversatione degebant. Ille omnes ritus
or canons in-conduct lived he all the-rites
paganicos, quorum adhuc supersticio viguit in hac regione,
pagan whose still the-superstition thrived in this region
praecepit funditus amoveri, ita ut ex lucis, quos nostri
ordered utterly to-be-removed so that from the-groves which our
paludicolae stulta frequentabant reverentia, faceret ecclesias
marsh-dwellers with-foolish frequented reverence be-made churches
per diocesim renovari; ex quibus etiam basilicam sancti
through the-diocese to-be-renewed from which also the-basilica of-saint

Viti extra oppidum construi et capellam sancti Willehadi
Vitus outside the-town to-be-built and the-chapel of-saint Willehad
combustam iussit reparari.
burned he-ordered to-be-repaired
Ipso tempore ferunt aggerem Bremensis oppidi firmatum
at-that-very time they-report the-rampart of-the-Bremen town strengthened
contra insidias et impetus inimicorum regis, praecipue
against the-plots and attacks of-the-enemies of-the-king chiefly
quoniam dux Bernardus, Heinrico imperatori ausus rebellare,
since duke Bernard against-Henry the-emperor having-dared to-rebel
terruit ac turbavit omnes ecclesias Saxoniae. Ex illo enim
terrified and troubled all the-churches of-Saxony from that for
tempore, quo dux constitutus est in hac regione, nunquam
time when the-duke established was in this region never
discordia cessavit inter geminas domos, scilicet archiepiscopi
discord ceased between the-twin houses namely of-the-archbishop
et ducis: illis impugnantibus regem et ecclesiam, istis
and of-the-duke those attacking the-king and the-church these
pro salute ecclesiae ac fidelitate regum certantibus. Haec
for the-safety of-the-church and the-loyalty of-the-kings contending this
aemulatio partium, dum prius occulta esset, ex eo tempore
rivalry of-the-parties while before hidden it-was from that time
vires accepit et crevit in immensum. Bernardus enim dux,
strength received and grew into the-immense Bernard for the-duke
tam avitae humilitatis quam paternae religionis oblitus,
as-much of-ancestral humility as of-paternal religion forgetful
primo quidem per avaritiam gentem Winulorum crudeliter
first indeed through avarice the-nation of-the-Winuli cruelly
opprimens, ad necessitatem paganismi coegit; deinde per
oppressing to the-necessity of-paganism forced then through
superbiam beneficiorum immemor, totam secum ad rebellandum
pride of-benefits unmindful the-whole with-him to rebelling

caesari movit Saxoniam; novissime surgens in Christum,
against-the-caesar moved Saxony lastly rising against Christ
ecclesias huius patriae non dubitavit impugnare, praecipue
the-churches of-this fatherland not he-hesitated to-attack chiefly
vero nostram, quae et ditior eo tempore ceteris et
indeed ours which both richer at-that time than-the-others and
longinquior videbatur a manu imperatoris. Eius impetum
farther seemed from the-hand of-the-emperor of-that the-onset
viri dicitur noster archiepiscopus Unwan sua magnanimitate
man is-said our archbishop Unwan by-his magnanimity
taliter refregisse, ut prae pudore sapientiae ac liberalitatis
so to-have-broken that for shame of-the-wisdom and liberality
episcopi cogeretur ipse dux ecclesiae, cui ante adversatus
of-the-bishop was-forced himself the-duke to-the-church which before opposed
est, deinceps hylaris et benignus esse in omnibus. Igitur
he-had thereafter cheerful and kindly to-be in all-things therefore
habito nostri pontificis consilio rebellis princeps tandem flexus
held of-our pontiff counsel the-rebel prince at-last bent
apud Scalchispurg caesari Heinrico supplex dedit manus.
at Schalksburg to-the-caesar Henry as-suppliant gave his-hands

Liber II, §§ 47–51

47–51 · UNWAN'S GENEROSITY AND CNUT'S CONQUEST

Unwan rebuilt Hamburg after the Slavic disaster and sent learned men to Norway and Sweden; Adam defends his lavish gifts to the northern kings as seed sown for spiritual harvest. Svein conquered England and died there; his son Cnut returned with a thousand ships and took England after Æthelred's death.

Mox quoque favente Unwano Sclavos tributo subiciens, pacem
soon also favoring Unwan the-Slavs to-tribute subjecting peace
reddidit Nordalbingis et matri Hammaburg. Ad cuius
he-restored to-the-Nordalbingians and to-mother Hamburg for whose
restaurationem venerabilis metropolitanus asseritur post cladem
restoration the-venerable metropolitan is-asserted after the-disaster
Sclavonicam civitatem et ecclesiam fecisse novam, simul ex
Slavic the-city and the-church to-have-made new together from
singulis congregationibus suis, quae virorum essent, tres eligens
each congregation his which of-men were three choosing
fratres, ita ut duodecim fierent, qui in Hammaburg canonica
brothers so that twelve they-became who in Hamburg in-canonical
degerent conversatione, vel qui populum converterent ab errore
should-live conduct or who the-people should-convert from the-error
ydolatriae. Ordinavitque in Sclavoniam, mortuo Reginberto,
of-idolatry and-he-ordained into Slavia dead Reginbert
Bennonem, virum prudentem, qui de fratribus Hammaburgensis
Benno a-man prudent who from the-brothers of-the-Hamburg
ecclesiae electus in populo Sclavorum multum praedicando
church chosen among the-people of-the-Slavs much by-preaching
fructum attulit. In Dania vero supervixerunt adhuc theologus
fruit brought in Denmark indeed survived still the-theologian
Poppo et ille nobilis Odinkar episcopus, quem pro fide ac
Poppo and that noble Odinkar bishop whom for the-faith and

sanctitate vitae eius familiarissimum habuit archiepiscopus. Hos
holiness of-life his most-familiar had the-archbishop these
duos episcopos solummodo in Iudlant fuisse comperimus,
two bishops only in Jutland to-have-been we-have-found
antequam Chnut regnum intraret. Solus ex nostris Odinkar
before Cnut the-kingdom entered alone of ours Odinkar
transmarinas aliquando visitavit ecclesias, Esico domi sedit,
the-overseas at-times visited churches Ezico at-home sat
persecutio ceteros tardavit. Archiepiscopus etiam alios viros
persecution the-others delayed the-archbishop also other men
doctissimos ordinavit in Norvegiam vel Suediam; alios vero
most-learned ordained into Norway or Sweden others indeed
in Anglia ordinatos, pro amicitia regum, cum satisfacerent,
in England ordained for the-friendship of-the-kings when they-made-amends
ad aedificandam dimisit ecclesiam. Multos eorum secum
for building he-dismissed the-church many of-them with-him
retinens, omnes autem, cum abierant, donis cumulans,
keeping all moreover when they-had-gone-away with-gifts heaping
ad subiectionem Hammaburgensis ecclesiae reddidit voluntarios.
to the-subjection of-the-Hamburg church he-rendered willing
Unwanus igitur, cum esset vir nobilissimus, aeque nobilem
Unwan therefore since he-was a-man most-noble an-equally noble
ac sufficientem liberalitati suae sortitus est episcopatum,
and sufficient for-the-liberality his obtained-by-lot had a-bishopric
in quo et suam magnitudinem animi posset ostendere et
in which both his greatness of-mind he-could to-show and
necessitati ecclesiae simul prodesse. Quare tesaurum ecclesiae
to-the-need of-the-church at-once to-be-of-use wherefore the-treasure of-the-church
diu solliciteque collectum, et quasi minus necessarium, si
long and-anxiously gathered and as-if less necessary if
infra parietes clauderetur, ipse ad commodum suae legationis
within walls it-should-be-shut-up he for the-advantage of-his mission

curavit ita expendere, ut ferocissimos reges aquilonis
took-care so to-spend that the-most-fierce kings of-the-north
hylaritate suorum munerum ad omnia quae voluit benignos
by-the-cheerfulness of-his gifts for all-things which he-wished kindly
obedientesque haberet. In qua re non multum peccavit,
and-obedient he-had in which matter not much he-sinned
ut arbitror, seminans carnalia, ut meteret spiritalia. Quin
as I-think sowing carnal-things that he-might-reap spiritual-things nay
immo largitio eius in novella gentium conversione utillima
rather the-largesse his in the-new of-the-nations conversion most-useful
videbatur; neque adeo nocuit ecclesiae, quae praecedentium
seemed nor so-much harmed the-church which of-the-preceding
diligentia patrum erat opulentissima. Credo etiam, secutus
by-the-diligence of-fathers was most-wealthy I-believe also followed
est exemplum sancti Ansgarii et cuiusdam in Ecclesiastica
he-has the-example of-saint Ansgar and of-a-certain in the-Ecclesiastical
Hystoria Theotimi, Scytarum episcopi, quorum alter legitur
History Theotimus of-the-Scythians bishop of-whom the-one is-read
incredulos reges donis placasse, alter vero barbaros
the-unbelieving kings with-gifts to-have-appeased the-other indeed the-barbarians
natura feroces epulis muneribusque mansuefecisse laudatur.
by-nature fierce with-feasts and-gifts to-have-tamed is-praised
Haec in apologum praesulis dicta sufficiant, nunc per
these-things in defense of-the-prelate said let-suffice now through
hystoriae ordinem redeamus ad ecclesiae legationem, quae
of-the-history the-order let-us-return to of-the-church the-mission which
tempore Unwanni prosperrime gesta cognoscitur.
in-the-time of-Unwan most-prosperously carried-on is-known
Suein, rex Danorum atque Nortmannorum, veteres iniurias
Svein king of-the-Danes and of-the-Northmen the-old wrongs
tam occisi fratris quam suae repulsionis ulturus,
as-much of-the-slain brother as of-his-own repulse about-to-avenge

classe magna transfretavit in Angliam, ducens secum
with-a-fleet great crossed into England leading with-him
filium suum Chnut et Olaph, filium Cracaben, de quo
son his Cnut and Olaf the-son of-Crowbone of whom
supra dictum est. Itaque multo tempore multis praeliis
above said it-was and-so for-a-long time in-many battles
adversum Anglos exactis, Suein veteranum regem depulit
against the-English fought Svein the-old king drove-out
Edilredum et insulam tenuit in sua ditione, verum brevi
Æthelred and the-island held in his power but for-a-short
tempore. Nam tercio mense postquam victoriam adeptus
time for in-the-third month after victory gained
est, ibidem morte praeventus occubuit.
he-had there by-death overtaken he-fell
Chnud, filius regis, cum exercitu reversus in patriam, denuo
Cnut son of-the-king with the-army returned into the-fatherland again
bellum molitur in Anglos. Olaph a Nortmannis electus in
war contrives against the-English Olaf by the-Northmen chosen as
principem, separatus est a regno Danorum. Tunc vero
prince separated was from the-kingdom of-the-Danes then indeed
Chnud ancipiti casu turbatus, pactum iniit cum fratre
Cnut by-doubtful chance troubled a-pact entered with his-brother
Olaph, filio Herici, qui regnavit in Suedia, eiusque fultus
Olaf son of-Eric who reigned in Sweden and-by-his supported
auxilio deliberavit primo quidem Angliam subiugare, deinde
aid he-resolved first indeed England to-subjugate then
Norvegiam. Itaque mille navibus magnis Chnut armatus
Norway and-so with-a-thousand ships great Cnut armed
occeanum transivit Britannicum, per quem, sicut nautae
the-ocean crossed British through which as sailors
referunt, a Dania in Angliam, flantibus euris, triduo
report from Denmark into England blowing the-east-winds in-three-days

vela panduntur. Hoc mare magnum et valde periculosum
sails are-spread this sea great and very dangerous
a laeva Orcadas habet, dextrorsum attingit Frisiam.
on the-left the-Orkneys has on-the-right touches Frisia
Triennium ergo Chnut Britanniam oppugnavit. Adelrad, rex
for-three-years therefore Cnut Britain attacked Æthelred king
Anglorum, apud Lundonam obsessus obiit, simul cum regno
of-the-English at London besieged died together with the-kingdom
amittens vitam. Et iusto iudicio Dei, qui fratre per
losing life and by-the-just judgment of-God who his-brother through
martyrium consummato 38 annis sceptrum sanguine polluit.
martyrdom consummated for-38 years the-scepter with-blood polluted
Is parricidium taliter expiavit, relinquens filium parvulum
he the-parricide thus expiated leaving a-son little
nomine Edwardum, quem suscepit ab Imma uxore. Frater
by-name Edward whom he-had-received from Emma his-wife the-brother
Adelradi Emund, vir bellicosus, in gratiam victoris veneno
of-Æthelred Edmund a-man warlike into the-favor of-the-victor by-poison
sublatus est; filii eius in Ruzziam exilio dampnati.
removed was the-sons his to Russia to-exile condemned

Liber II, §§ 52–55

52–55 · CNUT'S KINGDOMS AND SAINT OLAF

Cnut married Emma and bound the English and Normans to him by marriages. He brought English bishops to Denmark; Unwan seized one, Gerbrand, and won Cnut's friendship. Conrad gave Schleswig to the Danish king. Olaf of Norway fought Cnut, destroyed the sorcerers of his kingdom, and asked Unwan for bishops.

Chnud regnum Adelradi accepit uxoremque eius Immam
Cnut the-kingdom of-Æthelred received and-wife his Emma
nomine, quae fuit soror comitis Nortmannorum Rikardi.
by-name who was the-sister of-the-count of-the-Normans Richard
Cui rex Danorum suam dedit germanam Margaretam
to-whom the-king of-the-Danes his gave sister Margaret
pro foedere. Quam deinde Chnut repudiatam a comite Wolf
for a-treaty whom then Cnut repudiated by the-count Wolf
duci Angliae dedit, eiusque Wolf sororem copulatam alteri
to-a-duke of-England gave and-his of-Wolf sister joined to-another
duci Gudvino, callide ratus Anglos et Nortmannos per
duke Godwin cunningly thinking the-English and Normans through
conubia Danis fideliores, quae res eum non fefellit. Et
marriages to-the-Danes more-faithful which thing him not deceived and
Rikardus quidem comes declinans iram Chnut, Iherosolimam
Richard indeed the-count avoiding the-wrath of-Cnut to-Jerusalem
profectus, ibidem obiit, relinquens filium in Nortmannia
set-out there died leaving a-son in Normandy
nomine Rodbertum, cuius filius est iste Willelmus, quem
by-name Robert whose son is that William whom
Franci Bastardum vocant. Wolf autem ex sorore regis
the-Franks the-Bastard call Wolf moreover from the-sister of-king
Chnut filios suscepit Bern ducem et Suein regem, Guduin
Cnut sons received Björn the-duke and Svein the-king Godwin

a sorore Wolf ducis Suein, Tostin et Haroldum [genuit
from the-sister of-Wolf the-duke Svein Tostig and Harold begot
parricidas]. Quam generationis seriem, quoniam secuturae
parricides which of-generation series since to-the-following
lectioni utilem iudicavimus, hic inserere dignum videbatur.
reading useful we-have-judged here to-insert worthy it-seemed
Victor Chnut ab Anglia rediens, in ditione sua per multos
victor Cnut from England returning in power his for many
annos regnum Daniae possedit et Angliae. Quo tempore
years the-kingdom of-Denmark possessed and of-England at-which time
episcopos ab Anglia multos adduxit in Daniam. De quibus
bishops from England many he-brought into Denmark of whom
Bernardum posuit in Sconiam, Gerbrandum in Seland,
Bernard he-set in Scania Gerbrand in Zealand
Reginbertum in Fune. Zelatus est hoc noster archiepiscopus
Reginbert in Funen resented was this our archbishop
Unwan. Et dicitur Gerbrandum redeuntem ab Anglia cepisse,
Unwan and he-is-said Gerbrand returning from England to-have-seized
quem ab Elnodo, Anglorum archiepiscopo, cognovit esse
whom by Ælfnoth of-the-English archbishop he-knew to-be
ordinatum. Ille quod necessitas persuasit satisfaciens, fidelitatem
ordained he what necessity urged making-amends loyalty
Hammaburgensi cathedrae cum subiectione debita spondens,
to-the-Hamburg chair with subjection due pledging
familiarissimus deinceps archiepiscopo effectus est. Per quem
most-familiar thereafter to-the-archbishop made was through whom
ille suos etiam legatos ad Chnut regem transmittens cum
he his also envoys to Cnut the-king sending with
muneribus, congratulatus est ei de rebus bene gestis in
gifts congratulated he-has him on things well done in
Anglia, sed corripuit eum de praesumptione episcoporum,
England but rebuked him for the-presumption of-the-bishops

quos transtulit ex Anglia; quod rex gratanter accipiens, ita
whom he-transferred from England which the-king gratefully receiving so
postmodum coniunctus est archiepiscopo, ut ex sententia eius
afterward joined was to-the-archbishop that by the-counsel his
omnia deinceps facere maluerit. Haec nobis de avunculo suo
all-things thereafter to-do he-preferred these-things to-us about uncle his
rex Danorum innotuit et de captione Gerbrandi non tacuit.
the-king of-the-Danes made-known and about the-capture of-Gerbrand not kept-silent
Anno pontificis Unwani 12. Heinricus imperator, iustitia et
in-the-year of-the-pontiff Unwan 12th Henry the-emperor for-justice and
sanctitate insignis, cum iam Saxones, Ytalos et Burgundiones
holiness notable when already the-Saxons Italians and Burgundians
imperio subiecerat, ad coeleste migravit imperium. Cui
to-the-empire he-had-subjected to the-heavenly departed empire to-whom
successit in sceptrum fortissimus caesar Conradus, qui mox
succeeded in the-scepter the-most-mighty caesar Conrad who soon
Polanos et regem eorum Misingum magna virtute perdomuit
the-Poles and king their Mieszko with-great strength subdued
et auxiliatores eorum Behemos ceterosque Sclavorum populos
and the-helpers their the-Bohemians and-the-other of-the-Slavs peoples
sub tributum misit. Cum rege Danorum sive Anglorum
under tribute sent with the-king of-the-Danes or of-the-English
mediante archiepiscopo fecit pacem. Cuius etiam filiam
mediating the-archbishop he-made peace whose also daughter
imperator filio suo deposcens uxorem, dedit [ei civitatem]
the-emperor for-son his asking as-wife he-gave him the-city
Sliaswig cum marcha, quae trans Egdoram est, in foedus
Schleswig with the-march which across the-Eider is in a-treaty
amicitiae; et ex eo tempore fuit regum Daniae.
of-friendship and from that time it-was of-the-kings of-Denmark

Inter Chnut et Olaph, regem Nortmannorum, continuum fuit
between Cnut and Olaf king of-the-Northmen continuous was
bellum nec cessavit omnibus diebus vitae eorum; Danis pro
war nor ceased in-all the-days of-life their the-Danes for
imperio certantibus, Nortmannis vero pugnantibus pro libertate.
empire contending the-Northmen indeed fighting for liberty
In qua re iustior mihi visa est causa Olaph, cui
in which matter juster to-me seemed has the-cause of-Olaf for-whom
bellum necessarium magis fuit quam voluntarium. Si quando
war necessary more was than voluntary if ever
autem tempus a bellorum motibus quietum erat, idem
moreover the-time from of-wars commotions quiet was the-same
Olaph iudicio et iusticia regnum gubernavit. Dicunt eum
Olaf with-judgment and justice the-kingdom governed they-say him
inter cetera virtutum opera magnum Dei zelum habuisse, ut
among other of-virtues works a-great of-God zeal to-have-had that
maleficos de terra disperderet, quorum numero cum tota
the-sorcerers from the-land he-should-destroy of-whom with-number though all
barbaries exundet, praecipue vero Norvegia monstris talibus
barbarism overflows chiefly indeed Norway with-monsters such
plena est. Nam et divini et augures et magi et incantatores
full is for both diviners and augurs and magicians and enchanters
ceterique satellites antichristi habitant ibi, quorum praestigiis
and-other satellites of-antichrist dwell there by-whose tricks
et miraculis infelices animae ludibrio daemonibus habentur.
and wonders unhappy souls in-mockery by-demons are-held
Hos omnes et huiusmodi beatissimus rex Olaph persequi
these all and of-this-kind most-blessed king Olaf to-pursue
decrevit, ut sublatis scandalis firmius coalesceret in
decided that removed the-stumbling-blocks more-firmly might-grow-together in
regno suo christiana religio. Habuitque secum multos episcopos
kingdom his the-Christian religion and-he-had with-him many bishops

et presbyteros ab Anglia, quorum monitu et doctrina ipse
and presbyters from England by-whose admonition and teaching he
cor suum Deo praeparavit subiectumque populum illis ad
heart his for-God prepared and-the-subject people to-them for
regendum commisit. Quorum clari doctrina et virtutibus
ruling committed of-whom famous in-teaching and virtues
erant Sigafrid, Grimkil, Rudolf et Bernard. Hi etiam iussu
were Sigfrid Grimkell Rudolf and Bernard these also by-the-order
regis ad Suediam et Gothiam et omnes insulas, quae trans
of-the-king to Sweden and Götaland and all the-islands which beyond
Nortmanniam sunt, accesserunt euangelizantes barbaris
Norway are approached evangelizing to-the-barbarians
verbum Dei et regnum Iesu Christi. Misit etiam nuntios
the-word of-God and the-kingdom of-Jesus Christ he-sent also messengers
ad archiepiscopum nostrum cum muneribus, petens, ut eos
to archbishop our with gifts asking that those
episcopos benigne reciperet suosque ad eum mitteret, qui
bishops kindly he-should-receive and-his-own to him should-send who
rudem Nortmannorum populum in christianitate confortarent.
the-raw of-the-Northmen people in Christianity should-strengthen

Liber II, §§ 56–59

56–59 · OLAF OF SWEDEN AND SAINT OLAF'S MARTYRDOM

The Swedish king Olaf founded the see of Skara for Thurgot. Unwan rebuilt Hamburg and met Cnut and the Slavic princes there. Saint Olaf of Norway was driven out by the chiefs, returned with Swedish and Icelandic help to punish the sorcerers, and was killed; his body works miracles at Trondheim.

Simili religionis amore alter Olaph in Suedia dicitur
with-like of-religion love another Olaf in Sweden is-said
floruisse. Is subditos sibi populos ad christianitatem
to-have-flourished he the-subject to-himself peoples to Christianity
convertere volens magno laboravit studio, ut templum
to-convert wishing with-great labored zeal that the-temple
ydolorum, quod in medio Sueoniae situm est, Ubsola
of-idols which in the-middle of-Sweden situated is Uppsala
destrueretur. Cuius intentionem pagani metuentes, placitum
should-be-destroyed whose intention the-pagans fearing an-agreement
cum rege suo tale constituisse dicuntur, ut, si ipse vellet esse
with king their such to-have-established are-said that if he wished to-be
christianus, optimam Suediae regionem, quam vellet, suo iuri
a-Christian the-best of-Sweden region which he-wished by-his right
teneret, in qua ecclesiam et christianitatem constituens,
he-should-hold in which a-church and Christianity establishing
nemini de populo vim recedendi a cultura deorum
on-no-one of the-people the-force of-withdrawing from the-worship of-the-gods
inferret, nisi qui sponte cuperet ad Christum converti.
he-should-bring except who willingly desired to Christ to-be-converted
Huiusmodi rex placito gavisus, mox in occidentali
with-this-kind-of the-king agreement having-rejoiced soon in western
Gothia, quae Danis proxima est vel Nortmannis, ecclesiam
Götaland which to-the-Danes nearest is or to-the-Northmen a-church

Deo sedemque fundavit episcopalem. Haec est civitas
for-God and-a-see founded episcopal this is the-city
Scarane maxima, in qua, petente christianissimo rege Olaph,
Skara the-greatest in which asking the-most-Christian king Olaf
primus ab Unwano archiepiscopo Thurgot ordinatus est. Ille
the-first by Unwan the-archbishop Thurgot ordained was that
vir strennue legationem suam perfecit in gentibus, duos
man vigorously mission his accomplished among the-nations two
nobiles populos Gothorum suo labore Christo lucratus est.
noble peoples of-the-Goths by-his labor for-Christ gained he-has
Perque illum episcopum rex Olaph ingentia metropolitae
and-through that bishop king Olaf huge to-the-metropolitan
Unwano direxit munera. Praeterea duos fertur idem rex
Unwan directed gifts besides two it-is-reported the-same king
habuisse filios, quos una cum uxore sua ac populo iussit
to-have-had sons whom together with wife his and people he-ordered
baptizari. Eorum alter, qui natus est a concubina, Emund
to-be-baptized of-them the-one who born was of a-concubine Emund
nomen accepit; alter Anund, quem rex a legitima
name received the-other Anund whom the-king of a-lawful-wife
genuit, cognomento fidei et gratiae dictus est Iacobus,
begot by-the-surname of-faith and grace called was James
iuvenis quidem aetate, verum sapientia et pietate praecessit
young indeed in-age but in-wisdom and piety surpassed
omnes, qui fuerunt ante eum; nec quispiam regum fuit
all who were before him nor anyone of-kings was
populo Sueonum tam acceptus sicut Anundus.
to-the-people of-the-Swedes so acceptable as Anund
Eo tempore cum esset pax firma inter Sclavos et
at-that time when there-was peace firm between the-Slavs and
Transalbianos, Unwanus archiepiscopus metropolem Hammaburg
Transalbians Unwan the-archbishop the-metropolis Hamburg

renovavit, clerumque dispersum colligens, magnam ibidem tam
renewed and-the-clergy scattered gathering a-great there both
civium quam fratrum adunavit multitudinem. Itaque cum duce
of-citizens and of-brothers united multitude and-so with duke
Bernardo frequenter inhabitans locum, saepe dimidium annum
Bernard often inhabiting the-place often half a-year
vixit in Hammaburg, gloriosissimum regem Chnut invitans ad
he-lived in Hamburg the-most-glorious king Cnut inviting to
colloquium Sclavorumque satrapas Utonem et Sedericum. Tali
a-conference and-of-the-Slavs the-satraps Uto and Sederich in-such
modo pontifex Unwanus domi forisque clarus legationem suam
manner the-pontiff Unwan at-home and-abroad famous mission his
in gentibus narratur implesse. Nunc ea restant dicenda,
among the-nations is-told to-have-fulfilled now those-things remain to-be-said
quae de martyrio regis Olaph fama volante cognovimus.
which about the-martyrdom of-king Olaf with-rumor flying we-have-learned
Olaph igitur, clarissimus rex Nortmannorum, contra Chnut,
Olaf therefore the-most-renowned king of-the-Northmen against Cnut
regem Danorum, qui regnum suum impugnaverat, perpetuo
king of-the-Danes who kingdom his had-attacked perpetually
decertabat praelio. Tandemque ferunt beatissimum regem Olaph
contended in-battle and-at-last they-report the-most-blessed king Olaf
seditione principum, quorum mulieres ipse propter maleficia
by-the-sedition of-the-chiefs whose women he because-of sorceries
sustulit, a regno depulsum Norvegiae. Et regnavit Chnut
had-removed from the-kingdom driven-out of-Norway and reigned Cnut
in Nortmannia simul et Dania et, quod nulli regum prius
in Norway together and Denmark and what to-none of-kings before
contingere potuit, in Anglia. Olaph vero totam spem suam
to-happen could in England Olaf indeed all hope his
in Deo ponens, ad comprimendos ydololatras denuo bellum
in God placing for suppressing the-idolaters again war

instaurat. Itaque de rege Sueonum, cuius filiam habuit,
renews and-so from the-king of-the-Swedes whose daughter he-had
et populis Islanorum infinitam congregans armatorum
and from-the-peoples of-the-Icelanders a-boundless gathering of-armed-men
multitudinem, patrium regnum vi et armis recepit. Rex
multitude the-paternal kingdom by-force and arms recovered the-king
igitur christianissimus fortitudine in hostes et iusticia
therefore most-Christian for-bravery against enemies and for-justice
in suos celebris, ad hoc se credidit in regnum a Deo
toward his-own celebrated for this himself believed into the-kingdom by God
restitutum, ut iam tunc nemini parcere debuisset, qui vel
restored that already then no-one to-spare he-ought who either
magus permanere vellet aut christianus fieri nollet. Et iam
a-sorcerer to-remain wished or Christian to-become refused and already
magna ex parte votum implevit, cum pauci, qui remanserant
in-great from part the-vow he-fulfilled when the-few who had-remained
ex magis, in ultionem eorum, quos rex dampnavit,
of the-sorcerers in vengeance of-those whom the-king condemned
etiam ipsum obtruncare non dubitarunt. Alii dicunt eum in
even him to-cut-down not hesitated others say him in
bello peremptum, quidam vero in medio populi circo ad
war slain some indeed in the-middle of-the-people circle for
ludibrium magis expositum. Sunt alii qui asserunt, illum in
mockery rather exposed there-are others who assert him into
gratiam regis Chnut latenter occisum, quod et magis verum
the-favor of-king Cnut secretly slain which also more true
esse non diffidimus, eo quod regnum eius invasit. Igitur
to-be not we-doubt for-this that kingdom his he-invaded therefore
Olaph rex et martyr, ut credimus, tali fine consummatus
Olaf king and martyr as we-believe by-such an-end consummated
est; corpus eius in civitate magna regni sui Trondemnis cum
was the-body his in the-city great of-kingdom his Trondheim with

decenti est honore tumulatum. Ubi hodieque pluribus miraculis
fitting is honor entombed where today by-many miracles
et sanitatibus, quae per eum fiunt, Dominus ostendere
and healings which through him are-done the-Lord to-show
dignatur, quanti meriti sit in coelis, qui sic glorificatur
deigns of-how-great merit he-may-be in the-heavens who so is-glorified
in terris. [Regnavit autem annis 12.] Agitur festivitas eius
on earth he-reigned moreover years 12 is-kept the-feast his
4. Kal. Augusti, omnibus septentrionalis occeani populis
on-the-4th Kalends of-August by-all of-the-northern ocean peoples
Nortmannorum, Sueonum, Gothorum, [Semborum], Danorum
of-the-Northmen of-the-Swedes of-the-Goths of-the-Sembi of-the-Danes
atque Sclavorum aeterno cultu memorabilis.
and of-the-Slavs with-eternal worship memorable

Liber II, §§ 60–64

60–64 · WOLFRED'S MARTYRDOM AND LIBENTIUS II

Wolfred, an Englishman, hewed the image of Thor in pieces and was killed by the pagans. Unwan died in 1029. Libentius the younger, kind to the clergy and poor, made Avoco, Meinher, and Gottschalk of Ramelsloh bishops. Another Gottschalk, son of the Slavic prince Uto, left his studies to avenge his father, was captured by Duke Bernard, and went to England with Cnut.

Per idem tempus sermo est, quendam ab Anglia nomine
through the-same time the-talk is a-certain from England by-name
Wolfredum, divini amoris instinctu Suediam ingressum,
Wolfred of-divine love by-the-instigation Sweden having-entered
verbum Dei paganis cum magna fiducia praedicasse.
the-word of-God to-the-pagans with great confidence to-have-preached
Qui dum sua praedicatione multos ad christianam fidem
who when by-his preaching many to the-Christian faith

convertisset, ydolum gentis nomine Thór, stans in concilio
he-had-converted the-idol of-the-nation by-name Thor standing in the-council
paganorum coepit anathematizare; simulque arrepta bipenni
of-the-pagans began to-anathematize and-at-once seized a-double-ax
simulacrum in frusta concidit. Et ille quidem pro talibus
the-image into pieces cut and he indeed for such
ausis statim mille vulneribus confossus, animam
daring-deeds at-once with-a-thousand wounds pierced the-soul
laurea dignam martyrii transmisit in coelum. Corpus
with-the-laurel worthy of-martyrdom sent-across into heaven the-body
eius barbari laniatum post multa ludibria merserunt in
his the-barbarians mangled after many mockeries sank into
paludem. Haec veraciter comperta memoriae tradidi,
a-marsh these-things truly found-out to-memory I-have-handed
quamvis sint et alia, quae adhuc scribi digna sint.
although there-be also others which still to-be-written worthy may-be
Verum de Unwano et quae suo tempore gesta sunt
but about Unwan and what-things in-his time done were
dictum est sufficienter et, sicut aestimo, fideliter. Apud
said it-is sufficiently and as I-reckon faithfully at
Magedburg ipso tempore Walthardo successit Gero,
Magdeburg at-that-very time to-Walthard succeeded Gero
deinde Hunfrid, ambo viri sancti et episcopali nomine digni.
then Hunfrid both men holy and of-episcopal name worthy
Deinde obiit gloriosus archiepiscopus, qui transisse dicitur
then died the-glorious archbishop who to-have-passed is-said
6. Kalend. Februarii, anno Domini 1029, indictione
on-the-6th Kalends of-February in-the-year of-the-Lord 1029 in-the-indiction
12, et sepultus est iuxta decessorem suum a latere sinistro.
12th and buried was next-to predecessor his on the-side left

Libentius sedit annos fere quatuor. Is cum esset nepos
Libentius sat years almost four he since he-was the-nephew
alterius Libentii, et tunc maior domus praepositus, favore
of-the-other Libentius and then the-chief of-the-house provost by-the-favor
Gislae imperatricis ferulam suscepit a Conrado caesare,
of-Gisela the-empress the-staff received from Conrad the-caesar
palleum vero a papa Iohanne XIX; vir simplex ac rectus
the-pallium indeed from pope John nineteenth a-man simple and upright
ac timens Deum. Cumque omnibus esset affabilis, singulari
and fearing God and-since to-all he-was affable with-singular
quodam amore clerum dilexit et inopum necessitatibus
a-certain love the-clergy he-loved and of-the-needy to-the-necessities
erat valde compatiens. Ipse igitur vicum trans flumen ab
was very compassionate he therefore a-village across the-river from
incolis terrae pretio redemit, quem fratribus offerens,
the-inhabitants of-the-land for-a-price redeemed which to-the-brothers offering
30 ex eo [per annum] statuit dari convivia. At vero
30 from it through the-year he-established to-be-given feasts but indeed
xenodochii talem omnino sollicitudinem curavit habere, ut
of-the-hospice such altogether anxiety he-took-care to-have that
qui in hac parte sola negligentias omnium praecessorum
he-who in this part alone the-negligences of-all predecessors
sanare videretur. Adeo redundavit episcopatus ut praepositura
to-heal seemed so-much overflowed the-bishopric that the-provostship
et xenodochium, ut vix egens quisquam posset inveniri.
and the-hospice that scarcely needy anyone could to-be-found
Forte hoc videtur incredibile his, qui huius temporis
perhaps this seems incredible to-those who of-this time
egestatem vident, nec fortasse quisquam tunc crederet,
the-want see nor perhaps anyone then would-believe
ea futura, quae nunc facta videntur. Libentius
those-things to-be-going-to-be which now done are-seen Libentius

itaque bonus in praepositura, multo melior in cathedra,
and-so good in the-provostship much better in the-chair
legationem suam ad gentes ferventi animo ingressus est.
mission his to the-nations with-fervent mind entered-on has
Et primo omnium concilians sibi Chnut, regem Danorum,
and first of-all reconciling to-himself Cnut king of-the-Danes
Gerbrando subrogavit in Seland Avoconem, in Aldinburg
for-Gerbrand he-substituted in Zealand Avoco in Oldenburg
ordinavit Meinherum, Thorgato autem successorem posuit
he-ordained Meinher for-Thurgot moreover as-successor he-set
de Ramsola Gotescalcum episcopum. Illis namque diebus
from Ramelsloh Gottschalk bishop in-those for days
beatissimus Thorgat episcopus pro labore praedicationis Bremae
the-most-blessed Thurgot bishop for the-labor of-preaching at-Bremen
cum archiepiscopo diutius consistens, fertur asperrimo
with the-archbishop rather-long staying it-is-reported by-the-most-harsh
leprae morbo percussus diem vocationis suae cum magna
of-leprosy disease struck the-day of-calling his with great
expectasse patientia. Tandemque bono fine consummatus in
to-have-awaited patience and-at-last by-a-good end consummated in
basilica sancti Petri sepultus est. Ubi etiam Folcwardus et
the-basilica of-saint Peter buried was where also Folcward and
Harich et magnus Othingar et Poppo in pace quiescunt.
Harig and the-great Odinkar and Poppo in peace rest
Aderant vero tunc cum archiepiscopo praedicatores inclyti,
were-present indeed then with the-archbishop preachers renowned
Othingar iunior ex Danis, Sigafrid a Suedia, Rodolf a
Odinkar the-younger from the-Danes Sigfrid from Sweden Rudolf from
Normannia episcopi, narrantes ei, quanta fecerit Dominus in
Norway bishops telling him how-great-things has-done the-Lord in

salute gentium, quae cotidie convertebantur. Quos pontifex,
the-salvation of-the-nations which daily were-converted whom the-pontiff
ut par fuit, honorifice dimissos ad praedicationem denuo misit.
as fit it-was honorably dismissed for preaching again sent
Tempore illo Conradus imperator filiam Chnut regis
at-time that Conrad the-emperor the-daughter of-Cnut the-king
Heinrico filio accepit in matrimonium. Cum quibus statim
for-Henry his-son received in marriage with whom at-once
regio fastu Italiam ingressus est ad faciendam regno
with-royal pomp Italy entered he-has for doing for-the-kingdom
iustitiam, comitem habens itineris Chnut regem potentia
justice as-companion having of-the-journey Cnut the-king by-the-power
trium regnorum barbaris gentibus valde terribilem. Ille
of-three kingdoms to-the-barbarian nations very terrible he
quidem, cum tres filios haberet, singulos super singula
indeed since three sons he-had each over each
regna posuit, ipse aliquando visitans Danos, aliquando vero
kingdom set himself sometimes visiting the-Danes sometimes indeed
Nortmannos, saepissime autem sedit in Anglia.
the-Northmen most-often moreover sat in England
Archiepiscopus igitur metropolem Hammaburg crebro visitavit.
the-archbishop therefore the-metropolis Hamburg often visited
Nam eo tempore virtute Chnut regis et Bernardi
for at-that time by-the-strength of-Cnut the-king and of-Bernard
ducis pax firma trans Albiam fuit, cum et caesar bello
the-duke peace firm across the-Elbe was since also the-caesar in-war
Winulos domuerit. Principes eorum Gneus et Anatrog pagani
the-Winuli had-tamed the-princes their Gneus and Anatrog pagans
erant, tercius vero, Uto, filius Mistiwoi, male christianus.
were the-third indeed Uto son of-Mistivoi badly Christian
Unde etiam pro crudelitate sua a quodam Saxonum transfuga
whence also for cruelty his by a-certain of-the-Saxons deserter

interfectus est, habens filium Gotescalcum, qui per idem
slain was having a-son Gottschalk who through the-same
tempus apud Luniburg, monasterium ducis, litteralibus
time at Lüneburg in-the-monastery of-the-duke in-literary
erudiebatur studiis, Gotescalco, Gothorum episcopo, eiusdem
was-educated studies Gottschalk of-the-Goths the-bishop of-the-same
coenobii curam agente. Verum is comperta morte parentis,
monastery the-care taking but he learned the-death of-his-father
ira et furore commotus, reiectis cum fide litteris, arma
with-anger and fury moved cast-off with the-faith letters arms
corripuit, amneque transmisso, inimicis Dei se coniunxit
seized and-the-river crossed to-the-enemies of-God himself joined
Winulis. Quorum auxilio christianos impugnans multa milia
the-Winuli by-whose aid the-Christians attacking many thousands
Saxonum prostrasse dicitur in patris vindictam. Hunc
of-the-Saxons to-have-laid-low he-is-said in of-his-father vengeance him
tandem, quasi principem latronum, Bernardus dux capiens,
at-last as-if the-prince of-robbers Bernard the-duke capturing
in custodia tenuit, virumque arbitrans fortissimum, iniuncto
in custody held and-the-man judging most-mighty enjoined
secum foedere, dimisit eum. Qui venit ad Chnut regem, et
with-himself a-treaty released him who came to Cnut the-king and
cum eo profectus in Angliam, permansit ibi multo tempore.
with him having-set-out into England remained there a-long time

Liber II, §§ 65–66

65–66 · LIBENTIUS'S DEATH AND HERMANN

Libentius adorned his church and was loved by all, aided by Duke Bernard and the pious Emma, and died after celebrating two masses in 1032. Hermann, a simple man misled by his steward, plundered his diocese on his one visit to Hamburg, brought the musician Guido to Bremen, moved his predecessors' bodies, and began a city wall before he died.

Interea noster archiepiscopus piis operibus coelo semper
meanwhile our archbishop in-pious works on-heaven always
intentus ecclesiam suam episcopaliter exornavit et filios
intent church his in-episcopal-manner adorned and the-sons
ecclesiae pastoraliter educavit, omnibus acceptus, etiam, quod
of-the-church in-pastoral-manner reared to-all acceptable even what
difficile est, principibus. Suo tempore Bernardus dux et frater
difficult is to-princes in-his time Bernard the-duke and brother
eius Theodmarus ecclesiae nostrae multa bona fecerunt,
his Thietmar for-church our many good-things did
exhortante piissima Emma, quae Bremensem ecclesiam valde
exhorting the-most-pious Emma who the-Bremen church greatly
dilexit suumque tesaurum Deo et genitrici eius ac sancto
loved and-her treasure to-God and to-the-mother his and to-the-holy
confessori Willehado fere totum optulit. Haec quoque pro
confessor Willehad almost all offered she also for
dilectione pontificis omnes ecclesiae filios, ut sui essent,
love of-the-pontiff all of-the-church the-sons as her-own they-were
fovit. Inviderunt nobis fata, ne diu frueremur tali pastore,
cherished envied us the-fates lest long we-should-enjoy such a-shepherd
qualis erat Libentius, dilectus, inquam, Deo et hominibus.
as was Libentius beloved I-say by-God and men

Ipse, ut aiunt, in festivitate sancti Bartholomaei apostoli
he as they-say on the-feast of-saint Bartholomew the-apostle
duas aegrescens missas celebravit, finitoque pro more
two falling-ill masses celebrated and-finished according-to custom
psalterio, suis aeternum lugentibus, eadem die gaudens
the-psalter to-his-own eternally mourning on-the-same day rejoicing
migravit ad Christum. Obitus eius contigit 9. Kal.
departed to Christ the-death his happened on-the-9th Kalends
Septembris. Quod est anno Domini 1032, indictione 13.
of-September which is in-the-year of-the-Lord 1032 in-the-indiction 13th
Hermannus sedit annos vix tres. Cambutam pastoralem a
Hermann sat years scarcely three the-staff pastoral from
caesare Conrado meruit, palleum a papa iuniore Benedicto,
caesar Conrad he-merited the-pallium from pope the-younger Benedict
ab Halverstatensi choro electus, eiusdem ecclesiae fuit
from the-Halberstadt choir chosen of-the-same church he-was
praepositus. Vir, ut aiunt, columbinae simplicitatis, sed parum
provost a-man as they-say of-dovelike simplicity but little
habens prudentiae serpentis; ideoque facile deceptus est
having of-prudence of-the-serpent and-therefore easily deceived he-was
a clyentibus. Raro parrochiam visitavit; semel Hammaburg
by clients rarely the-diocese he-visited once Hamburg
accessit, et tunc cum exercitu veniens episcopatum, quasi
he-approached and then with an-army coming the-bishopric as-if
non suum, despoliavit abiensque velut terram salsuginis derisit.
not his despoiled and-going-away like a-land of-saltness derided
Rapacitatis incentor et auctor consiliorum quidam Macco
of-the-rapacity the-instigator and author of-counsels a-certain Macco
fuit, archiepiscopi vicedominus. Ceterum nobiles viros habuit
was of-the-archbishop the-steward however noble men he-had
capellanos, Thiadricum et Suidgerum, quem deinde Romana
as-chaplains Theoderic and Suidger whom afterward the-Roman

sedes appellavit Clementem. Subdiaconus eius fuit Adalbertus,
see called Clement subdeacon his was Adalbert
postea archiepiscopus Bremensis, iam tunc minax vultu et
afterward archbishop of-Bremen already then threatening in-face and
habitu verborumque altitudine suspectus audientibus. Pontifex
bearing and-of-words in-loftiness suspect to-the-hearers the-pontiff
igitur parvipendens omnia quae in episcopatu invenit, primo
therefore making-little-of all-things which in the-bishopric he-found first
quidem musicum Guidonem adduxit Bremam, cuius instancia
indeed the-musician Guido brought to-Bremen by-whose insistence
correxit melodiam et claustralem disciplinam. Quod solum ex
he-corrected the-melody and cloistral discipline which alone of
operibus eius prospere cessit. Deinde antiquissimum sancti
the-works his prosperously turned-out then the-most-ancient of-saint
Mykaelis oratorium diruens, corpora trium decessorum eius,
Michael oratory pulling-down the-bodies of-three predecessors his
scilicet Adalgarii, Hogeri et Reginwardi, ab eo loco sustulit
namely Adalgar Hoger and Reginward from that place he-removed
ac recondidit eos in maiori basilica sub ipso tribunali. Tunc
and laid-away them in the-greater basilica under itself the-tribunal then
magnum opus et utile ingressurus murum civitati circumdare
a-great work and useful about-to-enter-upon a-wall to-the-city to-put-around
voluit, vixque iactis fundamentis cum opere vitam finivit. Ita
he-wished and-scarcely laid the-foundations with the-work life he-ended so
ille magnus pontifex Heli, dum suos a rapina non corripuit,
he the-great pontiff Eli while his-own from plunder not he-rebuked
etiam in bonis aliquibus Deo ultionum displicuit. Mortuus
even in good some-things to-the-God of-vengeances displeased died
est autem in episcopatu Halverstedensi, dum esset in praedio
he-has moreover in the-bishopric of-Halberstadt while he-was on estate

suo Hildinrode. Corpus eius Bremam revectum subterratum
his Hildinrode the-body his to-Bremen carried-back put-under-the-earth
est in medio chori. Obiit vero 14. Kal. Octobris.
was in the-middle of-the-choir he-died indeed on-the-14th Kalends of-October

Liber II, §§ 67–70

67–70 · BEZELIN ALEBRAND AND HIS BUILDINGS

Alebrand, from Cologne, was praised by all. He gave the canons a common table with wine, built the cloister of stone, and raised a wall and a great tower at Bremen. At Hamburg he built a stone church and a fortified house, and the duke built beside it. The Slavic princes served duke and bishop, and he ordained bishops for Schleswig, Slavia, and Ribe.

Bescelinus, cognomento Alebrandus, sedit annos decem,
Bezelin by-surname Alebrand sat years ten
vir omni bonorum genere decoratus, episcopali officio
a-man with-every of-good-things kind adorned of-episcopal office
dignus, dilectus Deo et hominibus. Hunc nobis ecclesia
worthy beloved by-God and by-men him to-us the-church
praestitit Coloniensis. Imperator Conradus optulit ei baculum,
supplied of-Cologne the-emperor Conrad offered him the-staff
Benedictus papa transmisit illi palleum. Ordinatus est
Benedict the-pope sent-across to-him the-pallium ordained he-was
autem a suffraganeis et aliis Saxoniae septem episcopis, et
moreover by the-suffragans and other of-Saxony seven bishops and
hoc in urbe metropoli Hammaburg cum ingenti gloria. Ad
this in the-city metropolis Hamburg with huge glory for
laudem beati viri parum est omne quod dicimus, a cuius
the-praise of-the-blessed man little is all which we-say from whose
laude necdum aliquem audivi discordantem. Ut enim brevi
praise not-yet anyone I-have-heard disagreeing that for in-a-brief

quodam indiculo complectamur ymaginem virtutis eius, pater
certain index we-may-embrace the-image of-virtue his father
patriae fuit, decus cleri et salus populi, terror
of-the-fatherland he-was the-glory of-the-clergy and safety of-the-people the-terror
malepotentium exemplarque benivolentium, egregius pietate, vel
of-the-wicked-powerful and-the-model of-the-well-disposed outstanding in-piety or
qui omnia vellet ad perfectum ducere; dicta et facta eius
one-who all-things wished to perfection to-lead the-words and deeds his
omnia dulci memoria posteris comprehensa. Et cum omnibus
all with-sweet memory by-posterity comprised and since to-all
esset talis, qualem singuli desiderabant, singularis cura eius
he-was such as each desired singular the-care his
et amor super clericis fuit, de quibus vix tolerare potuit,
and love toward the-clerics was about whom scarcely to-bear he-could
ut malum diceretur verbum. Nam et claustrum renovavit
that an-evil should-be-said word for both the-cloister he-renewed
et mensam canonicis ipse primus instituit. Prius enim cum
and a-table for-the-canons he first established before for when
praebenda tenuis fere videretur, triginta convivia quae Libentius
the-prebend thin almost seemed the-thirty feasts which Libentius
episcopus per annum dare statuit, adiectis ex sua parte
the-bishop through the-year to-give established added from his part
quibusdam decimis, ita ordinare videtur, ut cotidie panis albus
certain tithes so to-arrange he-seems that daily bread white
fratribus detur ultra solitam annonam, in dominicis vero
to-the-brothers should-be-given beyond the-usual allowance on of-the-Lord's indeed
diebus unicuique duplex mellitae copia. Nam et vinum dari
days to-each a-double of-mead abundance for also wine to-be-given
fratribus contra naturam Saxoniae disposuit, quod etiam in
to-the-brothers against the-nature of-Saxony he-arranged which also in
diebus suis ferme peregit. Composita mensa, manum vertit
days his almost he-accomplished settled the-table his-hand he-turned

ad claustrum, quod ipse, dum prius ligneum esset, lapideum
to the-cloister which he while before wooden it-was of-stone
fecit, forma, ut mos est, quadrangula, vario cancellorum
made in-form as the-custom is four-cornered by-varied of-lattices
ordine distinctum et visu delectabile. Deinde murum
order distinguished and to-sight delightful then the-wall
civitatis ab Herimanno decessore orsum in giro construens,
of-the-city by Hermann his-predecessor begun in a-circle building
in aliquibus eum locis usque ad propugnacula erexit, alias
in some it places all-the-way to the-battlements he-raised elsewhere
quinque aut septem cubitorum altitudine semiperfectum
five or seven cubits in-height half-finished
dimisit. Cui ab occasu contra forum, porta grandis inhaesit,
he-left in-which from the-west facing the-market a-gate great was-set
superque portam firmissima turris, opere Italico munita, et
and-above the-gate a-most-strong tower in-work Italian fortified and
septem ornata cameris ad diversam oppidi necessitatem.
with-seven adorned chambers for the-various of-the-town need
Haec dum Bremae operis insignia relinqueret, mox ad ecclesiae
these while at-Bremen of-work marks he-was-leaving soon to of-the-church
Hammaburgensis aedificationem toto cordis amore accingitur.
of-Hamburg the-building with-whole of-heart love he-girds-himself
Ibi enim post cladem Sclavanicam, quam supra contigisse
there for after the-disaster Slavic which above to-have-happened
retulimus, Unwanus archiepiscopus et cum eo dux Bernardus
we-have-related Unwan the-archbishop and with him duke Bernard
castrum nobile de ruinis antiquae civitatis elevantes, ecclesiam
a-castle noble from the-ruins of-the-ancient city raising a-church
et diversoria construxerunt omnia lignea. Alebrandus vero
and lodgings built all wooden Alebrand indeed
pontifex adversum crebras hostium incursiones aliquod fortius
the-pontiff against the-frequent of-enemies incursions some stronger

praesidium pro inopia loci necessarium arbitratus, primo
defense for the-poverty of-the-place necessary judging first
omnium ecclesiam, quae constructa erat in matris Dei
of-all the-church which built was in of-the-mother of-God
honore, lapide quadro aedificavit. Aliam deinde sibi domum
honor with-stone squared he-built another then for-himself house
lapideam fecit, turribus et propugnaculis valde munitam.
of-stone he-made with-towers and battlements very fortified
Cuius aemulatione operis dux provocatus, et ipse domum
by-whose rivalry of-work the-duke provoked also himself a-house
suis in eodem castro paravit. Ita prorsus civitate renovata,
for-his-own in the-same castle prepared so wholly the-city renewed
basilica eadem ex una parte habuit domum episcopi, ex
the-basilica the-same on one side had the-house of-the-bishop on
alia praetorium ducis. Voluit etiam nobilis archiepiscopus
the-other the-hall of-the-duke he-wished also the-noble archbishop
Hammaburg metropolem muro circumdare ac munire
Hamburg the-metropolis with-a-wall to-surround and to-fortify
turribus, nisi velocior eius transitus impedisset votum eius.
with-towers unless swifter his passing had-hindered the-vow his
Trans Albiam suo tempore ac per totum regnum pax
across the-Elbe in-his time and through the-whole kingdom peace
firma erat. Principes Sclavorum Anatrog et Gneus et Ratibor
firm was the-princes of-the-Slavs Anatrog and Gneus and Ratibor
pacifice ad Hammaburg venientes duci ac praesuli
peaceably to Hamburg coming to-the-duke and to-the-prelate
militabant. Sed cum diverso modo et tunc et nunc in
did-service but since in-different way both then and now among
gente Winulorum dux et episcopus laborarent, duce
the-nation of-the-Winuli the-duke and the-bishop labor the-duke
scilicet pro tributo, pontifice vero pro augenda christianitate
namely for tribute the-pontiff indeed for increasing Christianity

laborantibus, videtur mihi iam dudum studio sacerdotum
laboring it-seems to-me already long-since by-the-zeal of-the-priests
christianam religionem ibidem convaluisse, si conversionem
the-Christian religion there to-have-grown-strong if the-conversion
gentis avaricia principum non praepediret.
of-the-nation the-avarice of-the-princes not hindered
Archiepiscopus igitur pro legatione sibi ad gentes credita
the-archbishop therefore for the-mission to-himself to the-nations entrusted
more praedecessorum sollicitus, coadiutores praedicationis
in-the-manner of-his-predecessors anxious as-co-helpers of-preaching
ordinavit episcopos, Rodulfum ex capellanis in Sliaswig,
ordained bishops Rudolf from the-chaplains at Schleswig
Abhélinum in Sclavaniam, Wal a Bremensi choro consecravit
Abhelin for Slavia Wal from the-Bremen choir he-consecrated
in Ripam, ceteris qui supra fuerunt adhuc viventibus et
for Ribe the-others who above were still living and
in vinea Dei non ociosis.
in the-vineyard of-God not idle

Liber II, §§ 71–74

71–74 · THE DANISH AND ENGLISH SUCCESSIONS

Conrad died, and Cnut and the Swedish Olaf died the same year. Cnut's sons divided his kingdoms; the younger Svein, son of Wolf, captured raiding at Hadeln, was the archbishop's guest at Bremen. Magnus of Norway took Denmark, Edward took England, and Svein fought Magnus and fled to Sweden.

Anno pontificis sexto manu fortis imperator Conradus
in-the-year of-the-pontiff sixth in-hand strong the-emperor Conrad
obiit, et successit ei filius Heinricus, ille qui Ungros
died and succeeded him his-son Henry that-one who the-Hungarians
domuit. Eodemque tempore memorabiles aquilonis reges
tamed and-at-the-same time memorable of-the-north kings
obierunt Chnut et Olaph, germani fratres. Quorum alter,
died Cnut and Olaf full brothers of-whom the-one
videlicet Olaph, rex Sueonum, successorem regni habuit
namely Olaf king of-the-Swedes as-successor of-the-kingdom had
filium, de quo supra diximus, Iacobum. Sub quo iunior
his-son of whom above we-have-spoken James under whom the-younger
Suein, filius Wolf, militavit in Suedia 12 annis, qui retulit
Svein son of-Wolf served in Sweden 12 years who related
nobis, Iacobo regnante christianitatem late in Sueonia
to-us James reigning Christianity widely in Sweden
diffusam esse. Alter frater, scilicet Chnud, in Anglia decessit,
spread to-be the-other brother namely Cnut in England departed
tenuitque regna Danorum, Anglorum ac Nortmannorum
and-he-held the-kingdoms of-the-Danes of-the-English and of-the-Northmen
in ditione sua per viginti duos annos.
in power his for twenty two years

Post cuius mortem, ut ipse disposuit, succedunt in
after whose death as he-himself arranged succeed into
regnum filii eius, Haroldus in Angliam, Suein in
the-kingdom sons his Harold into England Svein into
Nortmanniam, Hardechnut autem in Daniam. Iste cum esset
Norway Harthacnut moreover into Denmark he since he-was
filius Imme reginae, sororem habuit eam quam caesar
the-son of-Emma the-queen a-sister had that-one whom the-caesar
Heinricus in coniugium postea recepit. Ceterum Suein
Henry into marriage afterward received however Svein
et Harold a concubina geniti erant; qui, ut mos est
and Harold of a-concubine begotten were who as the-custom is
barbaris, aequam tunc inter liberos Chnut sortiti sunt
with-barbarians an-equal then among the-free-children of-Cnut obtained have
partem hereditatis. Haroldus in Anglia triennium regnavit.
share of-the-inheritance Harold in England for-three-years reigned
Contra quem frater a Dania veniens, in Flandria classem
against whom his-brother from Denmark coming in Flanders a-fleet
adunavit. Sed rex Anglorum morte praeventus, bellum
gathered but the-king of-the-English by-death overtaken the-war
diremit. Hardechnut Angliam simul possedit et Daniam.
broke-off Harthacnut England together possessed and Denmark
Illo tempore Suein iunior, dum in Angliam iter
at-that time Svein the-younger while into England a-journey
ageret, tempestate maritima Hadeloae navibus appulit.
was-making by-a-storm at-sea at-Hadeln with-his-ships put-in
Quem proxima quaeque locorum more pyratico vastantem
whom the-nearest every places in-manner piratical laying-waste
milites quidam archiepiscopi capiunt et in praesentiam eius
soldiers certain of-the-archbishop capture and into the-presence his
pertrahunt. Ille vero captivum cum honore recipiens, Bremam
drag he indeed the-captive with honor receiving to-Bremen

duxit, et iuncta secum amicitia, post aliquot dies regie
led and joined with-himself friendship after some days royally
donatum permisit abire. Haec nobis de se rex
presented allowed to-go-away these-things to-us about himself the-king
ipse narravit, summa laude praedicans illum archiepiscopum,
himself told with-highest praise proclaiming that archbishop
forma corporis et liberalitate animi omnibus acceptum.
in-form of-body and liberality of-mind to-all acceptable
Retulit etiam circumstantibus de regio pontificis apparatu
he-related also to-those-standing-around about the-royal of-the-pontiff splendor
et tesauro ecclesiae inaestimabili, quem se ait Bremae
and the-treasure of-the-church inestimable which himself he-said at-Bremen
vidisse, et alia multa.
to-have-seen and other many-things
[Alebrandus autem archipraesul omnibus acceptus, a Bernardo
Alebrand moreover the-archprelate to-all acceptable by Bernard
duce ac germano ducis Thiadmaro pro libertate animi
the-duke and by-the-brother of-the-duke Thietmar for the-liberality of-mind
valde honoratus est. Solis invisus erat malefactoribus,
greatly honored was only hateful he-was to-the-evildoers
sicut Utoni marchioni, cuius superbiam ipse confudit sua
as to-Uto the-margrave whose pride he confounded by-his
magnanimitate.] Interea filiorum secundus Chnut, qui regnavit
magnanimity meanwhile of-the-sons the-second of-Cnut who reigned
in Nortmannia, Suein obiit. Tunc Nortmanni elegerunt
in Norway Svein died then the-Northmen chose
Magnum, qui erat filius Olaph martyris a concubina. Magnus
Magnus who was the-son of-Olaf the-martyr by a-concubine Magnus
statim invadens Daniam, possedit duo regna, Hardechnut, rege
at-once invading Denmark possessed two kingdoms Harthacnut king
Danorum, cum exercitu morante in Anglia. Qui mox adversus
of-the-Danes with the-army lingering in England who soon against

Magnum pugnaturus consanguineum Suein classi praefecit.
Magnus about-to-fight his-kinsman Svein over-the-fleet set
Suein victus a Magno cum in Angliam remearet, Hardechnut
Svein conquered by Magnus when into England he-returned Harthacnut
mortuum repperit. [Ipso tempore ferunt Ascomannos et
dead found at-that-very time they-report the-Ascomanni and
pyratas per ostium Wirrahae progressos venisse usque
pirates through the-mouth of-the-Weser having-advanced to-have-come all-the-way
ad Lismonam, insperate omnia vastantes. Quibus inde
to Lesum unexpectedly all-things laying-waste on-whom thence
redeuntibus ad naves bellum ad Aunon illatum est, ibique
returning to the-ships war at Ahnen brought was and-there
maxima pars eorum trucidata fertur.] In cuius locum Angli
the-greatest part of-them slaughtered is-reported into whose place the-English
prius elegerunt fratrem eius Eduardum, quem de priori
first chose brother his Edward whom of the-former
marito Imma genuit, vir sanctus et timens Deum. Isque
husband Emma bore a-man holy and fearing God and-he
suspectum habens Suein, quod sceptrum sibi Anglorum
suspect holding Svein that the-scepter from-him of-the-English
reposceret, cum tyranno pacem fecit, constituens eum
he-might-demand-back with the-tyrant peace made establishing him
proximum se mortuo regni Anglorum heredem, vel
next himself dead of-the-kingdom of-the-English heir even
si filios susceperit. Tali pacto mitigatus Suein, in Daniam
if sons he-should-receive by-such a-pact softened Svein into Denmark
remeavit. Multa praelia Suein cum Magno feruntur. Tociens
returned many battles of-Svein with Magnus are-reported so-often
Suein victus ad regem Sueonum fugiens pervenit Anundum.
Svein conquered to the-king of-the-Swedes fleeing came Anund

Liber II, §§ 75–77

75–77 · MAGNUS, RATIBOR, AND THE BURNING OF BREMEN

Alebrand met Magnus at Schleswig, where Magnus's sister was betrothed to Ordulf, the duke's son; after the wedding Ordulf killed a Danish prince beyond the Elbe. The Danes killed Ratibor, a Christian prince of the Slavs, and when the Slavs came to avenge him Magnus destroyed their host at Hedeby, and Gottschalk returned to fight the Slavs. The noble widow Emma died, and Saint Peter's at Bremen burned with its treasures, after which the canons' rule decayed.

Victor Magnus Daniam et Nortweiam optinuit. Ad quem
victor Magnus Denmark and Norway obtained to whom
noster archiepiscopus usque ad Sliaswig pro colloquio
our archbishop all-the-way to Schleswig for a-conference
venit, habens in comitatu suo ducem Bernardum et
came having in retinue his duke Bernard and
Thiadmarum, episcopum Hildinemensem, et Rodulfum,
Thietmar bishop of-Hildesheim and Rudolf
eiusdem civitatis episcopum. [Iste Thiadmarus a Dania
of-the-same city bishop that Thietmar from Denmark
oriundus cum regina Gunhild advenit, cuius patrocinio ille
sprung with queen Gunnhild came by-whose patronage he
meruit Hildinensem episcopatum. Nam barbarice Tymme
merited the-Hildesheim bishopric for in-barbarian Tymme
vocabatur.] In eo colloquio soror Magni regis Ordulfo,
he-was-called in that conference the-sister of-Magnus the-king to-Ordulf
ducis filio, desponsatur. Qui vix peractis nuptiis in
of-the-duke the-son is-betrothed who scarcely completed the-nuptials into
gratiam cognati Haroldum quendam, principem Danorum,
the-favor of-his-kinsman Harald a-certain prince of-the-Danes
redeuntem ab urbe apostolorum, trans Albiam obtruncavit
returning from the-city of-the-apostles across the-Elbe cut-down

innoxium. Causa mortis ea fuit, quod de regali stirpe
innocent the-cause of-the-death that was that from the-royal stock
Danorum genitus, propior sceptro videbatur quam Magnus.
of-the-Danes begotten nearer to-the-scepter he-seemed than Magnus
Ea res initium calamitatis peperit in familiam ducis.
that thing the-beginning of-calamity bore upon the-family of-the-duke
Magnus autem rex pro iusticia et fortitudine carus fuit
Magnus moreover the-king for justice and bravery dear was
Danis, verum Sclavis terribilis, qui post mortem Chnut
to-the-Danes but to-the-Slavs terrible who after the-death of-Cnut
Daniam infestabant. Ratibor, dux Sclavorum, interfectus est a
Denmark were-harassing Ratibor duke of-the-Slavs slain was by
Danis. [Ratibor iste christianus erat, vir magnae potestatis
the-Danes Ratibor that Christian was a-man of-great power
inter barbaros. Habuit enim filios octo, principes Sclavorum, qui
among the-barbarians he-had for sons eight princes of-the-Slavs who
omnes occisi sunt a Danis, dum patrem ulcisci quaesierunt.]
all slain were by the-Danes while their-father to-avenge they-sought
Ad cuius mortem ulciscendam iam tunc cum exercitu
for whose death to-be-avenged already then with an-army
Winuli venientes, usque ad Ripam vastandam progressi
the-Winuli coming all-the-way to Ribe to-be-laid-waste advanced
sunt. Et forte Magnus rex tunc a Nordmannia rediens,
have and by-chance Magnus the-king then from Norway returning
Heidibam appulit. Qui mox, Danorum copiis undique collectis,
at-Hedeby landed who soon of-the-Danes forces from-all-sides gathered
egredientes a Dania paganos in campestribus Heidibae excepit.
going-out from Denmark the-pagans in the-plains of-Hedeby met
Quindecim milia feruntur ibi occisa, et facta est pax et
fifteen thousand are-reported there slain and made was peace and
leticia christianis omni tempore Magni. Eodem vero tempore
gladness for-the-Christians in-all the-time of-Magnus at-the-same indeed time

Godescalcus post mortem Chnut regis et filiorum eius rediens
Gottschalk after the-death of-Cnut the-king and of-sons his returning
ab Anglia, contra Sclavaniam venit infestus, omnes impugnans
from England against Slavia came hostile all attacking
magnumque paganis terrorem incutiens. De cuius fortitudine
and-great on-the-pagans terror striking about whose bravery
vel potentia, quam super barbaros habuit, postea dicemus.
or power which over the-barbarians he-had afterward we-shall-speak
Et haec quidem forinsecus dum varia sorte gesta sunt,
and these-things indeed abroad while by-varied fortune done were
in Bremis status rerum labefactari coepit:
in Bremen the-state of-affairs to-totter began

— ‘summisque negatum
and-to-the-highest denied
Stare diu’,
to-stand long

nostrae quoque invidit prosperitati. In diebus illis nobilissima
our also envied prosperity in days those the-most-noble
senatrix Emma obiit, uxor quondam Liutgeri comitis, [et
senatress Emma died wife once of-Liudger the-count and
soror Meginwerki, episcopi Padarburnensis], sed iam vidua
sister of-Meinwerk bishop of-Paderborn but already a-widow
per annos quadraginta, totum fere quem habuit ingentem
through years forty all almost which she-had huge
tesaurum pauperibus et ecclesiis dispersit. Corpus eius
treasure to-the-poor and to-the-churches scattered the-body her
requiescit in Bremensi ecclesia, anima eius gaudeat in
rests in the-Bremen church the-soul her may-rejoice in
celesti requie. Illa dum adhuc viveret, Bremensi ecclesiae
heavenly rest she while still she-lived to-the-Bremen church

cortem Stiplaga iuxta Rhenum dedit. Lismona vero, nescio
the-estate Stiplaga next-to the-Rhine gave Lesum indeed I-know-not
pro quo filiae delicto, in partem cessit imperatoris
for what of-her-daughter fault into the-part fell of-the-emperor
Conradi; pro qua re Gisla regina eo tempore [Bremam
Conrad for which matter Gisela the-queen at-that time to-Bremen
accedens, fratribus multa bona fecit, ecclesiae et omnibus
coming to-the-brothers many good-things did to-the-church and to-all
indigenis, deinde] visitavit Lismonam [cum archiepiscopo].
natives then visited Lesum with the-archbishop
Anno archiepiscopi penultimo domus sancti Petri Bremae
in-the-year of-the-archbishop next-to-last the-house of-saint Peter at-Bremen
conflagravit, eiusque flamma incendii claustrum cum officinis,
burned-down and-its flame of-the-fire the-cloister with the-workshops
urbem cum aedificiis totam consumpsit, veterisque habitaculi
the-town with buildings whole consumed and-of-the-old dwelling
nullum remansit vestigium. Ibi sacrae tesaurus ecclesiae, ibi
no remained trace there of-the-sacred treasure church there
libri et vestes, ibi omnia ornamenta consumpta sunt. Et haec
the-books and vestments there all the-ornaments consumed were and these
quidem rerum dampna facile possent recuperari, si maiora non
indeed of-things losses easily could to-be-recovered if greater not
pateremur in moribus detrimenta. 'Multum enim distant', ut
we-suffered in morals losses much for differ as
quidam ait, 'dampna morum a dampnis temporalium rerum,
a-certain-man says losses of-morals from losses of-temporal things
cum illa intra nos sint, extra nos ista'. Sane ex illo tempore
since those within us are outside us these truly from that time
fratribus, qui ante canonice vixerant, extra claustrum vagantibus
the-brothers who before canonically had-lived outside the-cloister wandering
regula sanctorum patrum, per multa prius saecula studiose
the-rule of-the-holy fathers through many before ages zealously

conservata, primo negligentius haberi coepit, deinde funditus
kept first more-negligently to-be-held began then utterly
abiecta consenuit. Et sunt anni ab ordinatione sancti
cast-off grew-old and there-are the-years from the-ordination of-saint
Willehadi, cum Bremensis ecclesia fundata est, usque ad finem
Willehad when the-Bremen church founded was all-the-way to the-end
Alebrandi, quando eadem ecclesia combusta est, anni ferme 270.
of-Alebrand when the-same church burned was years almost 270

Liber II, § 78

78 · ALEBRAND'S DEATH

Alebrand began a new church on the model of Cologne. Before Easter he walked barefoot to Bremen, commended his church in prayer, fell ill, and died at Bücken in 1043; he was buried in the new basilica beside Willehad. Adam bids him farewell as a shepherd never to be forgotten.

Combusta est autem intrante autumno, quod est
burned it-was moreover at-the-entering autumn which is
3. Idus Septembris; archiepiscopus eo tempore
on-the-3rd Ides of-September the-archbishop at-that time
in Fresiam iter egit. Is, conflagratione templi
into Frisia a-journey made he the-burning of-the-temple
audita, mox pedem retorsit, iactisque sequenti aestate
heard soon his-foot turned-back and-laid in-the-following summer
fundamentis ad formam Coloniensis ecclesiae disposuit huius
the-foundations to the-form of-the-Cologne church arranged of-this
nostrae magnitudinem perducere. Et profecto credimus,
our the-greatness to-carry-through and truly we-believe
si longiorem sibi vitam fata concesserint, omne opus
if longer to-him life the-fates had-granted the-whole work

ecclesiae finiturus erat paucis annis. Tanta erat praesulis
of-the-church about-to-finish he-was in-few years so-great was of-the-prelate
animositas et instancia in omni opere, praecipue vero in
the-spirit and urgency in every work chiefly indeed in
templi aedificatione. Porro sola aestas, quae inceperat
of-the-temple the-building further alone the-summer which had-begun
hoc opus, fundamenta ecclesiae iacta, columpnas et
this work the-foundations of-the-church laid the-columns and
arcus earum lateraque in altum erecta vidit. Transacta
arches of-them and-the-sides into the-height raised saw passed
hyeme, cum iam festivitas immineret paschalis, beatissimus
the-winter when already the-feast was-impending paschal the-most-blessed
pontifex Alebrandus [pridie ante dominicam coenam],
pontiff Alebrand on-the-day-before before of-the-Lord's supper
credo non inscius vocationis suae, ab ecclesia Scirnbeki
I-believe not ignorant of-the-calling his from the-church of-Scheeßel
[vel Stade, ut alii affirmant], nudis pedibus accessit
or Stade as others affirm with-bare feet approached
Bremam. Ubi multa oratione cum lacrimis effusa Deo
Bremen where with-much prayer with tears poured-out to-God
et sanctis eius commendavit ecclesiam. Cumque iam
and saints his he-commended the-church and-when already
febribus tangeretur, navigio delatus est ad Buciensem
with-fevers he-was-touched by-ship carried was to the-Bücken
praeposituram ibique supervixit dies septem. Sic terrenum
provostship and-there survived days seven thus the-earthly
phase celestibus mutans azimis, anima eius gaudens
passover for-heavenly exchanging unleavened-bread the-soul his rejoicing
transivit ad Dominum. At vero corpus antistitis cum
passed to the-Lord but indeed the-body of-the-bishop with
ingenti luctu sequentium et occurrentium per alveum
huge mourning of-those-following and of-those-meeting through the-bed

Wissulae fluvii Bremam deportatum, in medio novae,
of-the-Weser river to-Bremen carried in the-middle of-the-new
quam ipse orsus est, basilicae tumulatum est. In quo
which he began has basilica entombed was in which
scilicet loco primum altare maius situm fuerat iuxta
namely place first the-altar greater situated had-been next-to
mausoleum sancti patris Willehadi. Per idem vero tempus
the-mausoleum of-holy father Willehad through the-same indeed time
apud Magedburg felicis memoriae Hunfrid archiepiscopus
at Magdeburg of-happy memory Hunfrid the-archbishop
obiit. Illique successit Engilhard, reiecto illo, qui sprevit
died and-to-him succeeded Engilhard rejected that-one who spurned
episcopatum, Winthero. Anno Domini 1043. contigit
the-bishopric Winther in-the-year of-the-Lord 1043 happened
depositio dilecti patris nostri Alebrandi, circa diem 17.
the-deposition of-beloved father our Alebrand about the-day 17th
Kal. Maii. Haec est indictio 11. Vale in Christo, pastor
Kalends of-May this is the-indiction 11th farewell in Christ shepherd
amabilis et tuo gregi nunquam obliviscende. Transi a
lovable and by-your flock never to-be-forgotten pass from
pascha coelorum, ubi cum agno paschali epuleris in
the-passover of-the-heavens where with the-lamb paschal you-may-feast on
azimis sinceritatis et veritatis. Recipere feliciter in
the-unleavened-bread of-sincerity and truth be-received happily into
aeterna tabernacula, ubi cum angelis indeficua laeteris
the-eternal tabernacles where with the-angels in-unfailing you-may-rejoice
beatitudine. Quamdiu enim temporali nobiscum fruebaris
blessedness as-long for temporal with-us you-enjoyed
vita, pastoralis curae officia nobiliter implesti, vita et
life of-pastoral care the-offices nobly you-fulfilled in-life and
doctrina, omnia nobis dulcia. Nunc autem raptus es,
teaching all-things to-us sweet now moreover snatched-away you-are

ne malicia mutaret intellectum tuum; ideoque pius
lest malice should-change understanding your and-therefore the-pious
Dominus properavit educere te de medio iniquitatum, ut
Lord hastened to-lead-out you from the-midst of-iniquities that
fructum laborum tuorum pleniter recipieres, etiamsi non
the-fruit of-labors your fully you-might-receive even-if not
feceras omnia bona, quae voluisti. Ergo iusticia tua
you-had-done all the-good-things which you-wished therefore justice your
manet et memoriale tuum non derelinquetur in saeculum
remains and memorial your not shall-be-forsaken into the-age
saeculi.
of-the-age

Liber III, § 1

1 · ADALBERT'S ELECTION AND ADAM'S TASK

Adalbert received the staff from Henry and the pallium from Pope Benedict and was consecrated at Aachen by twelve bishops. Adam knows how hard it is to write of him: praise will be called flattery and blame malice. Adalbert had every gift, and none was more vigorous in the mission or in the service of the empire, yet he grew worse toward the end.

Nomen Adalberti trutinat pars tercia libri.
the-name of-Adalbert weighs the-part third of-the-book

Adalbertus archiepiscopus sedit annos unumdetriginta. Virgam
Adalbert archbishop sat years twenty-nine the-staff
pastoralem suscepit ab Heinrico imperatore, filio Conradi, qui
pastoral he-received from Henry the-emperor son of-Conrad who
a Caesare Augusto Romanorum imperatorum nonagesimus
from Caesar Augustus of-the-Roman emperors the-ninetieth
erat in solio, exceptis illis, qui simul regnabant cum alteris.
was on the-throne except those who together reigned with others
Palleum archiepiscopale, ut decessores sui, per legatos accepit
the-pallium archiepiscopal as predecessors his through legates he-received
a supradicto papa Benedicto, quem in ordine Romanorum
from the-above-said pope Benedict whom in the-order of-the-Roman
pontificum post apostolos fuisse 147. repperimus.
pontiffs after the-apostles to-have-been the-147th we-have-found
Ordinatio eius facta est Aquisgrani, praesente cum principibus
the-ordination his done was at-Aachen present with the-princes
caesare, 12 episcopis astantibus et manum imponentibus. Cuius
the-caesar 12 bishops standing-by and the-hand laying-on of-which

benedictionis copiam ipse sibi multociens maledicentibus
benediction the-abundance he to-himself many-times to-those-cursing
obiecit, subridens ac dicens: se non posse ab aliquo
objected smiling and saying himself not to-be-able by anyone
maledici, qui a tantis ecclesiae patriarchis ab initio
to-be-cursed who by so-great of-the-church patriarchs from the-beginning
et simul tam sollempniter benedictus fuerit. De cuius viri
and together so solemnly blessed had-been about of-which man
gestis et moribus cum difficile sit aliquid dignum scribere,
the-deeds and morals since difficult it-is anything worthy to-write
ad scribendum nos ea cogit necessitas, quoniam promisimus,
to writing us that compels necessity since we-have-promised
libri huius tenorem, o venerabilis praesul Liemare, usque
of-book this the-tenor O venerable prelate Liemar all-the-way
ad diem tui pontificatus extendere. Unde licet stulte
to the-day of-your pontificate to-extend whence although foolishly
audacterque introierim hoc pelagus, nunc tamen haut
and-boldly I-have-entered this sea now yet not
inprudenter fecisse videar, si ad litus properabo. In cuius
imprudently to-have-done I-may-seem if to the-shore I-shall-hasten in of-which
littoris accessione vix aliquem portum video inperitiae meae:
shore approach scarcely any harbor I-see for-inexperience my
ita plena sunt omnia scopulis invidiae detractationumque
so full are all-things with-the-rocks of-envy and-of-detractions
asperitatibus, ut ea, quae laudaveris, adulatione carpant,
with-the-roughnesses that those-things which you-have-praised as-flattery they-carp-at
quae vero delicta reprehenderis, dicant fieri ex malivolentia.
which indeed faults you-have-reproved they-say to-be-done from malevolence
Cum tamen ille vir memorabilis omni genere laudum possit
since yet that man memorable with-every kind of-praises can
extolli, quod nobilis, quod pulcher, quod sapiens, quod
to-be-extolled that noble that handsome that wise that

eloquens, quod castus, quod sobrius: haec omnia continebat
eloquent that chaste that sober these all he-contained
in se ipso, et alia item bona, quae extrinsecus homini
in him himself and other likewise goods which from-outside to-a-man
solent accedere, ut sit dives, ut felix, ut gloriam habeat,
are-wont to-come that he-be rich that happy that glory he-may-have
ut potentiam, omnia sibi habunde fuerunt. Praeterea
that power all-things to-him abundantly were moreover
in legatione gentium, quod primum est Hammaburgensis
in the-mission of-the-nations which first is of-the-Hamburg
ecclesiae officium, nemo unquam tam strennuus potuit
church the-office no-one ever so vigorous could
inveniri. Item in divinis ministeriis sollempniter obeundis, in
to-be-found likewise in the-divine ministries solemnly to-be-discharged in
honore sedis apostolicae, in fidelitate rei publicae,
the-honor of-the-apostolic see in the-loyalty of-the-thing public
in sollicitudine etiam suae parrochiae, vix potuit habere
in the-care also of-his diocese scarcely could-he to-have
comparem, aut qui in pastorali cura vigilantior esset in
an-equal or one-who in pastoral care more-watchful was in
omnibus, si ita perseveraret. Nam cum talis fuerit ab
all-things if so he-were-to-persevere for though such he-was from
initio, circa finem deterior videbatur; ad quem virtutis suae
the-beginning toward the-end worse he-seemed to which of-virtue his
defectum corruit vir non bene cautus tam sua negligentia,
failing fell the-man not well cautious as-much by-his negligence
quam ceterorum inpellente malicia. De quibus suo loco
as of-the-others driving by-the-malice of which in-its place
postea latius dicetur. Quoniam vero difficile est omnes
later more-widely shall-be-told since indeed difficult it-is all
viri actus aut bene aut pleniter aut in ordinem posse
of-the-man the-acts either well or fully or in order to-be-able

diffiniri a me, praecipua gestorum eius summatim quaeque
to-be-defined by me the-chief-things of-deeds his summarily each
delibans, affectu condolentis ad eam pervenire desidero
touching-on with-the-feeling of-one-grieving-with to that to-come I-desire
calumpniam, qua nobilis et dives parrochia Hammaburgensis
injury by-which the-noble and rich diocese of-Hamburg
et Bremensis, altera vastata est a paganis, altera discerpta
and of-Bremen the-one laid-waste was by the-pagans the-other torn-apart
est a pseudochristianis. Igitur narrationis initium tale
was by false-Christians therefore of-the-narrative the-beginning such
faciam, ut statim ex moribus eius possint omnia cognosci.
I-shall-make that at-once from the-morals his can all-things to-be-known

Liber III, §§ 2–3

2–3 · ADALBERT'S CHARACTER; THE CLOISTER DESTROYED

Adalbert was noble, learned, eloquent, chaste, and generous, humble to the poor and harsh to the great, but marred by vainglory. Adam explains that his gifts and hatreds both served his church. In his first year he tore down the city wall, the tower, and the stone cloister to build his basilica, planning to rebuild the brothers' offices in stone.

Erat nimirum genere vir nobilissimus, honore primo
he-was surely in-family a-man most-noble in-office first
Halverstatensis praepositus, ingenio acri et instructo multarum
of-Halberstadt provost in-wit keen and equipped of-many
artium suppellectile, in divinis et humanis prudentiae
arts with-the-furniture in divine and human-things of-prudence
magnae, et ad ea, quae auditu vel studio collegit,
great and for those-things which by-hearing or study he-gathered
retinenda et proferenda memoriae celebris, eloquentiae
to-be-retained and to-be-brought-forth of-memory famous of-eloquence

singularis. Tum praeterea, quod forma corporis erat spetiosus,
singular then moreover that in-form of-body he-was handsome
castitatis amator fuit. Largitas eiusmodi, ut petere haberet
of-chastity a-lover he-was the-generosity of-such-kind that to-ask be-held
indignum, tarde aut humiliter acceperit, prompte vero
unworthy slowly or humbly he-accepted readily indeed
hylariterque saepe non petentibus largiretur. Humilitas
and-cheerfully often to-those-not asking he-gave humility
in eo dubia videbatur, quam solis exhibuit servis Dei,
in him doubtful seemed which to-alone he-showed the-servants of-God
pauperibus et peregrinis, adeo ut saepe, antequam cubitum
the-poor and pilgrims so-much that often before to-bed
iret, triginta et amplius mendicantibus ipse genu flexo
he-went thirty and more beggars he-himself with-knee bent
pedes lavaret. Principibus autem saeculi et coaequalibus suis
the-feet washed to-the-princes moreover of-the-world and to-equals his
humiliari nullo modo voluit. In quos etiam tali zelo
to-humble-himself in-no way he-wished against whom even with-such zeal
exarsit aliquando, ut hos luxuriae, illos avaritiae, quosdam
he-flared sometimes that these of-luxury those of-avarice some
infidelitatis arguens, nulli demum parceret, quem notabilem
of-infidelity accusing to-none at-last he-spared whom notable
cognovit. Itaque multis virtutibus in unum vas congregatis,
he-knew and-so with-many virtues into one vessel gathered
poterat vir talis esse dicique beatus, nisi unum vicium
could a-man such to-be and-to-be-called blessed unless one vice
obstaret, cuius deformitas omnem decorem praesulis
stood-in-the-way whose ugliness all the-beauty of-the-prelate
obnubilarat, hoc erat cenodoxia, familiaris divitum vernacula.
had-clouded this was vainglory the-familiar of-the-rich home-born-slave
Ea prudenti viro talem invidiam peperit, ut multi etiam
it for-the-prudent man such envy bore that many even

bona, quae fecit plurima, dicerent fieri pro mundana
the-good-things which he-did very-many said to-be-done for worldly
gloria. Sed videant huiusmodi, ne temere illum iudicent, hoc
glory but let-see of-this-kind lest rashly him they-judge this
scientes, quod in rebus ambiguis absolutum non debet esse
knowing that in things ambiguous absolute not ought to-be
iudicium, et: 'in quo alterum iudicas, te ipsum condempnas'.
judgment and in what another you-judge you yourself condemn
Nobis autem qui cum eo viximus cotidianamque viri
to-us moreover who with him lived and-the-daily of-the-man
conversationem inspeximus, notum est, aliqua illum, sicut
conduct observed known it-is some-things him as
hominem, fecisse pro honore saeculi, multa vero pro
a-man to-have-done for the-honor of-the-world many indeed for
Dei timore, sicut bonum hominem. Et quamvis largitas
of-God fear as a-good man and although the-generosity
eius in cunctos modum excederet, inveni tamen eam
his toward all the-measure exceeded I-have-found yet this
largiendi rationem, quod pro ditanda ecclesia sua quosdam
of-giving the-reason that for enriching church his certain-men
studuit obsequiis placare, sicut reges et eorum consilio
he-strove with-services to-please as kings and their to-the-counsel
proximos; alios autem qui ecclesiae suae aliquo modo nocere
the-nearest others moreover who to-church his in-some way to-harm
videbantur, acerrimo persecutus est odio, sicut duces
seemed with-the-most-bitter pursued he-has hatred as dukes
nostros et nonnullos episcopos. Audivimus eum saepenumero
our and some bishops we-heard him often
pro lucro ecclesiae suae se suosque parentes devovisse:
for the-gain of-church his himself and-his kinsmen to-have-vowed
'Adeo', inquit, 'nemini parcam, nec mihi, nec fratribus,
so-much he-says to-no-one shall-I-spare neither to-me nor to-the-brothers

nec pecuniae, nec ipsi ecclesiae, ut episcopatus meus
nor to-money nor to-the-very church that bishopric my
aliquando liberetur a iugo vel par ceteris efficiatur'.
at-some-time may-be-freed from the-yoke or equal to-the-others be-made
Quae omnia [melius] in ipso hystoriae textu pandentur,
which all-things better in the-very of-the-history text shall-be-laid-open
ut videant sapientes, quam coacte et non temere, immo
that may-see the-wise how compelled and not rashly rather
probabili ratione fecerit aliqua, in quibus desipuisse
with-approvable reason he-did some-things in which to-have-been-foolish
vel insanisse videtur a non intelligentibus.
or to-have-been-mad he-seems by the-not understanding
Anno ordinationis suae primo, postquam pontifex sollempniter
in-the-year of-ordination his first after the-pontiff solemnly
intronizatus est, ecclesiae Bremae nuptias peregit. Videns
enthroned was to-the-church at-Bremen the-nuptials he-completed seeing
basilicae noviter inceptae opus inmensum vires quaerere
of-the-basilica newly begun the-work immense resources to-require
maximas, nimis praecipiti usus consilio, statim murum
the-greatest too headlong having-used counsel at-once the-wall
civitatis a decessoribus orsum et quasi minus necessarium
of-the-city by predecessors begun and as-if less necessary
destrui fecit, iussitque lapides in templo poni. Nam
to-be-destroyed he-had and-ordered the-stones in the-temple to-be-put for
et turris speciosa, quam diximus septem cameris ornatam
both the-tower beautiful which we-said with-seven chambers adorned
fuisse, tunc funditus est diruta. Quid loquar de claustro,
to-have-been then utterly was pulled-down why should-I-speak of the-cloister
quod lapide polito constructum, pulcritudine sua visus
which with-stone polished built by-beauty its the-sight
contuentium refecit? Et hoc praesul absque mora praecepit
of-the-beholders refreshed and this the-prelate without delay ordered

dissipari, quasi aliud pulcrius cito facturus. Cogitavit enim,
to-be-scattered as-if another more-beautiful soon about-to-make he-thought for
ut ipse nobis de ea re sciscitantibus aperuit, refectorium,
as he to-us about that matter inquiring disclosed the-refectory
dormitorium, cellarium et ceteras fratrum officinas, omnia
the-dormitory the-cellar and the-other of-the-brothers workshops all
ex lapide facere, si locus aut ocium suppeditarent. Ad quae
from stone to-make if place or leisure should-supply for which
omnia cum sibi habunde ad manus fore gloriaretur, ut pace
all-things since to-him abundantly at hand to-be he-boasted to by-the-leave
fratrum dicam, solam clericorum et lapidum penuriam saepe
of-the-brothers I-may-say only of-clerics and stones the-lack often
querebatur. Interea 'fervet opus', surrexit ecclesiae murus, cuius
he-complained meanwhile seethes the-work rose of-the-church the-wall whose
formam ante Alebrandus ad instar Coloniensis incepit, ipse
form before Alebrand on the-likeness of-the-Cologne began he
vero ad exemplum Beneventanae domus cogitavit perducere.
indeed to the-example of-the-Benevento house thought to-carry-through

Liber III, §§ 4–8

4–8 · ADALBERT AND THE DUKES

The high altar was dedicated to Mary, but the church stood unfinished until Adam came to Bremen in the archbishop's twenty-fourth year. Adalbert set out to free his church from the dukes' jurisdiction, and Duke Bernard called him the emperor's spy. He followed Henry on campaigns, declined the papacy at Rome in favor of Clement, and defended the emperor at Lesum against Count Thietmar, which earned the dukes' lasting hatred.

Anno tandem septimo incepti operis moles a fronte levata
in-the-year at-last seventh of-the-begun work the-mass from the-front raised
est, ac principale sanctuarii altare dedicatum in honore sanctae
was and the-principal of-the-sanctuary altar dedicated in honor of-saint
Mariae. Nam secundum in occidentali absida consecrandum
Mary for the-second in the-western apse to-be-consecrated
altare disposuit in amore sancti Petri, cuius sub invocatione
altar he-arranged in love of-saint Peter whose under invocation
legitur antiqua basilica extructa. Emergentibus itaque multis
is-read the-old basilica built emerging and-so many
archiepiscopo angustiis, mansit opus inperfectum ad annum
for-the-archbishop straits remained the-work unfinished to the-year
pontificii 24, cum et ego indignissimus ecclesiae Dei
of-the-pontificate 24th when also I most-unworthy of-the-church of-God
matricularius Bremam veni; et tunc demum templi parietes
registered-cleric to-Bremen came and then at-last of-the-temple the-walls
dealbantur, occidentalisque cripta sancto Andreae dedicata est.
are-whitewashed and-the-western crypt to-saint Andrew dedicated was
Et quoniam magnus pontifex vidit ecclesiam et episcopatum
and since the-great pontiff saw church and bishopric
suum, quem decessoris sui Adaldagi prudentia liberavit,
his which of-predecessor his Adaldag the-prudence freed

iniqua ducum potentia iterum vexari, summo nisu
by-the-wicked of-the-dukes power again to-be-harassed with-highest effort
conatus est eandem ecclesiam pristinae libertati reddere,
tried he-has the-same church to-former liberty to-restore
ita ut nec dux, nec comes, aut aliqua iudicialis persona
so that neither duke nor count or any judicial person
quempiam districtum aut potestatem haberet in suo
any jurisdiction or power should-have in his
episcopatu. Quod nisi per odium fieri nequivit, dum
bishopric which except through hatred to-be-done could-not while
correpti pro nequitia principes ad iram magis accenderentur.
rebuked for wickedness the-princes to wrath rather were-inflamed
Aiuntque, Bernardum ducem, cum pro nobilitate ac sapientia
and-they-say Bernard the-duke since for nobility and wisdom
suspectum habuerit pontificem, saepe dixisse, illum quasi
suspect he-held the-pontiff often to-have-said him as-if
exploratorem positum in has regiones, qui infirma terrae
a-spy placed in these regions who the-weak-points of-the-land
alienigenis et caesari esset proditurus; ideoque dum ipse
to-foreigners and to-the-caesar was about-to-betray and-therefore while he
aut aliquis filiorum eius advixerit, episcopum nunquam bonum
or any of-the-sons his should-live the-bishop never a-good
diem habiturum in episcopatu. Quod verbum in pectus
day about-to-have in the-bishopric which word into the-breast
episcopi altius, quam quisquam ratus erat, descendit. Itaque
of-the-bishop more-deeply than anyone thought had sank and-so
ex eo tempore ira et metu anxius, moliri, parare
from that time with-anger and fear anxious to-contrive to-prepare
atque ea modo cum animo habere, quae duci et
and those-things only with mind to-hold which for-the-duke and
suis profutura non essent. Dissimulatoque animi dolore ad
his-own about-to-profit not were and-dissembled of-mind the-pain for

tempus, quod alia via consilium non invenit, totus confugit
a-time because by-another way a-plan not he-found wholly he-fled
ad auxilium palatii, nec pepercit sibi ac suis, aut ipsi
to the-aid of-the-palace nor spared himself and his-own or the-very
episcopatui, caesarem placando et aulicos, dummodo id
bishopric the-caesar by-appeasing and the-courtiers provided-that that
efficeret, quod ecclesia esset libera. Proinde visus est
he-might-bring-about that the-church should-be free accordingly seen he-was
tantos in curia labores tolerasse, tantas ubique terrarum
so-great in the-court labors to-have-endured so-many everywhere of-the-lands
expeditiones sponte cum suis desudasse, ut infatigabilem
campaigns willingly with his-own to-have-sweated that the-tireless
eius viri constanciam miratus caesar ad omnia publicae
of-that man constancy having-marveled-at the-caesar for all of-the-public
rei consilia virum habere maluerit vel primum.
thing counsels the-man to-have preferred even first
Expeditiones vero, quas in Ungriam, Sclavaniam, Italiam
the-campaigns indeed which into Hungary Slavia Italy
vel in Flandriam cum caesare pontifex egit, multae sunt.
or into Flanders with the-caesar the-pontiff made many are
Quae dum singulae magnis episcopii sumptibus multisque
which while each with-great of-the-bishopric expenses and-many
familiarum oppressionibus exigerentur, duarum nos tantum
of-the-households oppressions were-exacted of-two we only
facere mentionem cogimur, hoc est Italicae, quae prima fuit,
to-make mention are-forced that is of-the-Italian which first was
vel Ungaricae, quae postrema, eo quod insignes prae ceteris
or of-the-Hungarian which last for-this that notable beyond the-others
fuerint nobisque ambae infeliciter evenerunt. At de Ungarica
they-were and-to-us both unhappily turned-out but about the-Hungarian
quidem dicetur in fine, nunc de Italica videamus.
indeed it-shall-be-said at the-end now about the-Italian let-us-see

Heinricus rex, domitis vel compositis Pannonum
Henry the-king tamed or settled of-the-Pannonians
sedicionibus, ecclesiastica, ut dicitur, necessitate Romam
seditions by-ecclesiastical as is-said need to-Rome
tractus est, comitem habens cum ceteris imperii magnatibus
drawn was as-companion having with the-other of-the-empire magnates
et nostrum archiepiscopum. Ubi depositis, qui pro
also our archbishop where deposed those-who for
apostolica sede certaverant, Benedicto, Gratiano et Silvestro
the-apostolic see had-contended Benedict Gratian and Silvester
scismaticis, Adalbertus pontifex in papam eligi debuit,
schismatics Adalbert the-pontiff as pope to-be-elected ought
nisi quod pro se collegam posuit Clementem. A quo
except that for himself (his)-colleague he-put Clement by whom
rex Heinricus coronatus die natalis Domini, imperator
king Henry crowned on-the-day of-the-birth of-the-Lord emperor
et augustus vocatus est.
and augustus called was
Post haec imperatorem ab Italia revertentem archiepiscopus
after these-things the-emperor from Italy returning archbishop
noster fertur Bremam vocasse, occasione data, quasi
our is-reported to-Bremen to-have-called occasion given as-if
Lismonam visere deberet vel regem Danorum invitare ad
Lesum to-visit he-ought or the-king of-the-Danes to-invite to
colloquium, sed revera ut fidem exploraret ducum.
a-conference but in-truth that the-loyalty he-might-explore of-the-dukes
Imperator autem Bremae apparatu regio, sicut dignum
the-emperor moreover at-Bremen with-splendor royal as worthy
fuit, receptus, cortem quae Balga dicitur, fratribus optulit,
it-was received the-estate which Balge is-called to-the-brothers offered
ecclesiae vero comitatum Fresiae concessit, quem ante
to-the-church indeed the-county of-Frisia granted which before

Gotafridus habuit. Caesar inde Lismonam veniens, mox,
Godfred had the-caesar thence to-Lesum coming soon
ut aiunt, per insidias a Thiedmaro comite circumventus,
as they-say through plots by Thietmar the-count surrounded
archiepiscopi nostri studio defensus est. Quare idem comes
of-the-archbishop our by-the-zeal defended was wherefore the-same count
a caesare vocatus in ius, cum se purgare duello mallet,
by the-caesar called into court when himself to-clear by-duel he-preferred
a satellite suo nomine Arnoldo est interfectus. Qui et ipse
by retainer his by-name Arnold was slain who also himself
non post multos dies a filio Thietmari comprehensus, et
not after many days by the-son of-Thietmar seized and
per tybias suspensus inter duos canes efflavit, unde et
by the-shins hung between two dogs breathed-out whence also
ipse ab imperatore comprehensus et perpetuo est exilio
he by the-emperor seized and to-perpetual was exile
dampnatus. Cuius mortem dux germanus et filii eius
condemned whose death the-duke (his)-brother and sons his
acerrime zelantes in archiepiscopum, ex eo tempore
most-bitterly resenting against the-archbishop from that time
ipsum et ecclesiam eius et familiam ecclesiae letali
himself and church his and the-household of-the-church with-deadly
odio persecuti sunt. Cumque pax ficta interdum ambas
hatred pursued have and-though peace feigned at-times both
conciliasse partes videretur, nichilominus tamen illi qui
to-have-reconciled parties seemed nonetheless yet those who
ducem secuntur, antiqui memores odii, quod patres eorum
the-duke follow the-old mindful of-the-hatred which fathers their
exercuerunt in ecclesiam, nostros impugnare non cessarunt,
practiced against the-church ours to-attack not ceased

affligentes omnibus modis. ‘Exurge ergo, Domine, et iudica
afflicting in-all ways rise therefore O-Lord and judge
causam tuam, memor esto obprobrii servorum tuorum!’
cause your mindful be of-the-reproach of-servants your

Liber III, §§ 9–11

9–11 · PROVOSTSHIPS AND LETTERS TO THE NORTH

Adalbert founded provostships at Bremen and elsewhere and began works that failed through his agents’ fraud. He wrote to all the northern kings and bishops. Svein of Denmark married a kinswoman, and Adalbert forced him by threat of excommunication to give her up, though Svein took other wives.

Metropolitanus autem econtra bonis studiis certans
the-metropolitan moreover on-the-other-hand with-good pursuits contending
et beneficiis redimens tempus, quoniam dies mali erant,
and with-benefits redeeming the-time since the-days evil were
pacem cum ducibus fecit. Deinde vero sollicitudinem gerens
peace with the-dukes made then indeed care bearing
parrochiae, aliquid magnum vel se dignum cogitavit ubique
of-the-diocese something great or of-himself worthy he-thought everywhere
nobilitatis suae monumentum relinquere. Et primo quidem
of-nobility his a-monument to-leave and first indeed
flocci pendens auream decessorum mediocritatem, vetera
at-a-straw valuing the-golden of-his-predecessors mean the-old-things
contempsit, nova molitus omnia perficere. Igitur magnis
he-despised new having-striven all-things to-accomplish therefore with-great
animi et sumptuum conatibus pugnans, ut Bremam similem
of-mind and of-expense efforts fighting that Bremen like
ceteris efficeret urbibus, statim ex bonis, quae ipse
to-the-other he-might-make cities at-once from the-goods which he

adquisivit, duas fecit praeposituras, unam sancto Willehado,
acquired two he-made provostships one to-saint Willehad
ubi corpus eius aut requiescit aut translatum est, alteram
where the-body his either rests or translated was the-other
sancto Stephano, cuius se famulum multociens gloriabatur
to-saint Stephen whose himself servant many-times boasted
archiepiscopus. Has duas construxit a principio, verum et
the-archbishop these two he-built from the-beginning but also
alias postea fecit, hoc est in Bremis terciam sancto Paulo,
others afterward he-made that is in Bremen a-third to-saint Paul
de bonis quae hospitali pertinebant; Liastimonae quartam
from the-goods which to-the-hospital belonged at-Lesum a-fourth
de praedio eiusdem cortis; quintam voluit apud Stade
from the-estate of-the-same manor a-fifth he-wished at Stade
fieri, sextam vero trans Albiam in Sollonberg. Septimam
to-be-made the-sixth indeed across the-Elbe on the-Süllberg the-seventh
vero incepit in Aspice, qui locus in Mindensi parrochia est
indeed he-began on Aspice which place in the-Minden diocese is
silvestris et montuosus. Octava est abbatia Gozzicana iuxta
wooded and mountainous the-eighth is the-abbey of-Goseck next-to
Salam flumen, quae fundata est a parentibus archiepiscopi.
the-Saale river which founded was by the-parents of-the-archbishop
Alia etiam plurima diversis locis inchoavit opera, quorum
other also very-many in-various places he-began works of-which
pleraque defecerunt ipso adhuc vivo et rei publicae
most failed him still living and of-the-thing public
negotiis intento; sicut illa domus lapidea, quae in Aspice
to-the-affairs intent as that house of-stone which on Aspice
subito casu lapsa corruit, ipso praesente. Cetera vero
by-a-sudden fall having-slipped collapsed himself present the-others indeed
ex raptu vel negligentia praepositorum dissipata probantur,
by the-plunder or negligence of-the-provosts scattered are-proved

in quos, comperta fraude, atrociter aliquando ultus est
on whom found-out the-fraud cruelly sometimes avenged has
archiepiscopus. Qua in re videri potest eorum nequitia,
the-archbishop which in matter to-be-seen can their wickedness
quibus ille fidem plus iusto habuit, voluntatem praesulis
in-whom he faith more than-just had the-will of-the-prelate
a bono incepto saepe conversam. Et res quidem
from the-good undertaking often turned and the-affairs indeed
domesticae a principio bene ac laudabiliter ab illo viro
domestic from the-beginning well and laudably by that man
provisae sunt. Quae autem foris pro legatione gentium
provided-for were what-things moreover abroad for the-mission of-the-nations
acta sint, consequens sermo breviter declarabit.
done were the-following speech briefly shall-declare
Metropolitanus statim ut ingressus est episcopatum,
the-metropolitan at-once as entered he-has the-bishopric
ad reges aquilonis pro amicitia legatos misit. Epistolas
to the-kings of-the-north for friendship envoys sent letters
quoque commonitorias sparsit per omnem Daniam sive
also admonitory he-scattered through all Denmark or
Nortmanniam ac Suediam et usque ad fines terrae,
Norway and Sweden and all-the-way to the-ends of-the-earth
exhortans episcopos et presbyteros in illis partibus degentes,
exhorting the-bishops and presbyters in those parts living
ut ecclesias domini nostri Iesu Christi fideliter custodirent
that the-churches of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ faithfully they-should-guard
atque ad conversionem paganorum accederent intrepidi.
and to the-conversion of-the-pagans should-advance fearless
Magnus eo tempore simul tenebat duo regna, Danorum
Magnus at-that time together held two kingdoms of-the-Danes
videlicet atque Nortmannorum, Iacobus adhuc in Suedia
namely and of-the-Northmen James still in Sweden

sceptrum habuit. Cuius auxilio Suein et Tuph ducis
the-scepter had by-whose aid Svein and Tuph of-the-duke
effultus, Magnum pepulit a Dania. Qui denuo bellum
supported Magnus drove from Denmark who again war
instaurans, obiit in navibus. Suein duo regna possedit,
renewing died in the-ships Svein two kingdoms possessed
classemque parasse dicitur, ut Angliam suo iuri
and-a-fleet to-have-prepared is-said that England to-his right
subiceret. Verum sanctissimus rex Edwardus, cum iusticia
he-might-subject but the-most-holy king Edward since with-justice
regnum gubernaret, tunc quoque pacem eligens, victori
the-kingdom he-governed then also peace choosing to-the-victor
obtulit tributum, statuens eum [ut supra dictum est] post
offered tribute establishing him as above said it-is after
se regni heredem. Cumque rex iuvenis Suein tria
himself of-the-kingdom heir and-when the-king young Svein three
pro libitu suo regna tenuerit, mox succedentibus prosperis,
at pleasure his kingdoms held soon following prosperities
oblitus est celestis regis et consanguineam a Suedia
forgotten he-has of-the-heavenly king and a-kinswoman from Sweden
duxit uxorem. Quod domno archiepiscopo valde displicuit,
led as-wife which to-the-lord archbishop greatly displeased
furentemque regem, missis legatis ad eum, de scelere terribiliter
and-the-raging king sent envoys to him for the-crime terribly
increpuit, postremo, nisi resipuerit, excommunicationis
he-rebuked finally unless he-came-to-his-senses of-excommunication
gladio feriendum esse [minatus est]. Tunc ille conversus
with-the-sword to-be-struck to-be threatened he-has then he turned
in furorem, minabatur omnem Hammaburgensem parrochiam
into fury threatened the-whole Hamburg diocese
vastare et exscindere. Ad quas minas imperterritus noster
to-lay-waste and to-destroy at which threats undaunted our

archiepiscopus arguens et obsecrans perstitit immobilis,
archbishop reproving and beseeching stood-firm immovable
donec tandem flexus Danorum tyrannus per litteras
until at-last bent of-the-Danes the-tyrant through the-letters
papae, libellum repudii dedit consobrinae. Nec tamen rex
of-the-pope a-bill of-divorce gave to-his-cousin nor yet the-king
sacerdotum admonitionibus aurem praebuit, sed mox ut
of-the-priests to-the-admonitions his-ear offered but soon as
consobrinam a se dimisit, alias itemque alias uxores et
his-cousin from himself he-dismissed other and-likewise other wives and
concubinas assumpsit, et suscitavit ei Dominus inimicos
concubines he-took and raised to-him the-Lord enemies
in circuitu multos, sicut Salemoni fecit proprios servos.
in the-circuit many as for-Solomon he-did his-own servants

Liber III, §§ 12–14

12–14 · HARALD AND THE SWEDISH MISSION

Harald, Saint Olaf's brother, returned from Constantinople, took Norway from Svein as a fief, and rebelled against him. The sons of Godwin seized power in England. In Sweden Emund drove out Adalbert's envoys in favor of the vagrant bishop Osmund; Stenkil escorted them with gifts to Queen Gunnhild, who received them and sent gifts to the archbishop.

Haroldus quidam, frater Olaph regis et martyris, vivente
Harald a-certain brother of-Olaf the-king and martyr living
adhuc germano patriam egressus est. Constantinopolim exul
still his-brother the-fatherland left has to-Constantinople an-exile
abiit, ubi miles imperatoris effectus, multa praelia contra
went where a-soldier of-the-emperor made many battles against
Sarracenos in mari et Scitas in terra gessit, fortitudine
the-Saracens at sea and the-Scythians on land he-waged for-bravery

clarus et divitiis auctus vehementer. Is vero, defuncto fratre,
famous and in-riches increased vehemently he indeed dead his-brother
cum in patriam revocatus fuerit, Suein consanguineum
when into the-fatherland recalled he-had-been Svein his-kinsman
regnantem repperit. Cuius, ut dicitur, se manibus tradens,
reigning found into-whose as is-said himself hands handing
sacramentum fidelitatis exhibuit victori, et patrium regnum
the-oath of-fealty showed to-the-victor and the-paternal kingdom
pro ducatu accepit in beneficium. Sed mox ut ad suos
as a-duchy received in benefice but soon as to his-own
venit et Nortmannos sibi fideles esse persensit, facile
he-came and the-Northmen to-himself faithful to-be perceived easily
ad rebellandum persuasus, omnia Danorum maritima ferro
to rebelling persuaded all of-the-Danes the-coasts with-iron
vastavit et igne. Et tunc Arhusin ecclesia incensa ac Sliaswig
laid-waste and fire and then of-Aarhus the-church burned and Schleswig
depraedata est. Suein rex terga vertit. Inter Haroldum
plundered was Svein the-king his-back turned between Harald
et Suein praelium fuit omnibus diebus vitae eorum.
and Svein battle was in-all the-days of-life their
Simul eo tempore separabant se Angli a regno
together at-that time separated themselves the-English from the-kingdom
Danorum, filiis Gudwini rebellionis auctoribus, quos amitae
of-the-Danes the-sons of-Godwin of-the-rebellion the-authors whom of-the-aunt
regis Danorum filios esse diximus, et quorum sororem
of-the-king of-the-Danes the-sons to-be we-have-said and whose sister
Eduardus rex duxit uxorem. Hii namque, facta conspiratione,
Edward the-king led as-wife these for made a-conspiracy
fratres Suein regis, qui in Anglia duces erant, alterum
the-brothers of-Svein the-king who in England dukes were the-one
Bern statim obtruncant, alterum Osbern cum suis omnibus
Björn at-once cut-down the-other Osbern with his all

eiecerunt a patria. Et tenuerunt Angliam in ditione sua,
they-cast from the-fatherland and they-held England in power their
Eduardo tantum vita et inani regis nomine contento.
Edward only with-life and the-empty of-king name content
Cum haec ibi gesta essent, christianissimus rex Sueonum
when these-things there done had-been the-most-Christian king of-the-Swedes
Iacobus migravit e saeculo, et successit ei frater eius
James departed from the-world and succeeded him brother his
Emund [Gamul] pessimus. Nam iste a concubina Olaph
Emund Gamul most-wicked for he of a-concubine of-Olaf
natus erat, et cum baptizatus esset, non multum de nostra
born was and though baptized he-was not much about our
religione curavit, habuitque secum quendam episcopum nomine
religion cared and-he-had with-him a-certain bishop by-name
Osmund, acephalum, quem dudum Sigafridus, Nortmannorum
Osmund headless whom long-ago Sigfrid of-the-Northmen
episcopus, Bremae scolis docendum commendavit. Verum is
bishop at-Bremen to-the-schools to-be-taught entrusted but he
postea beneficiorum oblitus, pro ordinatione Romam accessit,
afterward of-benefits forgetful for ordination to-Rome went
indeque repulsus, per multa loca circuivit erroneus, et sic
and-thence repulsed through many places wandered erring and so
demum ordinari meruit a quodam Polaniae archiepiscopo.
at-last to-be-ordained merited by a-certain of-Poland archbishop
Tunc veniens in Suediam, iactavit se a papa consecratum
then coming into Sweden boasted himself by the-pope consecrated
in illas partes archiepiscopum. Sed cum noster archiepiscopus
for those parts archbishop but when our archbishop
legatos suos ad Gamulan regem dirigeret, invenerunt ibi
envoys his to Gamul the-king directed they-found there
eundem girovagum Osmund archiepiscopali more crucem
the-same vagabond Osmund in-archiepiscopal manner a-cross

prae se ferentem. Audierunt etiam, quod barbaros adhuc
before himself carrying they-heard also that the-barbarians still
neophitos non sana fidei nostrae doctrina corruperit.
neophytes with-not sound of-faith our doctrine he-had-corrupted
Quorum ille praesentia territus, solitis populum
at-whose he presence terrified with-his-accustomed the-people
regemque impulit dolis, ut legati repellerentur, quasi non
and-the-king he-drove tricks that the-envoys should-be-repelled as-if not
habentes sygillum apostolici. Et illi quidem ibant gaudentes
having the-seal of-the-apostolic and they indeed went rejoicing
a conspectu concilii, quoniam digni habiti sunt pro
from the-sight of-the-council since worthy held they-were for
nomine Iesu contumeliam pati. Erant autem legati fratres
the-name of-Jesus insult to-suffer were moreover the-envoys brothers
Bremensis ecclesiae, quorum potissimus fuit Adalwardus senior,
of-the-Bremen church of-whom the-chief was Adalward the-elder
olim nostri claustri decanus, verum tunc Sueonum genti
once of-our cloister dean but then of-the-Swedes for-the-nation
ordinatus episcopus. De cuius viri virtutibus multa
ordained bishop about whose of-man virtues many-things
possent dici, nisi properaremus ad alia. Legatos igitur
could to-be-said unless we-were-hastening to other-things the-envoys therefore
tali modo a Sueonibus repulsos fertur quidam, nepos
in-such manner by the-Swedes repulsed it-is-reported a-certain nephew
an privignus regis ignoro, prosecutus esse, cum lacrimis
or stepson of-the-king I-know-not followed to-have with tears
suppliciter se commendans orationibus eorum. Nomen ei
suppliantly himself commending to-the-prayers their the-name to-him
Stinkil erat. Is solus misericordia motus super fratres, optulit
Stenkil was he alone by-mercy moved over the-brothers offered
eis munera, transmisitque eos per montana Suedorum
to-them gifts and-sent-across them through the-mountains of-the-Swedes

salvos usque ad sanctissimam Gunhild [vel Giuthe] reginam,
safe all-the-way to the-most-holy Gunnhild or Gyda the-queen
quae a rege Danorum pro consanguinitate separata, in
who from the-king of-the-Danes for kinship separated on
praediis suis trans Daniam commorata est, hospitalitati
estates her beyond Denmark stayed has for-hospitality
elemosinisque vacans et ceteris operibus sanctitatis
and-alms devoting-herself and on-the-other works of-holiness
insistens. Ea legatos cum ingenti honore quasi a Deo
intent she the-envoys with huge honor as-if by God
missos recipiens, magna per eos xenia misit archiepiscopo.
sent receiving great through them gifts sent to-the-archbishop

Liber III, §§ 15–17

15–17 · ADALWARD RECALLED; HARALD; PEACE WITH SVEIN

Divine vengeance fell on the Swedes until they asked for their bishop back, and Stenkil became king. Harald of Norway plundered the offerings at his brother's tomb and defied the archbishop's legates. Adalbert reconciled himself with the Danish king Svein at Schleswig in an eight-day feast and made a lasting treaty between the king and the emperor.

Interea Sueones, qui episcopum suum repulerunt, divina ultio
meanwhile the-Swedes who bishop their had-repelled the-divine vengeance
secuta est. Et primo quidem filius regis nomine Anund,
followed has and first indeed the-son of-the-king by-name Anund
a patre missus ad dilatandum imperium, cum in patriam
by his-father sent for extending the-empire when into the-fatherland
feminarum pervenisset, quas nos arbitramur Amazonas esse,
of-the-women he-had-come whom we judge Amazons to-be
veneno, quod illae fontibus immiscuerunt, tam ipse quam
by-the-poison which they into-the-springs mixed both he and

exercitus eius perierunt. Deinde cum aliis cladibus tanta
army his perished then with other disasters so-great
siccitas et frugum sterilitas Sueones afflixit, ut, missis ad
a-drought and of-crops barrenness the-Swedes afflicted that sent to
archiepiscopum legatis, episcopum suum reposcerent, cum
the-archbishop envoys bishop their they-demanded-back with
satisfactione fidem gentis pollicentes. Gavisus igitur
amends the-faith of-the-nation promising having-rejoiced therefore
pontifex, petenti gregi volentem dedit pastorem. Qui deinde
the-pontiff to-the-asking flock the-willing gave shepherd who then
perveniens in Sueoniam, tanta omnium alacritate suscipi
arriving in Sweden with-so-great of-all eagerness to-be-received
meruit, ut gentem Wirmilanorum integram Christo lucratus,
merited that the-nation of-the-Värmlanders whole for-Christ having-gained
etiam miracula virtutum in populo fecisse dicatur.
even miracles of-powers among the-people to-have-done is-said
Eodem tempore mortuus est rex Sueonum Emund, post
at-the-same time died has the-king of-the-Swedes Emund after
quem levatur in regnum nepos eius Stinkel, de quo supra
whom is-raised into the-kingdom the-nephew his Stenkil of whom above
diximus. Qui fidelis erat domino Iesu Christo, et de
we-have-spoken who faithful was to-the-Lord Jesus Christ and about
religione eius testimonium perhibebant omnes fratres nostri,
the-religion his testimony bore all brothers our
qui eas partes adierant. Haec de Sueonibus suo tempore
who those parts had-approached these-things about the-Swedes in-his time
gesta domnus Adalbertus archiepiscopus amplifico sermone, ut
done lord Adalbert the-archbishop in-ample speech as
solebat, omnia describens, etiam visionem quandam episcopi
he-was-wont all-things describing even a-vision certain of-bishop

Adalwardi, qua monitus est, ut euangelizandi gratia
Adalward by-which warned he-was that of-evangelizing for-the-sake
pergere non tardaret, curavit adnectere.
to-go not he-should-delay took-care to-attach
In Nortmannia quoque res magnae gestae sunt illo
in Norway also things great done were at-that
tempore, quo rex Haraldus crudelitate sua omnes tyrannorum
time when king Harald by-cruelty his all of-tyrants
excessit furores. Multae ecclesiae per illum virum dirutae,
exceeded the-furies many churches through that man pulled-down
multi christiani ab illo per supplicia sunt necati. Erat
many Christians by him through tortures were killed he-was
vir potens et clarus victoriis, qui prius in Graecia et in
a-man powerful and famous for-victories who before in Greece and in
Scythiae regionibus multa contra barbaros praelia confecit.
of-Scythia the-regions many against the-barbarians battles accomplished
Postquam vero in patriam venit, nunquam quietus fuit
after indeed into the-fatherland he-came never quiet he-was
a bellis, fulmen septentrionis, fatale malum omnibus
from wars the-thunderbolt of-the-north a-fatal evil to-all
Danorum insulis. Ille vir omnes Sclavorum maritimas regiones
of-the-Danes the-islands that man all of-the-Slavs the-coastal regions
depraedavit; ille Orchadas insulas suae ditioni subiecit; ille
plundered he the-Orkney islands to-his power subjected he
cruentum imperium usque ad Island extendit. Itaque multis
a-bloody rule all-the-way to Iceland extended and-so over-many
imperans nationibus, propter avaritiam et crudelitatem suam
ruling nations because-of avarice and cruelty his
omnibus erat invisus. Serviebat etiam maleficis artibus,
to-all he-was hateful he-served also magic arts
non attendens miser, quod sanctissimus germanus eius talia
not attending wretch that the-most-holy brother his such

monstra eradicavit a regno, pro amplectenda norma
monsters rooted-out from the-kingdom for embracing the-norm
christianitatis certans usque ad sanguinem. Cuius egregia
of-Christianity striving all-the-way to blood whose outstanding
merita testantur haec miracula, quae cotidie fiunt ad
merits testify these miracles which daily are-done at
sepulcrum regis in civitate Trondemnis. Videbat haec ille
the-tomb of-the-king in the-city Trondheim saw these-things he
derelictus a Deo, nichilque compunctus, oblationes quoque
forsaken by God and-nothing pricked the-offerings also
ac tesauros, qui summa fidelium devotione collati sunt ad
and treasures which with-highest of-the-faithful devotion brought were to
tumulum fratris, ipse Haroldus unca manu corradens,
the-tomb of-his-brother himself Harald with-hooked hand scraping-together
militibus dispersit. Pro quibus causis archiepiscopus zelo
to-the-soldiers scattered for which causes the-archbishop with-zeal
Dei tactus, legatos suos direxit ad eundem regem,
for-God touched envoys his directed to the-same king
tyrannicas praesumptiones eius litteris increpans, spetialiter
the-tyrannical presumptions his by-letters rebuking especially
vero admonens de oblationibus, quas non liceret in
indeed admonishing about the-offerings which not it-was-lawful to
usum cedere laicorum, et de episcopis suis, quos in Gallia
use to-pass of-laymen and about the-bishops his whom in Gaul
vel in Anglia contra fas ordinare fecerat se contempto,
or in England against right to-ordain he-had-had himself scorned
per quem auctoritate sedis apostolicae deberent iuste
through whom by-the-authority of-the-apostolic see they-ought justly
ordinari. Ad haec mandata commotus ad iram tyrannus,
to-be-ordained at these commands moved to anger the-tyrant
legatos pontificis spretos abire praecepit, clamitans, se
the-envoys of-the-pontiff scorned to-go-away ordered shouting himself

nescire, quis sit archiepiscopus aut potens in Norvegia,
not-to-know who may-be archbishop or powerful in Norway
nisi solus Haroldus. Et alia plurima deinde fecit et dixit,
except alone Harald and other-things very-many then he-did and said
quae superbiae eius proximam intentabant ruinam. Nam et
which for-the-pride his the-nearest threatened ruin for also
papa Alexander, confestim missis ad eundem regem litteris,
pope Alexander forthwith sent to the-same king letters
praecepit, ut tam ipse quam episcopi sui vicario sedis
ordered that both he and bishops his to-the-vicar of-the-apostolic
apostolicae dignam subiectionis exhibeant reverentiam.
see a-worthy of-subjection should-show reverence
His apud Nortmanniam gestis, magnopere studuit
these-things in Norway done greatly strove
archiepiscopus, ut regi Danorum conciliaretur, quem prius
the-archbishop that to-the-king of-the-Danes he-might-be-reconciled whom before
offensum habuit in repudio consobrinae. Scivit enim, si talem
offended he-had in the-divorce of-his-cousin he-knew for if such
virum ad se colligeret, leviorem sibi ad cetera, quae
a-man to himself he-should-gather easier to-him to the-other-things which
in animo gessit, introitum fore. Mox igitur, mediante gratia
in mind he-bore the-entry would-be soon therefore mediating the-grace
largitatis, quam in omnes habuit, venit in Sliaswig, ubi facile
of-generosity which toward all he-had he-came to Schleswig where easily
notus et reconciliatus superbo regi, muneribus atque conviviis
known and reconciled with-the-proud king with-gifts and feasts
certavit archiepiscopalem potentiam regalibus anteferre diviciis.
he-strove the-archiepiscopal power to-the-royal to-prefer riches
Denique, sicut mos est inter barbaros, ad confirmandum
at-last as the-custom is among barbarians for confirming
pactum federis opulentum convivium habetur vicissim per
the-pact of-a-treaty a-rich feast is-held in-turn through

octo dies. De multis rebus ecclesiasticis ibi disponitur, de
eight days about many matters ecclesiastical there it-is-arranged about
pace christianorum, de conversione paganorum ibi consulitur.
the-peace of-the-Christians about the-conversion of-the-pagans there it-is-consulted
Ita pontifex cum gaudio domum reversus, persuasit caesari,
so the-pontiff with joy home returned persuaded the-caesar
ut evocatus rex Danorum in Saxoniam, uterque alteri
that summoned the-king of-the-Danes into Saxony each to-the-other
perpetuam iuraret amicitiam. Cuius federis beneficio multum
perpetual should-swear friendship of-which treaty by-the-benefit much
lucri suscepit nostra ecclesia, et legatio borealium nationum,
gain received our church and the-mission of-the-northern nations
cooperante Suein rege, prosperis semper aucta est incrementis.
working-with Svein the-king by-prosperous always increased was increases

Liber III, §§ 18–21

18–21 · GOTTSCHALK AND THE SLAVIC CHURCH

Gottschalk, married to a Danish princess, ruled the Slavs as a king and spread the faith, even preaching in Slavic; monasteries rose in the Slavic towns. Adalbert sent bishops to Oldenburg, Mecklenburg, and Ratzeburg. Svein heeded him in all but gluttony and women. Called in against the victorious Circipani, Gottschalk, Bernard, and Svein took fifteen thousand talents, with no word of conversion.

Trans Albiam vero et in Sclavania res nostrae adhuc
across the-Elbe indeed and in Slavia affairs our still
magna gerebantur prosperitate. Godescalcus enim, de quo
with-great were-carried-on prosperity Gottschalk for of whom
supra dictum est, vir prudentia et fortitudine praedicandus,
above said it-was a-man for-prudence and bravery to-be-proclaimed
accepta in uxorem filia regis Danorum, Sclavos ita
received as wife the-daughter of-the-king of-the-Danes the-Slavs so

perdomuit, ut eum quasi regem timerent, tributa offerentes
subdued that him as-if a-king they-feared tributes offering
et pacem cum subiectione petentes. Qua temporis occasione
and peace with subjection seeking by-which of-time occasion
nostra Hammaburg pacem habuit et Sclavania sacerdotibus
our Hamburg peace had and Slavia with-priests
ecclesiisque plena fuit. Godescalcus igitur, vir religiosus
and-churches full was Gottschalk therefore a-man religious
ac timens Deum, archiepiscopo etiam familiaris, Hammaburg
and fearing God to-the-archbishop also familiar Hamburg
ut matrem colebat. Ad quam solvendorum causa votorum
as a-mother cherished to which of-paying for-the-sake vows
solitus erat frequenter venire. In Sclavania citeriori nemo
accustomed he-was often to-come in Slavia hither no-one
unquam surrexit potentior et tam fervidus christianae
ever arose more-powerful and so fervent of-the-Christian
religionis propagator. Etenim si vita ei longior concederetur,
religion a-propagator for if life to-him longer were-granted
omnes paganos ad christianitatem cogere disposuit, cum fere
all the-pagans to Christianity to-force he-planned since almost
terciam partem converteret eorum, qui prius sub avo
a-third part he-converted of-those who before under grandfather
eius [Mistiwoi] relapsi sunt ad paganitatem.
his Mistivoi relapsed had to paganism
Igitur omnes populi Sclavorum, qui ad Hammaburgensem
therefore all the-peoples of-the-Slavs who to the-Hamburg
respiciunt dyocesim, sub illo principe christianam fidem
look diocese under that prince the-Christian faith
coluerunt devote, hoc est Waigri et Obodriti vel Reregi
practiced devoutly that is the-Wagrians and Obodrites or Reregi
vel Polabingi, item Linoges, Warnabi, Chizzini et Circipani,
or Polabians likewise the-Linones Warnabi Chizzini and Circipani

usque ad Panem fluvium, quem nostrae privilegia ecclesiae
all-the-way to the-Peene river which our of-the-church privileges
vocant Penem. Provinciae iam plenae erant ecclesiis, ecclesiae
call Pene the-provinces already full were of-churches the-churches
autem sacerdotibus; sacerdotes vero libere agebant in his
moreover of-priests the-priests indeed freely acted in those-things
quae ad Deum pertinent. Quorum mediastinus princeps
which to God pertain of-whom the-mediator prince
Gotescalcus dicitur tanto religionis arsisse studio,
Gottschalk is-said with-so-much of-religion to-have-burned zeal
ut oblitus ordinis sui, frequenter in ecclesia sermonem
that forgetful of-rank his often in the-church a-sermon
exhortacionis ad populum fecerit, ea, quae mystice ab
of-exhortation to the-people he-made those-things which mystically by
episcopis dicebantur vel presbyteris, ipse cupiens Sclavanicis
the-bishops were-said or by-the-presbyters himself desiring in-Slavic
verbis reddere planiora. Infinitus erat numerus eorum qui cotidie
words to-render plainer countless was the-number of-those who daily
convertebantur, adeo ut pro sacerdotibus in totas mitteretur
were-converted so-much that for priests into whole was-sent
provincias. Tunc etiam per singulas urbes coenobia fiebant
provinces then also through the-several cities monasteries were-made
sanctorum virorum canonice viventium, item monachorum atque
of-holy men canonically living likewise of-monks and
sanctimonialium, sicut testantur hii qui in Leubice, Aldinburg,
nuns as testify those who in Lübeck Oldenburg
Lontio, Razzispurg et in aliis civitatibus singulas viderunt.
Lenzen Ratzeburg and in other cities each have-seen
In Magnopoli vero, quae est civitas inclita Obodritorum,
in Mecklenburg indeed which is the-city renowned of-the-Obodrites
tres fuisse congregationes Deo servientium, referunt.
three to-have-been congregations for-God serving they-report

Gratulabatur archiepiscopus de novella plantatione ecclesiarum,
rejoiced the-archbishop at the-new planting of-churches
misitque de suis episcopis et presbyteris viros ad principem
and-he-sent from his bishops and presbyters men to the-prince
sapientes, qui rudes in christianitate populos confortarent.
wise who the-raw in Christianity peoples should-strengthen
Ordinavit autem in Aldinburg, defuncto Abhelino, monachum
he-ordained moreover in Oldenburg dead Abhelin the-monk
Ezzonem; Iohannem Scotum constituit in Magnopolim; in
Ezzo John the-Scot he-established in Mecklenburg in
Razzisburg esse disposuit Aristonem quendam ab Iherosolimis
Ratzeburg to-be he-arranged Aristo a-certain from Jerusalem
venientem, et alios alibi. Praeterea cum ipse veniret in
coming and others elsewhere moreover when he came into
Hammaburg, eundem Gotescalcum principem invitavit ad
Hamburg the-same Gottschalk prince he-invited to
colloquium, magnopere illum exhortans, ut inceptum pro
a-conference greatly him exhorting that the-begun for
Christo laborem constanter ad finem perducat, victoriam illi
Christ labor constantly to the-end he-should-lead victory to-him
pollicens affuturam in omnibus, postremo, si quid patiatur
promising to-be-at-hand in all-things lastly if anything he-should-suffer
adversitatis pro nomine Christi, beatum fore; multa illi de
of-adversity for the-name of-Christ blessed to-be many for-him for
conversione paganorum in coelo reposita praemia, multas coronas
the-conversion of-the-pagans in heaven laid-up rewards many crowns
de singulorum salute venturas. Eisdem verbis et ad
from of-each the-salvation to-come with-the-same words and to
idem studium hortabatur metropolitanus regem Danorum, qui
the-same zeal exhorted the-metropolitan the-king of-the-Danes who
ad eum iuxta Egdorem fluvium consistentem multociens venit,
to him next-to the-Eider river staying many-times came

omnia quae de scripturis ab illo proferebantur subtiliter notans
all-things which from the-scriptures by him were-brought-forth subtly noting
memoriterque retinens, excepto quod de gula et mulieribus,
and-by-memory retaining except that about gluttony and women
quae vitia naturalia sunt illis gentibus, persuaderi non potuit;
which vices natural are to-those nations to-be-persuaded not he-could
ad cetera omnia pontifici rex fuit obediens et moriger.
in the-other all-things to-the-pontiff the-king was obedient and compliant
Per idem tempus in Sclavania res maximae gestae sunt,
through the-same time in Slavia things very-great done were
quae posteris ad gloriam Dei non sunt reticendae, quoniam
which to-posterity for the-glory of-God not are to-be-kept-silent since
'Deus ultionum libere egit, reddens retributionem superbis'.
the-God of-vengeances freely acted rendering retribution to-the-proud
Itaque cum multi sint Winulorum populi fortitudine celebres,
and-so though many be of-the-Winuli peoples for-bravery famous
soli quatuor sunt, qui ab illis Wilzi, a nobis dicuntur Leutici,
alone four are who by them Wilzi by us are-called Leutici
inter quos de nobilitate potentiaque contenditur. Hii sunt
among whom about nobility and-power it-is-contended these are
scilicet Chizzini et Circipani, qui habitant citra Panim
namely the-Chizzini and Circipani who dwell on-this-side-of the-Peene
fluvium, Tholosantes et Retheri, qui ultra Panim degunt.
river the-Tholosantes and Retharii who beyond the-Peene live
Cumque lis perveniret ad bellum, Tholosantes et Rheteri,
and-when the-quarrel came to war the-Tholosantes and Retharii
quamvis auxilio Chizzinos haberent, nichilominus victi sunt
although as-aid the-Chizzini they-had nonetheless conquered were
a Circipanis. Iterum instauratum est praelium et contriti
by the-Circipani again renewed was the-battle and crushed
sunt Rederi; temptatum est tertio, et Circipani victores
were the-Retharii tried it-was a-third-time and the-Circipani victors

abierunt. Tunc illi qui victi sunt principem Godescalcum
went-away then those who conquered were prince Gottschalk
ducemque Bernardum et regem Danorum accitos in auxilium
and-duke Bernard and the-king of-the-Danes summoned into aid
super hostes duxerunt, ingentemque trium regum exercitum
against the-enemies led and-the-huge of-three kings army
suis nutrierunt stipendiis per septem ebdomadas,
with-their nourished stipends through seven weeks
Circipanis viriliter repugnantibus. Multa milia paganorum
the-Circipani manfully resisting many thousands of-pagans
hinc inde prostrati sunt, plures abducti in captivitatem.
hence thence laid-low were very-many led-away into captivity
Tandem Circipani 15 milia talenta regibus offerentes, pacem
at-last the-Circipani 15 thousand talents to-the-kings offering peace
adepti sunt. Nostri cum triumpho redierunt, de christianitate
obtained have ours with triumph returned about Christianity
nullus sermo, victores tantum praedae intenti. Haec est
no word victors only on-plunder intent this is
virtus Circipanorum, qui pertinent ad Hammaburgensem
the-valor of-the-Circipani who belong to the-Hamburg
episcopatum. Quidam nobilis homo de Nordalbingis narravit
bishopric a-certain noble man of the-Nordalbingians told
mihi, haec et alia veraciter ita gesta esse.
me these and other-things truly so done to-have-been

Liber III, §§ 22–25

22–25 · THE AVARICE OF THE SAXONS; ADALBERT'S FAME

Svein told Adam that the Slavs would have been converted long ago but for Saxon greed for tribute. Adalbert, intent on his office, made Bremen famous as a second Rome, and envoys came from Iceland, Greenland, and the Orkneys. On the death of Wal, bishop of the Danes, Svein divided his diocese into four with the archbishop's authority, and Adalbert built a castle on the Süllberg, which became a den of robbers and was destroyed.

Audivi etiam, cum veracissimus rex Danorum sermocinando
I-heard also when the-most-truthful king of-the-Danes in-conversing
eadem replicaret, populos Sclavorum iam dudum procul
the-same-things repeated the-peoples of-the-Slavs long since beyond
dubio facile converti posse ad christianitatem, nisi
doubt easily to-be-converted to-be-able to Christianity unless
obstitisset avaricia Saxonum: 'Quibus', inquit, 'mens
had-stood-in-the-way the-avarice of-the-Saxons whose he-says mind
pronior est ad pensionem vectigalium, quam ad conversionem
more-inclined is to the-collection of-taxes than to the-conversion
gentilium'. Nec attendunt miseri, quam magnum periculum
of-the-gentiles nor attend the-wretches how great the-peril
suae cupiditatis luant, qui christianitatem in Sclavania
of-their greed they-pay-for who Christianity in Slavia
primo per avariciam turbabant, deinde per crudelitatem
first through avarice disturbed then through cruelty
subiectos ad rebellandum coegerunt, et nunc salutem eorum
the-subjects to rebelling forced and now the-salvation of-those
qui vellent credere, pecuniam solam exigendo, contempnunt.
who wished to-believe money alone by-demanding despise
Ergo iusto Dei iudicio videmus eos praevalere super
therefore by-the-just of-God judgment we-see them to-prevail over

nos, qui permissu Dei ad hoc indurati sunt, ut per
us who by-the-permission of-God for this hardened are that through
illos nostra flagelletur iniquitas. Nam revera, sicut peccantes
them our may-be-scourged iniquity for in-truth as sinning
superari videmur ab hostibus, ita conversi victores hostium
to-be-overcome we-seem by enemies so converted victors of-the-enemies
erimus; a quibus, si tantum fidem posceremus, et illi
we-shall-be from whom if only faith we-asked both they
iam salvi essent et nos certe essemus in pace.
already saved would-be and we surely would-be in peace
Haec dum forinsecus in legatione gentium ecclesiae nostrae
these-things while abroad in the-mission of-the-nations of-church our
ministerio gererentur, domnus metropolitanus Adalbertus,
by-the-ministry were-done lord metropolitan Adalbert
adhuc bonis intentus studiis, vigilanter et magnopere providit,
still to-good intent pursuits watchfully and greatly provided
ne sua quapiam negligentia pastorale officium minus habere
lest by-his any negligence the-pastoral office less to-have
videretur, in ea scilicet, qua gloriatur apostolus, sollicitudine
he-might-seem in that namely which glories the-apostle the-care
omnium ecclesiarum. Itaque domi forisque clarus, taliter se
of-all churches and-so at-home and-abroad famous so himself
gessit, ut par divitum maiorque magnatium, nichilominus
he-bore that equal of-the-rich and-greater than-the-magnates nonetheless
pater orphanorum iudexque viduarum esse certaret, talem
father of-orphans and-judge of-widows to-be he-strove such
curam habens omnium, ut necessitatibus etiam minimorum
care having of-all that to-the-needs even of-the-least
sollertissimus provisor adesset. Cumque terrenis gravatus
a-most-skillful provider he-was-present and-when by-earthly burdened
negotiis et ad spiritalia mox languescere cogeretur, in sola
affairs and toward spiritual-things soon to-grow-faint he-was-forced in the-sole

gentium legatione permansit integer officii et sine querela et
of-the-nations mission he-remained intact of-office and without complaint and
talis qualem et tempora et mores hominum mallent habere.
such as both the-times and the-morals of-men would-prefer to-have
Ita affabilis, ita largus, ita hospitalis, ita cupidus divinae pariter
so affable so generous so hospitable so desirous of-divine equally
et humanae gloriae, ut parvula Brema, ex illius virtute
and human glory that little Bremen from his virtue
instar Romae divulgata, ab omnibus terrarum partibus
in-the-likeness of-Rome spread-abroad from all of-the-lands parts
devote peteretur, maxime ab omnibus aquilonis populis. Inter
devoutly was-sought most-of-all by all of-the-north peoples among
quos extremi venerant Islani, Gronlani et Orchadum legati,
whom the-farthest had-come Icelanders Greenlanders and of-the-Orkneys envoys
petentes, ut praedicatores illuc dirigeret; quod et fecit.
asking that preachers thither he-should-direct which also he-did
In diebus illis Wal, Danorum episcopus, migravit e
in days those Wal of-the-Danes bishop departed from
seculo. Cuius diocesim rex Suein in quatuor episcopatus
the-world whose diocese king Svein into four bishoprics
distribuens, praebente suam auctoritatem metropolitano,
distributing offering his authority the-metropolitan
singulis suos intronizavit episcopos. Tunc etiam pontifex
to-each his enthroned bishops then also pontiff
noster in Suigiam vel Norvegiam et in insulas maris ad
our into Sweden or Norway and into the-islands of-the-sea for
messem dominicam operarios misit. De quorum ordinatione
the-harvest of-the-Lord's workers sent about whose ordination
singulorum habundantius dicetur in fine.
of-each more-abundantly it-shall-be-said at the-end

Tocius itaque parrochiae suae diligentissimam adhibens
of-the-whole and-so diocese his the-most-diligent applying
provisionem, metropolem Hammaburg in principio leticiae
provision the-metropolis Hamburg at the-head of-joy
posuit archiepiscopus, fecundissimam gentium matrem illam
set the-archbishop the-most-fruitful of-the-nations mother it
appellans omnique devotionis officio venerandam, protestatus,
calling and-with-every of-devotion office to-be-venerated having-protested
ei tanto maiorem offerri debere consolationem, quanto
to-it by-so-much greater to-be-offered ought consolation by-how-much
maiori plaga et propioribus insidiis et tam longiturna
by-greater blow and nearer ambushes and so long-lasting
paganorum infestatione cribraretur. Ergo accepta pace
of-the-pagans harassment it-was-sifted therefore received the-peace
temporum, dum saepe meditatus est Hammaburgensem
of-the-times while often pondered he-has the-Hamburg
munire simulque ornare toparchiam, quoddam utile opus
to-fortify and-at-once to-adorn district a-certain useful work
inchoavit contra incursus barbaricos, in quo et populus et
he-began against the-incursions barbarian in which both the-people and
ecclesia Nordalbingorum perhenne haberent praesidium. Igitur
the-church of-the-Nordalbingians a-perennial should-have defense therefore
cum provincia Sturmariorum, in qua Hammaburg sita est,
since the-province of-the-Stormarians in which Hamburg situated is
tota in planitiem campi descendat, ex ea parte, qua Sclavos
wholly into the-plain of-the-field descends from that side where the-Slavs
attingit, neque mons neque flumen est in medio, quod
it-touches neither mountain nor river is in the-middle which
incolis munimentum praestet, absque silvis passim
to-the-inhabitants a-bulwark may-afford except the-woods here-and-there
occurrentibus, quarum latebris protecti hostes incertis
occurring by-whose hiding-places protected the-enemies in-uncertain

aliquando excursibus repentini superveniunt nostrosque securos
sometimes raids sudden come-upon and-ours secure
et nil minus cogitantes vel perimunt vel, quod eis morte
and nothing less thinking either they-kill or what to-them than-death
gravius est, captivos abducunt. Solus mons in ea regione
heavier is as-captives lead-away alone a-mountain in that region
prominet iuxta Albiam, longo in occasum dorso protentus,
juts next-to the-Elbe long into the-west in-ridge stretched
quem incolae Sollonberg vocant. Eum pontifex oportunum
which the-inhabitants Süllberg call it the-pontiff fitting
arbitrans, in quo firmaretur castellum, quod genti
judging on which might-be-fortified a-castle which for-the-nation
praesidio foret, statim silvam, quae montis verticem
as-defense should-be at-once the-wood which of-the-mountain the-top
obtexit, exscindi mundarique locum praecepit. Itaque multis
covered to-be-cut-out and-to-be-cleared the-place he-ordered and-so with-many
inpensis multoque sudore hominum voti compos effectus,
expenses and-much sweat of-men of-his-wish possessed made
montem asperum fecit habitabilem. Ubi praeposituram
the-mountain rough he-made habitable where a-provostship
constituens, disposuit congregationem facere Deo servientium,
establishing he-arranged a-congregation to-make for-God serving
quae mox conversa est in turmam latronum. Ex illo enim
which soon turned was into a-troop of-robbers from that for
castro nostri quidam populares in circuitu, quos ad tuendum
castle ours certain the-common-folk in the-circuit whom for protecting
positi sunt, depraedari et persequi coeperunt. Ideoque
placed they-were to-plunder and to-pursue began and-therefore
locus ille postea tumultu comprovintialium destructus est,
place that afterward by-the-tumult of-the-fellow-provincials destroyed was
populus vero Nordalbingorum excommunicatus. Compertum
the-people indeed of-the-Nordalbingians excommunicated found-out

est nobis in gratiam ducis factum hoc, qui more solito
it-is by-us into the-favor of-the-duke done this who in-manner usual
felicibus ecclesiae actibus invidebat.
the-happy of-the-church acts envied

Liber III, §§ 26–29

26–29 · HAMBURG, GOSLAR, AND THE SYNOD OF MAINZ

Duke Bernard built a new fort at Hamburg, and Adalbert celebrated the feasts there with Greek and Roman pomp. Henry built Goslar and gave Adalbert one of its two congregations to rule, and hopes of counties and abbeys made him think all was possible. The synod of Mainz under Pope Leo condemned simony and priests' marriages, and Adalbert put the priests' women outside the city.

Nam et dux eo tempore, relicto veteri castello
for also the-duke at-that time left the-old castle
Hammaburg, novum quoddam praesidium sibi suisque
of-Hamburg a-new certain stronghold for-himself and-his-own
fundavit infra Albiam flumen et rivum qui Alstra vocatur. Ita
founded between the-Elbe river and the-brook which Alster is-called so
nimirum cordibus vel mansionibus ab invicem divisis, dux
surely in-hearts or dwellings from each-other divided the-duke
novum, archiepiscopus vetus coluit oppidum. Diligebat sane
the-new the-archbishop the-old inhabited town loved truly
pontifex eum locum sicut omnes praedecessores sui, eo quod
the-pontiff that place as all predecessors his for-this that
metropolis sedes fuerit omnium septentrionalium nationum
of-the-metropolis the-seat it-had-been of-all northern nations
et caput suae parrochiae. Ideoque dum adhuc pax fuit trans
and the-head of-his diocese and-therefore while still peace was across
Albiam, omnes fere sollempnitates paschae ac pentecostes
the-Elbe all almost the-solemnities of-Easter and of-Pentecost

itemque Dei matris ibi celebrare voluit, collecto ex
and-likewise of-God of-the-mother there to-celebrate he-wished gathered from
singulis congregationibus maximo cleri numero, praecipue his,
each congregation a-very-great of-clergy number chiefly those
qui vocalitate sua populos mulcere poterant. Et tunc plenario
who by-voice their the-peoples to-soothe could and then in-full
gaudens ordine ministrorum, omnia divinae servitutis officia
rejoicing order of-ministers all of-divine service the-offices
cum magna iussit reverentia compleri et gloria etiam
with great he-ordered reverence to-be-completed and glory also
exteriori. Cui nimirum gloriae tantum ipse indulsit, ut iam
outward to-which surely glory so-much he indulged that already
non Latino more vellet ecclesiastica obire mysteria, sed
not in-Latin manner he-wished the-ecclesiastical to-perform mysteries but
nescio qua Romanorum sive Graecorum consuetudine fultus,
I-know-not by-what of-the-Romans or of-the-Greeks custom supported
per tres missas, ubi astitit, duodecim modulari officia
through three masses where he-stood-by twelve to-be-sung offices
praecepit; omnia magna quaerens, omnia mirabilia, omnia
ordered all-things great seeking all-things marvelous all-things
gloriosa in divinis et humanis, et propterea dicitur fumo
glorious in divine and human-things and therefore he-is-said by-the-smoke
delectatus aromatum et fulguratione luminum et tonitruis
delighted of-spices and by-the-flashing of-lights and by-the-thunders
alte boantium vocum. Quae omnia traxit a lectione Veteris
of-loudly booming voices which all he-drew from the-reading of-the-Old
Testamenti, ubi maiestas Domini apparuit in monte Synai. Et
Testament where the-majesty of-the-Lord appeared on mount Sinai and
alia multa facere solebat, rara modernis et ignorantibus;
other many-things to-do he-was-wont rare to-the-moderns and the-ignorant
cum tamen sine auctoritate scripturarum ipse nil fecerit,
though yet without the-authority of-the-scriptures he nothing did

iam tunc scilicet meditatus ecclesiam divitiis et honore
already then namely having-meditated the-church in-riches and honor
ceteris anteferre, si papam et regem suae haberet voluntati
to-the-others to-prefer if the-pope and the-king to-his he-had will
morigeros. Eos igitur complacare properabat omnibus modis.
compliant them therefore to-win-over he-hastened in-all ways
Ea tempestate caesar Heinricus, ingentibus regni divitiis
at-that season caesar Henry the-huge of-the-kingdom riches
utens, in Saxonia Goslariam fundavit, quam de parvo, ut
using in Saxony Goslar founded which from a-small as
aiunt, molendino vel tugurio formans venatorio, in tam
they-say mill or hut forming of-hunting into so
magnam, sicut nunc videri potest, civitatem bono auspicio
great as now to-be-seen can a-city with-good omen
et celeriter perduxit. In qua etiam sibi construens
and swiftly led in which also for-himself building
palatium, duas omnipotenti Deo congregationes instituit;
a-palace two for-almighty God congregations he-established
unam ex his nostro donans regendam tenendamque pontifici,
one of these to-our giving to-be-ruled and-to-be-held pontiff
eo quod illi individuus comes vel cooperator in omnibus
for-this that to-him an-inseparable companion or co-worker in all-things
existeret. Tunc etiam sibi data est spes acquirendi vel
he-proved then also to-him given was the-hope of-acquiring or
accipiendi comitatus vel abbatias vel praedia, quae magno
of-receiving counties or abbeys or estates which at-great
deinceps periculo ecclesiae mercati sumus, ut puta coenobia
thereafter at-peril of-the-church bought we-have as suppose the-monasteries
Lauressae vel Corbeiae, comitatus autem Bernardi et Ekibrecti,
of-Lorsch or Corvey the-counties moreover of-Bernard and of-Ekbert
praedia vero Sincicum, Plisna, Groningon, Dispargum et
the-estates indeed Sinzig Plisna Groningen Duisburg and

Lismona; quibus iam dubia re possessis, arbitrabatur
Lesum which already in-doubtful matter possessed thought
se metropolitanus, sicut bene dicitur de Xerse, aut per
himself the-metropolitan as well is-said of Xerxes either through
mare ambulaturum aut per terram navigaturum, postremo
the-sea about-to-walk or through the-land about-to-sail finally
quae in animo habuit facile omnia perfecturum.
the-things-which in mind he-had easily all about-to-accomplish
Praesertim eo fultus adminiculo, quod potentissimus
especially by-that supported prop that the-most-mighty
papa Leo pro corrigendis ecclesiae necessitatibus venit in
pope Leo for correcting of-the-church the-needs came into
Germaniam, quem sciret sibi pro veteri amicitia nil
Germany whom he-knew to-himself for the-old friendship nothing
abnegaturum, quod iure cuipiam deberet prestari.
about-to-deny which by-right to-anyone ought to-be-afforded
Tunc habita est illa synodus generalis apud Mogontiam,
then held was that synod general at Mainz
praesidente domno apostolico et imperatore Heinrico,
presiding lord apostolic and the-emperor Henry
cum episcopis Bardone Mogontino, Eberhardo Treverensi,
with the-bishops Bardo of-Mainz Eberhard of-Trier
Herimanno Coloniensi, Adalberto Hammaburgensi, Engilhardo
Hermann of-Cologne Adalbert of-Hamburg Engelhard
Magdaburgensi ceterisque provintiarum sacerdotibus. In eo
of-Magdeburg and-the-other of-the-provinces priests in that
concilio quidam Spirensis episcopus Sibico, cui crimen
council a-certain of-Speyer bishop Sibicho to-whom the-crime
adulterii intendebatur, examinatione sacrificii purgatus est.
of-adultery was-charged by-the-examination of-the-sacrifice cleared was
Praeterea multa ibidem sancita sunt ad utilitatem ecclesiae,
moreover many-things there decreed were for the-advantage of-the-church

prae quibus symoniaca heresis et nefanda sacerdotum
before which the-simoniac heresy and the-unspeakable of-priests
coniugia olographa synodi manu perpetuo dampnata sunt.
marriages by-the-autograph of-the-synod hand perpetually condemned were
Quod veniens domum noster archiepiscopus non tacuisse
which coming home our archbishop not to-have-kept-silent
probatur. De mulieribus statuit eandem sententiam, quam
is-proved about the-women he-decreed the-same sentence which
decessor eius memorabilis Alebrandus et antea Libentius
predecessor his the-memorable Alebrand and before Libentius
inchoarunt, scilicet ut fierent extra synagogam et
had-begun namely that they-should-be outside the-assembly and
civitatem, ne male suada pellicum vicinia castos violaret
the-city lest the-ill persuading of-concubines neighborhood the-chaste should-violate
optutus. Haec synodus facta est anno Domini 1051; ipse
gaze this synod done was in-the-year of-the-Lord 1051 that
est annus archiepiscopi 7. Et tunc maius altare tribunalis
is the-year of-the-archbishop 7th and then the-greater altar of-the-tribunal
dedicatum est in honore genitricis Dei.
dedicated was in honor of-the-mother of-God

Liber III, §§ 30–33

30–33 · THE PLAN OF A PATRIARCHATE

Adalbert counseled the emperor in war and peace and was praised by the Greek emperor and the Frankish king. He sought to make Hamburg a patriarchate with twelve suffragans when the Danish king asked for an archbishopric of his own. After Pope Leo and Henry died in his twelfth year, the princes rebelled; then Adalbert and Anno ruled for the boy king as rivals.

De qua synodo mentionem ideo fecerim, quod domnus
about which synod mention for-this-reason I-have-made that lord
Adalbertus eo tempore, quo tam clari homines in ecclesia
Adalbert at-that time when such famous men in the-church
fuerunt, sapientiae ac virtutum merito fere omnes praecelluit.
were of-wisdom and of-virtues in-merit almost all surpassed
Tantus apud papam, talis apud caesarem habebatur, ut de
so-great with the-pope such with the-caesar he-was-held that about
publicis rebus absque eius consilio nichil ageretur. Quapropter,
public affairs without his counsel nothing was-done wherefore
ubi vix locum habet clericus, nec in procinctu bellorum
where scarcely place has a-cleric not-even in the-girding of-wars
imperator illum virum dehabere voluit, cuius inexpugnabile
the-emperor that man to-be-without wished whose unconquerable
consilium saepe ad evincendos expertus est inimicos. Sensit
counsel often for overcoming tried he-has enemies felt
hoc callidissimus Italorum dux Bonifacius, item Godafrid, Otto,
this the-most-cunning of-the-Italians duke Boniface likewise Godfrey Otto
Balduinus et ceteri, qui regnum tumultibus implentes, gravi
Baldwin and the-others who the-kingdom with-tumults filling by-heavy

aemulatione caesarem lassare videbantur, tandemque humiliati,
rivalry the-caesar to-weary seemed and-at-last humbled
sola se infractos Adalberti prudentia gloriati sunt.
by-alone themselves to-have-been-broken of-Adalbert prudence boasted have
Quid loquar de barbaris Ungrorum sive Danorum,
why should-I-speak of the-barbarian of-the-Hungarians or of-the-Danes
item Sclavorum aut certe Nortmannorum gentibus, quas
likewise of-the-Slavs or surely of-the-Northmen nations which
imperator saepius consilio domuerat quam bello? monitu
the-emperor more-often by-counsel had-tamed than by-war by-the-advice
et opera nostri pontificis nobile discens exemplum,
and work of-our pontiff a-noble learning example

'Parcere subiectis et debellare superbos'.
to-spare the-subject and to-subdue the-proud

Ad hunc nostrae felicitatis cumulum accessit hoc, quod
to this of-our happiness heap came this that
fortissimus imperator Graecorum Monomachus et Heinricus
the-most-mighty emperor of-the-Greeks Monomachus and Henry
Francorum, transmissis ad nostrum caesarem muneribus,
of-the-Franks sent-across to our caesar gifts
congratulati sunt archiepiscopo pro sapientia et fide
congratulated have the-archbishop for wisdom and faith
eius rebusque bene gestis eius consilio. Tunc ille
his and-for-things well done his by-the-counsel then he
Constantinopolitano rescribens, iactavit se inter alia
to-the-Constantinopolitan writing-back boasted himself among other-things
descendere a Graecorum prosapia, Theophanu et fortissimo
to-descend from of-the-Greeks the-stock Theophanu and the-most-mighty
Ottone sui generis auctoribus, ideoque nec mirum esse, si
Otto of-his race the-authors and-therefore nor wonderful to-be if

Graecos diligeret, quos vellet etiam habitu et moribus imitari;
the-Greeks he-loved whom he-wished even in-dress and morals to-imitate
quod et fecit. Similia regi Franciae mandata legavit et aliis.
which also he-did like-things to-the-king of-France commands he-sent and to-others
Metropolitanus igitur his rerum successibus elatus, et quod
the-metropolitan therefore by-these of-affairs successes elated and because
papam vel caesarem suae voluntati pronos videret, multo
the-pope or the-caesar to-his will inclined he-saw with-much
studio laboravit in Hammaburg patriarchatum constituere. Ad
zeal labored in Hamburg a-patriarchate to-establish to
quam intentionem primo ductus est ea necessitate, quoniam
which intention first led he-was by-that necessity since
rex Danorum, christianitate iam in fines terrae dilatata,
the-king of-the-Danes Christianity already to the-ends of-the-earth spread
desideravit in regno suo fieri archiepiscopatum. Quod
desired in kingdom his to-be-made an-archbishopric which
tamen ut perficeretur, ex auctoritate sedis apostolicae,
yet that it-might-be-accomplished by the-authority of-the-apostolic see
convenientibus canonum decretis, prope sancitum est, sola
agreeing of-the-canons decrees nearly decreed was only
expectabatur sentencia nostri pontificis. Quam rem ille, si
was-awaited the-sentence of-our pontiff which thing he if
patriarchatus honor sibi et ecclesiae suae Romanis privilegiis
of-the-patriarchate the-honor to-himself and to-church his by-Roman privileges
concederetur, fore ut consentiret, promisit, quamlibet
should-be-granted it-would-be that he-would-consent promised however
invitus. Disposuit vero patriarchatui subicere 12 episcopatus,
unwilling he-arranged indeed to-the-patriarchate to-subject 12 bishoprics
quos ex sua divideret parrochia, praeter eos suffraganeos,
which from his he-would-divide diocese besides those suffragans
quos in Dania ceterisque gentibus nostra tenet ecclesia, ita
which in Denmark and-the-other nations our holds church so

ut primus esset in Palmis iuxta Egdorem fluvium, secundus
that the-first should-be at Palmis next-to the-Eider river the-second
in Heliganstade, tercius in Razzispurg, quartus in Aldinburg,
at Heiligenstedten the-third at Ratzeburg the-fourth at Oldenburg
quintus in Michilinburg, sextus in Stade, septimus in Lismona,
the-fifth at Mecklenburg the-sixth at Stade the-seventh at Lesum
octavus in Wildishusin, nonus in Bremis, decimus in Ferde,
the-eighth at Wildeshausen the-ninth at Bremen the-tenth at Verden
undecimus in Ramsola, duodecimus in Fresia. Nam Ferdensem
the-eleventh at Ramelsloh the-twelfth in Frisia for the-Verden
episcopatum se facile posse adipisci, non semel gloriatus est.
bishopric himself easily to-be-able to-obtain not once boasted he-has
Interea condicionibus utrimque protractis, sanctissimus papa
meanwhile the-conditions on-both-sides drawn-out the-most-holy pope
Leo migravit. Eodemque anno fortissimus imperator Heinricus
Leo departed and-in-the-same year the-most-mighty emperor Henry
decessit. Quorum obitus contigit anno archiepiscopi 12.
departed whose deaths happened in-the-year of-the-archbishop 12th
Quorum morte non solum ecclesia turbata est, verum etiam
by-whose death not only the-church troubled was but even
res publica finem habere videbatur. Itaque ex illo tempore
the-thing public an-end to-have seemed and-so from that time
nostram ecclesiam omnes calamitates oppresserunt, nostro
our church all calamities oppressed our
pastore tantum curiae intento negotiis. Ad gubernacula
shepherd only on-the-court intent affairs to the-helm
regni mulier cum puero successit, magno imperii
of-the-kingdom a-woman with a-boy succeeded with-great of-the-empire
detrimento. Indignantes enim principes aut muliebri potestate
loss indignant for the-princes either by-womanly power
constringi aut infantili ditione regi, primo quidem
to-be-constrained or by-infant rule to-be-ruled first indeed

communiter vindicarunt se in pristinam libertatem, ut
in-common claimed themselves into former liberty that
non servirent; dein contentionem moverunt inter se, quis
not they-should-serve then contention they-moved among themselves who
eorum videretur esse maior; postremo armis audacter sumptis
of-them should-seem to-be greater lastly arms boldly taken
dominum et regem suum deponere moliti sunt. Et haec
lord and king their to-depose attempted have and these-things
omnia oculis pocius videri possunt, quam calamo scribi.
all with-eyes rather to-be-seen can than with-the-pen to-be-written
Tandem seditionibus ad pacem inclinatis, Adalbertus et Anno
at-last the-seditions to peace inclined Adalbert and Anno
archiepiscopi consules declarati sunt, et in eorum consilio
archbishops consuls declared were and in their counsel
deinceps summa rerum pendebat. Sed cum ambo essent viri
thereafter the-sum of-affairs hung but though both were men
prudentes et strennui in procuratione rei publicae, tamen
prudent and vigorous in the-administration of-the-thing public yet
alter alterum felicitate aut industria sua longe praecurrisse
the-one the-other by-good-fortune or industry his far to-have-outrun
videtur. [Itaque ficta sodalitas episcoporum modico duravit
seems and-so the-feigned fellowship of-the-bishops for-a-little lasted
tempore, et quamvis lingua utriusque pacem sonare videretur,
time and although the-tongue of-each peace to-sound seemed
cor tamen odio mortali pugnabat in invicem. Et
the-heart yet with-hatred mortal fought against each-other and
Bremensis quidem praesul eo iustiorem induit causam,
the-Bremen indeed prelate by-so-much juster put-on a-cause
quoniam pronior fuit ad misericordiam, regique domino
since more-inclined he-was to mercy and-to-the-king lord
suo fidem docuit servandam esse usque ad mortem. At
his faith taught to-be-kept to-be all-the-way to death but

vero Coloniensis, vir atrocis ingenii, etiam violatae fidei
indeed the-Cologne a-man of-fierce wit even of-violated faith
arguebatur in regem. Praeterea per omnes, quae suo
was-accused toward the-king moreover through all which in-his
tempore factae sunt conspirationes, medioximus semper erat.]
time made were conspirations the-go-between always he-was

Liber III, §§ 34–36

34–36 · ANNO'S KINSMEN AND ADALBERT'S FLATTERERS

Anno enriched Cologne and raised his kinsmen to bishoprics. Adalbert disdained to advance his own, spent his money on flatterers, physicians, and actors, and took knights into his service with promises. Puffed up by the court, he built castles in his diocese and squandered its revenues, and in prosperity and adversity alike he knew no measure.

Coloniensis enim, quem avaritiae notabant, omnia, quae domi
the-Cologne-man for whom of-avarice they-marked all-things which at-home
vel in curia potuit corradere, in ornamentum suae posuit
or in the-court he-could scrape-together for the-adornment of-his put
ecclesiae. Quam, cum prius magna esset, ita maximam fecit,
church which though before great it-was so very-great he-made
ut iam comparationem evaserit omnium quae in regno
that already comparison it-escaped of-all which in the-kingdom
sunt ecclesiarum. Exaltavit etiam parentes suos et amicos et
are churches he-exalted also kinsmen his and friends and
capellanos, primis honorum dignitatibus omnes cumulans, ut
chaplains with-the-first of-honors dignities all heaping that
illi alteris succurrerent infirmioribus. Quorum primores erant
they the-others might-help weaker of-whom the-foremost were
germanus archiepiscopi, Wecilo Magadeburgensis, eorumque
the-brother of-the-archbishop Wezilo of-Magdeburg and-their

nepos Burkardus, Halverstadensis episcopus, similiter Cuono,
nephew Burchard of-Halberstadt bishop likewise Cuno
Treveris electus, sed invidia cleri martyrio coronatus
at-Trier elected but by-the-envy of-the-clergy with-martyrdom crowned
antequam intronizatus. Item Mindensis Eilbertus et Traiectensis
before enthroned likewise of-Minden Eilbert and of-Utrecht
Willehelmus; praeterea in Ytalia Aquilegiensis atque Parmensis,
William moreover in Italy of-Aquileia and of-Parma
et alii, quos enumerare longum est, studio et favore
and others whom to-enumerate long it-is by-the-zeal and favor
Annonis elevati sunt, qui et fautori suo in temptationibus
of-Anno raised were who also to-the-patron their in temptations
auxilio decorique fuisse certarunt. Multa igitur ab illo
an-aid and-ornament to-have-been strove many-things therefore by that
viro in divinis et humanis egregie facta comperimus.
man in divine and human-things excellently done we-have-learned
Noster vero metropolitanus tamen pro nobilitate certans et
our indeed metropolitan yet for nobility contending and
gloria terrena, indignum habuit aliquem suorum exaltare, licet
glory earthly unworthy held anyone of-his-own to-exalt although
multos in obsequium traxisset egentes, arbitrans sibi hoc
many into service he-had-drawn the-needy judging to-himself this
esse dedecus, si aut rex aut quisquam magnatium suis
to-be a-disgrace if either the-king or any of-the-magnates to-his-own
benefaceret, ‘quos ipse’, inquit, ‘tam bene aut melius possum
should-do-good whom he he-says as well or better I-can
remunerare’. Ergo admodum pauci suorum illo annuente
to-reward therefore quite few of-his-own him nodding
pervenerunt ad apicem episcopalem; multi vero, si tantum
arrived at the-summit episcopal many indeed if only
apti ad verbum seu callidi essent ad servitium, ingentibus
fit for the-word or cunning they-were for service with-huge

cumulati sunt divitiis. Unde factum est, ut pro gloria mundi
heaped were with-riches whence done it-is that for the-glory of-the-world
captanda homines diversi generis et multarum artium,
to-be-caught men of-diverse kind and of-many arts
praecipue vero adulatores, ad suam asciscerent familiaritatem.
chiefly indeed flatterers to his he-admitted familiarity
Quorum onerosam multitudinem traxit secum in curia et
of-whom the-burdensome multitude he-drew with-him in the-court and
per episcopium, sive quacumque iter esset, affirmans
through the-bishopric or wherever the-journey was affirming
se frequenti commeantium multitudine non modo non
himself by-the-frequent of-comers-and-goers multitude not only not
gravari, verum etiam opipare delectari. Pecuniam autem,
to-be-burdened but even sumptuously to-be-delighted the-money moreover
quam recepit a suis sive ab amicis, porro seu ab his
which he-received from his-own or from friends further or from those
qui frequentabant palatium, vel qui regiae maiestati obnoxii
who frequented the-palace or who to-the-royal majesty liable
fuerunt, illam, inquam, pecuniam, licet maxima esset, sine
were that I-say money although very-great it-was without
mora dispersit infamibus personis et ypocritis, medicis
delay he-scattered to-infamous persons and to-hypocrites to-physicians
et histrionibus et id genus aliis, scilicet non sapienter
and to-actors and that kind others namely not wisely
aestimans, talium personarum favoribus se effecturum,
judging of-such persons by-the-favors himself about-to-bring-about
ut vel solus placeret in curia vel maior domus fieret
that either alone he-might-please in the-court or the-chief of-the-house might-become
prae omnibus, et eo modo perfici posse, quod in
before all and in-that way to-be-accomplished to-be-able what in
animo habuit de provectu ecclesiae suae. Praeterea cum
mind he-had about the-advancement of-the-church his moreover when

omnes, qui erant in Saxonia sive in aliis regionibus clari et
all who were in Saxony or in other regions famous and
magnifici viri, adoptaret in milites, multis dando quod habuit,
magnificent men he-adopted as soldiers to-many giving what he-had
ceteris pollicendo quod non habuit, inutile nomen vanae
to-the-others promising what not he-had the-useless name of-vain
gloriae magno corporis et animae dampno mercatus est. Et
glory with-great of-body and of-soul loss bought he-has and
corrupti quidem mores archiepiscopi ab initio tales, in
corrupted indeed the-morals of-the-archbishop from the-beginning such in
processu temporis et circa finem semper deteriores fuerunt.
the-progress of-time and toward the-end always worse were
Tunc igitur magnis curiae honoribus inflatus, vixque
then therefore by-the-great of-the-court honors puffed-up and-scarcely
iam tolerandus inopi parrochiae, venit Bremam cum
now to-be-endured to-the-needy diocese he-came to-Bremen with
ingenti, ut solebat, multitudine armatorum, novis populum
a-huge as he-was-wont multitude of-armed-men with-new the-people
et regionem exactionibus aggravans. Et tunc levata sunt
and the-region exactions burdening and then raised were
illa castella, quae vel maxima nostros ad iram duces
those castles which even most our to wrath the-dukes
incenderunt, deficiente illo studio, quod prius habuit in
inflamed failing that zeal which before he-had in
aedificatione sanctarum congregationum. Miranda nimirum
the-building of-holy congregations wonderful surely
voluntas hominis impatiensque ocii, quae domi forisque
the-will of-the-man and-impatient of-leisure which at-home and-abroad
tantis occupata laboribus nunquam posset fatigari.
by-so-great occupied labors never could to-be-wearied
Nam cum saepe antea miser episcopatus eius tantis
for though often before the-wretched bishopric his by-so-great

expeditionum sumptibus tantisque voracis curiae studiis
of-campaigns expenses and-so-great of-the-voracious court pursuits
laborasset, nunc vero in aedificationem praeposiurarum et
had-labored now indeed into the-building of-provostships and
castellorum sine misericordia profligatus est. [Nam et
castles without mercy ruined it-was for both
hortos et vineas in terra plantans arida, licet studio
gardens and vineyards in a-land planting dry although with-zeal
inefficaci multa temptasset, nichilominus tamen hiis, qui
ineffective many-things he-had-tried nonetheless yet to-those who
morem gererent suae voluntati, magnifice voluit omnibus
the-humor might-bear to-his will magnificently he-wished in-all-things
compensari laborem.] Ita mens alta viri pugnans contra
to-be-recompensed the-labor so the-mind lofty of-the-man fighting against
naturam patriae, quicquid usquam magnificum didicit, hoc
the-nature of-the-fatherland whatever anywhere magnificent he-learned this
non habere ipse noluit. Cuius morbi causas cum diligenter
not to-have he refused of-which disease the-causes when carefully
et diu perscrutarer, inveni sapientem virum ex illa, quam
and long I-investigated I-found the-wise man by that which
nimium dilexit, mundi gloria perductum ad hanc mollitiem
too-much he-loved of-the-world glory led to this softness
animi, quod in prosperitate rerum temporalium elevatus in
of-mind that in the-prosperity of-things temporal raised into
superbiam, ad laudem comparandam ignorabat modum, in
pride for praise to-be-procured he-did-not-know measure in
adversitate autem plus iusto contristatus, iracundiae aut
adversity moreover more than-just saddened to-wrath or
moerori frena laxabat. Itaque tam in bono, si misertus est,
grief the-reins he-loosened and-so as-much in good if pitied he-has
quam in malo, si iratus est, in utroque mensuram excessit.
as in evil if angered he-was in both the-measure he-exceeded

Liber III, §§ 37–38

37–38 · ADALBERT'S HOUSEHOLD

In anger Adalbert struck men until blood flowed, and in largesse he reckoned a pound as a penny. He kept flatterers and dreamers who promised him the papacy and a golden age, and he trusted dreams and auguries. He slept by day and gambled by night, loved hospitality, admitted physicians but not pantomimes, and made great envoys wait a week at his door.

Eius rei documentum hoc habeo, quod in ira furoris sui
of-that thing a-proof this I-have that in the-anger of-fury his
aliquos manu percussit usque ad effusionem sanguinis, sicut
some with-hand he-struck all-the-way to the-shedding of-blood as
fecit praepositum eius aliosque. In misericordia vero, quae in
he-did the-provost his and-others in mercy indeed which in
hac parte melius dicitur largitas, erat ita profusus, ut libram
this part better is-called generosity he-was so lavish that a-pound
argenti pro denario computans, aliquando mediocribus personis
of-silver for a-penny reckoning sometimes to-middling persons
effundi centum libras edixerit, amplius autem maioribus.
to-be-poured-out a-hundred pounds he-decreed more moreover to-the-greater
Qua de re accidit, ut, quotienscumque iratus est, ceu leo
which from thing it-happened that as-often-as angered he-was like a-lion
fugeretur ab omnibus, cum vero placatus est, palpari posset
he-was-fled by all when indeed appeased he-was to-be-stroked he-could
ut agnus. Citissime autem ad hylaritatem ab ira laudibus
as a-lamb most-swiftly moreover to cheerfulness from wrath by-praises
mulceri potuit vel suis vel alienis, et tunc quasi alteratus
to-be-soothed he-could either of-his-own or of-strangers and then as-if altered
ab illo qui fuit, arridere coepit laudatori. Hunc locum saepe
from that-one who he-was to-smile he-began on-the-praiser this spot often

vidimus captari ab adulatoribus, qui ex diversis terrarum
we-saw to-be-seized by the-flatterers who from diverse of-the-lands
partibus in cameram eius, velud in sentinam fluxerunt,
parts into chamber his as into a-bilge flowed
quos et ipse ad nansciscendum honorem mundi necessarios
whom also he for obtaining the-honor of-the-world necessary
esse principibus indicavit. Si qui tamen palatio et regi
to-be to-the-princes declared if any yet to-the-palace and to-the-king
notiores erant, in suam dignatus est ascire familiaritatem,
better-known were into his deigned he-has to-admit familiarity
reliquos permisit abire donatos. Ita vero et honestas
the-rest he-allowed to-go-away presented so indeed both honorable
personas et in ordine sacerdotali fulgentes ad hoc turpissimum
persons and in the-order priestly shining into this most-shameful
adulationis offitium ambitio suae familiaritatis illexit. Postremo
of-flattery office the-ambition of-his familiarity enticed lastly
qui adulari nesciret aut fortasse nollet, eum sicut amentem
him-who to-flatter knew-not or perhaps wished-not him as a-madman
et stolidum vidimus a ianuis excludi, acsi diceretur:
and a-dolt we-saw from the-doors to-be-shut-out as-if it-were-said

'Exeat aula,
let-him-leave the-hall
Qui vult esse pius'.
who wishes to-be pious

Et:
and

'Accusator erit, qui verum dixerit'.
an-accuser he-shall-be who the-truth shall-have-spoken

Porro ita praevaluerunt apud nos mendaces, ut vera
further so prevailed among us the-liars that true-things
dicentibus non crederetur, etiamsi iurarent. Talibus igitur
to-those-speaking not it-was-believed even-if they-swore with-such therefore
personis plena fuit domus episcopi.
persons full was the-house of-the-bishop
Quibus accesserunt cottidie alii gnathones, parasiti, somniatores
to-whom were-added daily other spongers parasites dreamers
et rumigeruli, qui ea, quae ipsi confinxerunt nobisque
and rumor-mongers who those-things which they had-feigned and-to-us
placitura rebantur, iactabant sibi per angelos revelata;
about-to-please they-thought boasted to-themselves through angels revealed
iam publice divinantes Hammaburgensem patriarcham — sic
already publicly divining the-Hamburg patriarch so
enim vocari voluit — cito papam futurum, aemulos suos a
for to-be-called he-wished soon pope about-to-be rivals his from
curia depellendos, ipsum vero solum diuque rem publicam
the-court to-be-driven-off him indeed alone and-long the-thing public
gubernaturum, atque ita fieri longaevum, ut quinquaginta
about-to-govern and so to-become long-lived that fifty
annos excederet in episcopatu, postremo per illum virum
years he-should-exceed in the-bishopric lastly through that man
quaedam aurea secula orbi ventura. Et haec quidem
certain golden ages for-the-world about-to-come and these-things indeed
licet ficte ab adulatoribus et pro quaestu promitterentur,
although falsely by the-flatterers and for gain they-were-promised
episcopus tamen, quasi de coelo sonuissent, vera omnia
the-bishop yet as-if from heaven they-had-sounded true all
putabat, tractans ex scripturis quaedam praesagia rerum, quae
he-thought handling from the-scriptures certain presages of-things which
fieri debeant, hominibus data vel in sompniis vel in auguriis
to-happen must to-men given either in dreams or in auguries

vel in communibus sermonum loquelis vel in non solitis
or in common of-speeches talk or in not usual
elementorum figuris. Quare dicitur eum morem insuevisse, ut,
of-the-elements shapes wherefore it-is-said him the-habit to-have-adopted that
dum cubitum ibat, fabulis delectaretur; cum expergisceretur,
when to-bed he-went with-tales he-was-delighted when he-awoke
sompniis, quotiens vero iter incepit, auspiciis. Aliquando
with-dreams as-often-as indeed a-journey he-began with-auspices sometimes
etiam totum diem sompno indulgens, noctu pervigil aut
also the-whole day to-sleep indulging by-night wide-awake either
lusit ad aleas aut mensae assedit. Cum autem recumberet ad
he-played at dice or at-table sat when moreover he-reclined at
mensam, hilariter habundanterque omnia praecepit exhiberi
table cheerfully and-abundantly all-things he-ordered to-be-set-before
convivis, ipse a convivis ieiunus interdum surgens, semper
the-guests himself from the-guests fasting sometimes rising always
autem ex officio paratos habens, qui advenientes reciperent
moreover by office ready having those-who arriving should-receive
hospites, magnopere curavit, ne non multum illum haberent;
guests greatly he-took-care lest not much him they-should-have
adglorians, hospitalitatem porro maximam esse virtutem,
glorying hospitality further the-greatest to-be virtue
quae cum non careat divina mercede, saepe etiam inter
which since not it-lacks divine reward often also among
homines habeat vel maximam laudem. Recumbens autem
men has even the-greatest praise reclining moreover
non tam cibis aut poculis quam faceciis oblectabatur,
not so-much with-foods or cups as with-witticisms he-was-delighted
aut regum hystoriis aut raris philosophorum sentenciis. Si
or of-kings with-histories or with-rare of-philosophers sayings if
vero erat privatus, quod raro accidit, ut solus et absque
indeed he-was private which rarely happened that alone and without

hospitibus maneret vel regiis legatis, tunc fabulis aut somniis,
guests he-remained or royal envoys then with-tales or dreams
semper autem sobriis ocium terebat loquelis. Raro fidicines
always moreover with-sober leisure he-wore-away talk rarely lute-players
admittebat, quos tamen propter alleviandas anxietatum curas
he-admitted whom yet for relieving of-anxieties cares
aliquando censuit esse necessarios. Ceterum pantomimos, qui
sometimes he-judged to-be necessary however the-pantomimes who
obscenis corporum motibus oblectare vulgus solent, a suo
with-obscene of-bodies movements to-delight the-crowd are-wont from his
conspectu prorsus eiecit. Soli medici cum illo regnabant,
sight utterly he-cast alone the-physicians with him reigned
difficilis aditus fuit ceteris, nisi gravior causa posceret
difficult the-access was for-the-others unless a-weightier cause demanded
aliquos intromitti laicos. Unde etiam accidit, ut videremus
any to-be-admitted laymen whence also it-happened that we-saw
ostium thalami sui, quod primo omnibus patuit ignotis
the-door of-chamber his which at-first to-all lay-open to-unknown
vel peregrinis, tali postmodum custodia vallatum esse,
or to-strangers with-such afterward guard fenced to-be
ut magnis de rebus legati potentesque seculi personae
that great about matters envoys and-mighty of-the-world persons
aliquando pro foribus inviti expectarent per ebdomadam.
sometimes before the-doors unwilling waited through a-week

Liber III, §§ 39–41

39–41 · THE DUKES' HATRED; FRISIA; BERNARD'S DREAM

At table Adalbert mocked the princes for low birth and avarice. Duke Bernard and his sons hounded him into his errors. When the Frisians refused tribute, they rose against the duke and archbishop and plundered their camps and the church's treasure. Bernard dreamed that bears, boars, stags, and hares came out of his house against the church, and warned his sons.

Praeterea inter epulandum familiare habuit magnos viros carpere,
moreover during feasting customary he-held great men to-carp-at
notans in aliis stulticiam, in quibusdam avaritiam, multis autem
noting in some folly in certain avarice to-many moreover
obiciens ignobilitatem, omnibus vero inproperavit infidelitatem,
objecting low-birth to-all indeed he-reproached infidelity
eo quod ingrati essent illi qui eos de stercore suscitaret,
for-this that ungrateful they-were to-him who them from the-dung had-raised
regi, quem solus ipse diligens imperium pro iure non pro
to-the-king whom alone he loving the-empire for right not for
suo commodo tueri videretur: argumentum esse, quod
his-own advantage to-protect seemed a-proof to-be that
illi sicut ignobiles raperent aliena, ipse vero sicut nobilis
they as low-born seized others'-things he indeed as a-noble
effunderet sua; hoc esse apertissimum nobilitatis indicium.
poured-out his-own this to-be the-most-open of-nobility sign
Hac invectione pestifera utebatur in singulos, nullique
this invective pestilent he-used against each and-to-none
demum pepercit, dummodo se omnibus anteferret. Itaque
at-last spared provided-that himself to-all he-preferred and-so
breviter hoc dicendum est, pro sola quam dilexit mundi gloria
briefly this to-be-said is for alone which he-loved of-the-world glory

peioratum esse virum illum de omnibus quas ab initio
made-worse to-have-been man that in all which from the-beginning
habuit virtutibus. Nempe talia et eiusmodi plurima circa
he-had virtues surely such and of-this-kind very-many around
ipsum facta sunt illo tempore, quae supersticioni vel iactanciae
him done were at-that time which for-superstition or boasting
seu potius negligentiae eius infamiam magnam pepererunt,
or rather negligence his infamy great bore
odiumque omnium mortalium, praecipue vero magnatum.
and-hatred of-all mortals chiefly indeed of-the-magnates
Ex quibus infestissimi erant tam illi quam ecclesiae
of whom most-hostile were as-much to-him as to-the-church
nostrae dux Bernardus et filii eius, quorum invidia, simul
our duke Bernard and sons his whose envy together
et odia, itemque insidiae, obprobria et calumpniae traxerunt
and hatreds likewise ambushes reproaches and calumnies drew
archiepiscopum ad omnia quae supra diximus offendicula
the-archbishop to all which above we-have-said stumbling-blocks
praecipitem, et quasi vecordem fecerunt, dum minor ipsis
headlong and as-if mad they-made while less than-them
et cedere videretur. Cessit tamen aliquando sponte pro officio
and to-yield he-seemed he-yielded yet sometimes willingly for the-office
sacerdotii, cupiens invidiam superare beneficiis et bona
of-priesthood desiring envy to-overcome with-benefits and good-things
reddere pro malis. Sed cum frustra laborasset omnibus modis,
to-render for evil-things but when in-vain he-had-labored in-all ways
ut male nexam cum ducibus resarciret amicitiam, victus
that the-badly knit with the-dukes he-might-mend friendship conquered
tandem a tribulatione persequentium et dolore malorum
at-last by the-tribulation of-the-persecutors and by-the-pain of-evils
exulceratus, non semel exclamavit cum Helya: ‘Domine
ulcerated not once he-cried-out with Elijah O-Lord

Deus, altaria tua destruxerunt, prophetas tuos occiderunt,
God altars your they-have-destroyed prophets your they-have-killed
et relictus sum ego solus, et quaerunt me interficere'.
and left am I alone and they-seek me to-kill
Ceterum quam iniuste noster archiepiscopus talia passus
however how unjustly our archbishop such-things suffered
sit, unum satis est exemplum hic ponere, quo potest
has one enough it-is example here to-set by-which it-can
videri, amicitiam cum invidis nil valuisse conservatam.
to-be-seen friendship with the-envious nothing to-have-availed kept
Dux avaritiae stimulo motus in Frisones, quod debitum
the-duke of-avarice by-the-goad moved against the-Frisians because the-due
non inferrent tributum, venit in Fresiam, comitem
not they-were-bringing tribute came into Frisia as-companion
habens archiepiscopum, qui ea tantum gratia profectus
having the-archbishop who for-that only reason set-out
est, ut discordantem populum duci reconciliaret. Cumque
has that the-discordant people to-the-duke he-might-reconcile and-when
dux mammonae cupidus totam pro censu rationem poneret,
the-duke of-mammon desirous the-whole for the-tax account set-out
necdum septingentis argenti marcis posset ullo modo
and-not-yet with-seven-hundred of-silver marks could in-any way
placari, mox barbara gens, nimio furore succensa,
to-be-appeased soon the-barbarous nation by-excessive fury inflamed

'in ferrum pro libertate ruebant'.
into the-iron for liberty they-rushed

Multi nostrum ibi perfossi, ceteri fuga defensi, castra
many of-us there pierced-through the-others by-flight protected the-camps
ducis et archiepiscopi direpta, magnus ecclesiae tesaurus
of-the-duke and of-the-archbishop plundered a-great of-the-church treasure

ibi dilapsus est. Nichil tamen profuit nobis apud ducem et
there slipped-away has nothing yet profited us with the-duke and
suos amicitiae fides in periculo experta, quominus persequi
his-own of-friendship the-faith in danger tested to-prevent-that to-persecute
vellent ecclesiam. Aiunt ergo ducem futuri praescium
they-should-wish the-church they-say therefore the-duke of-the-future foreknowing
saepe cum gemitu narrasse, filios suos ad excidium Bremensis
often with groaning to-have-told sons his to the-destruction of-the-Bremen
ecclesiae fataliter destinatos. [Vidit enim per sompnium
church fatally destined he-saw for through a-dream
ex penetralibus suis egressos in ecclesiam ursos aprosque,
from inner-rooms his gone-out into the-church bears and-boars
deinde cervos, ad ultimum lepores. 'Ursi', inquit, 'et apri
then stags to the-last hares the-bears he-says and the-boars
erant parentes nostri, fortitudine sicut dentibus armati; cervi
were parents our with-strength as with-teeth armed the-stags
sumus ego et frater, solis decori cornibus; lepores autem
are I and (my)-brother with-only beautiful horns the-hares moreover
filii nostri modicae virtutis et timidi, de quibus metuo, ne
the-sons our of-small strength and timid about whom I-fear lest
impugnantes ecclesiam divinam incurrant ultionem'.] Quapropter
attacking the-church divine they-incur vengeance wherefore
sub obtestatione divini timoris praemonuit eos, ne quid
under the-adjuration of-divine fear he-forewarned them lest anything
impium cogitarent adversum ecclesiam et pastorem suum,
impious they-should-think against the-church and shepherd their
periculose laedi aut hunc aut illam, quod iniuria eorum
perilously to-be-harmed either this-one or that because the-wrong of-them
redundet in Christum. Haec surdis ille praecepta reliquit.
redounds against Christ these to-the-deaf he precepts left
Nunc de vindicta peccatores statim sequente videamus.
now about the-vengeance on-the-sinners at-once following let-us-see

Liber III, §§ 42–44

42–44 · ORDULF AND HERMANN RAVAGE THE SEE

Bernard died in Adalbert's seventeenth year; his son Ordulf, even in Bernard's life, had blinded the church's men and had its envoys beaten and scalped. Adalbert took Count Hermann into his service and went on the Hungarian campaign with the king. Refused a benefice, Hermann sacked Bremen; he was exiled and made amends. The king sent rich gifts to rebuild Hamburg, and the see gained Lesum.

Anno pontificis nostri 17. Bernardus Saxonum dux obiit,
in-the-year of-the-pontiff our 17th Bernard of-the-Saxons duke died
qui a tempore senioris Libentii iam per annos 40
who from the-time of-the-elder Libentius already through years 40
Sclavorum res atque Nordalbingorum ac nostras strennue
of-the-Slavs the-affairs and of-the-Nordalbingians and ours vigorously
administravit. Post cuius obitum filii eius Ordolf et Hermannus
administered after whose death sons his Ordulf and Hermann
hereditatem patris acceperunt, malo omine Bremensis
the-inheritance of-their-father received with-bad omen for-the-Bremen
ecclesiae. Illi enim antiqui memores odii, quod patres
church they for the-old mindful of-the-hatred which fathers
eorum contra eandem, licet occulte, exercuerunt ecclesiam,
their against the-same although secretly practiced church
statuerunt aperte iam ultionem repetendam esse in episcopum
decided openly now vengeance to-be-sought-again to-be on the-bishop
totamque familiam ecclesiae. Et primo quidem dux Ordulfus,
and-the-whole household of-the-church and first indeed duke Ordulf
vivo adhuc patre, hostili stipatus multitudine, Bremensem
living still his-father by-a-hostile surrounded multitude the-Bremen
episcopatum in Fresia devastavit ac cecavit homines ecclesiae,
bishopric in Frisia laid-waste and blinded the-men of-the-church

alios etiam legatos ad se pro pace directos publice verberari
others also envoys to himself for peace directed publicly to-be-beaten
iussit et decalvari; postremo omnibus modis ecclesiam et
he-ordered and to-be-scalped lastly in-all ways the-church and
suos impugnare, spoliare, caedere ac pro nichilo habere. Ad
its-people to-attack to-despoil to-slay and for nothing to-hold at
ea tametsi pontifex, ut debuit, ecclesiastico zelo exardens,
these-things although the-pontiff as he-ought with-ecclesiastical zeal blazing
contemptores anathematis gladio percussit, querelam tamen
the-despisers of-anathema with-the-sword struck the-complaint yet
ad curiam deferens, nil aliud meruit quam derideri. Nam
to the-court bringing nothing else merited than to-be-mocked for
et rex puer a nostris comitibus primo, ut aiunt, derisui
also the-king a-boy by our counts first as they-say in-derision
habitus est. Quapropter archipraesul tempori serviens, ut
held was wherefore the-archprelate to-the-time serving that
coniuratos tantum fratres ab invicem divelleret, dicitur
the-sworn-together only brothers from each-other he-might-tear-apart he-is-said
Herimannum comitem adoptasse in militem. Cuius satellicio
Hermann the-count to-have-adopted as soldier by-whose escort
functus, in Ungaricam tunc expeditionem quasi magister
having-enjoyed into the-Hungarian then campaign as-if master
regis et princeps consiliorum profectus est, relicto super
of-the-king and prince of-counsels set-out he-has left over
negotia regni Coloniensi archiepiscopo. Restituto autem
the-affairs of-the-kingdom the-Cologne archbishop restored moreover
in regnum Salemone, quem Belo expulerat, pontifex noster
into the-kingdom Solomon whom Béla had-expelled pontiff our
cum rege puero victor ab Ungria regressus est.
with the-king boy victor from Hungary returned has

Tunc comes Herimannus aliquid magnum sperans et ambiens
then count Hermann something great hoping and canvassing
beneficium, quod dare nollet episcopus, statim conversus
a-benefice which to-give wished-not the-bishop at-once turned
in furorem, cum exercitu copioso venit contra Bremam,
into fury with an-army copious came against Bremen
ibique diripiens omnia quae ad manum venerant, soli
and-there plundering all-things which to hand had-come alone
ecclesiae pepercit. Armenta boum et caballorum omnia in
to-the-church he-spared the-herds of-oxen and horses all into
praedam cesserunt. Similiter per totum faciens episcopatum,
plunder passed likewise through the-whole doing bishopric
homines ecclesiae nudos inopesque dimisit. Tunc etiam
the-men of-the-church naked and-destitute he-sent-off then also
castella omnia, quae pontifex, praescius futurorum, diversa
the-castles all which the-pontiff foreknowing future-things in-diverse
regione construxit, usque ad solum diruta sunt.
region built all-the-way to the-ground pulled-down were
Archiepiscopus eo tempore primatum curiae tenebat. Cuius
the-archbishop at-that time the-primacy of-the-court held whose
audita querela, comes secundum iudicium palatii relegatus
heard complaint the-count according-to the-judgment of-the-palace banished
in exilium, post annum clementia regis absolutus est.
into exile after a-year by-the-clemency of-the-king absolved was
Deinde vero idem comes Herimannus et frater eius dux
then indeed the-same count Hermann and brother his duke
Ordulfus ad satisfactionem ecclesiae venientes, pro delicto suo
Ordulf to the-satisfaction of-the-church coming for fault their
quinquaginta mansos optulerunt, et quievit terra paucos dies.
fifty manses offered and was-quiet the-land a-few days

Tunc etiam rex vastacioni condolens Bremensis ecclesiae,
then also the-king at-the-devastation grieving-with of-the-Bremen church
transmisit ei ad solatium fere centum pallia cum aliis vasis
sent-across to-it for comfort almost a-hundred palls with other vessels
argenteis, itemque libris, candelabris et turibulis auro paratis.
silver likewise books candlesticks and censers with-gold prepared
[Haec sunt munera, quae rex misit ad reaedificationem
these are the-gifts which the-king sent for the-rebuilding
Hamburg: tres calices aureos, in quibus erant librae auri
of-Hamburg three chalices golden in which were pounds of-gold
decem, unum vas chrismale argenteum, scutum argenteum
ten one vessel for-chrism silver a-shield silver
deauratum, psalterium aureis scriptum litteris, thuribula et
gilded a-psalter in-golden written letters censers and
candelabra argentea, dorsalia novem regalia, casulas 35,
candlesticks silver wall-hangings nine royal chasubles 35
cappas 30, dalmaticas et subtiles 14 et alia multa, et
copes 30 dalmatics and tunicles 14 and other many-things and
unum plenarium, cuius tabula videbatur novem libras auri
one gospel-book whose board seemed nine pounds of-gold
habere.] Fertur etiam, Corbeiam atque Lauressam coenobia,
to-have it-is-reported also Corvey and Lorsch the-monasteries
pro quibus diu multum laboravit archiepiscopus, eo tempore
for which long much labored the-archbishop at-that time
Hammaburgensi ecclesiae praeceptis tradita. Tunc etiam
to-the-Hamburg church by-charters handed-over then also
diu desiderata in ditionem ecclesiae Lismona venit, quae
long desired into the-power of-the-church Lesum came which
curtis, ut aiunt, septingentos mansos habere videtur et
manor as they-say seven-hundred manses to-have seems and
maritimas Hadeloae regiones in ditione possidet. Pro qua
the-coastal of-Hadeln regions in power possesses for which

firmiter ex omni parte solvenda fertur archiepiscopus
firmly from every side to-be-paid it-is-reported the-archbishop
reginae Agneti dedisse novem libras auri, quoniam haec in
to-queen Agnes to-have-given nine pounds of-gold since this into
partem suae dotis illa commemorabat. [Quinquaginta cortes
the-part of-her dowry she recalled fifty manors
dominicales habuit archiepiscopus, ex quibus Walde maxima
demesne had the-archbishop of which Walde the-greatest
persolvit servitium unius mensis, ceterum Ambergon minima
paid the-service of-one month however Ambergen the-least
quatuordecim dierum. Tanta erat opulentia huius episcopi.]
of-fourteen days so-great was the-opulence of-this bishop

Liber III, §§ 45–46

45–46 · THE COUNTIES AND THE ARCHBISHOP'S FALL

Adalbert sought every county in his diocese, obtaining Fivelgo from the emperor and leasing Udo's county at great cost. To pay a thousand pounds for the Emsgau he broke up the golden crosses and altar given by Emma. Then misfortune came. He made himself sole master of the court, and the princes, fearing his purge of those who had plundered churches or raised hands against the king, drove him from it at Tribur as a sorcerer.

Potuit ecclesia nostra dives esse; potuit archiepiscopus noster
could church our rich to-be could archbishop our
Coloniensi aut Mogontino in omni rerum gloria non invidere.
the-Cologne or the-Mainz in every of-things glory not to-envy
Solus erat Wirciburgensis episcopus, qui dicitur in episcopatu
alone was the-Würzburg bishop who is-said in bishopric
suo neminem habere consortem, ipse cum teneat omnes
his no-one to-have as-partner he since he-holds all

comitatus suae parrochiae, ducatum etiam provintiae gubernat
the-counties of-his diocese the-duchy also of-the-province governs
episcopus. Cuius aemulatione permotus noster praesul statuit
the-bishop by-whose rivalry moved our prelate decided
omnes comitatus, qui in sua dyocesi aliquam iurisditionem
all the-counties which in his diocese any jurisdiction
habere videbantur, in potestatem ecclesiae redigere. Quapropter
to-have seemed into the-power of-the-church to-bring wherefore
ab initio quidem illum maximum Fresiae comitatum a
from the-beginning indeed that greatest of-Frisia county from
caesare indeptus est de Fivelgoe, quem prius habuit dux
the-caesar obtained he-has of Fivelgo which before had duke
Gotafridus, et nunc Ekibertus. Pensionem librarum dicunt
Godfrey and now Ekbert the-revenue of-pounds they-say
esse mille argenti, quarum ducentas ille solvit; atque
to-be a-thousand of-silver of-which two-hundred he paid and
est miles ecclesiae. Archiepiscopus autem optinuit eundem
is the-soldier of-the-church the-archbishop moreover obtained the-same
comitatum per decem annos usque ad diem expulsionis suae.
county for ten years all-the-way to the-day of-expulsion his
Alter comitatus erat Utonis, qui per omnem parrochiam
the-second county was of-Udo which through all the-diocese
Bremensem sparsim diffunditur, maxime circa Albiam. Pro
of-Bremen scattered is-spread most around the-Elbe for
quo archiepiscopus Utoni tantum optulit in precariae nomen
which the-archbishop to-Udo so-much offered in of-precarium name
de bonis ecclesiae, quod aestimatur singulis annis reddere
of the-goods of-the-church which is-reckoned each year to-return
mille libras argenti, cum utique tanta quantitate precii
a-thousand pounds of-silver when surely by-so-great an-amount of-price
maior possit ecclesiae fructus omni anno parari, nisi quod
a-greater could for-the-church fruit every year to-be-procured except that

pro mundi gloria adipiscenda sufficit nobis ideo esse
for of-the-world glory to-be-obtained it-suffices for-us for-this-reason to-be
pauperes, ut divites multos in servitio habeamus. Tercius erat
poor that rich-men many in service we-may-have the-third was
comitatus in Fresia, nostrae parrochiae vicinus, qui dicitur
the-county in Frisia to-our diocese neighboring which is-called
Emisgoe, quem iuri ecclesiae nostrae defendens a Bernardo
Emsgau which for-the-right of-church our defending by Bernard
comite Gotescalcus occisus est, pro quo noster pontifex
the-count Gottschalk slain was for which our pontiff
regi pactus est se mille libras argenti daturum. Cuius
with-the-king agreed has himself a-thousand pounds of-silver about-to-give of-which
pecuniae summam cum facile non posset habere, proh dolor!
of-money the-sum when easily not he-could to-have alas the-grief
iussit cruces, altaria, coronas et cetera ornamenta ecclesiae
he-ordered the-crosses altars crowns and the-other ornaments of-the-church
deponi, quibus denudatis infelicem maturavit contractum
to-be-taken-down which stripped the-unhappy he-hastened contract
perficere. Gloriabatur autem pro argentea se cito auream
to-complete he-boasted moreover for a-silver himself soon a-golden
ecclesiam facturum omniaque ablata restituere in decuplum,
church about-to-make and-all-things taken-away to-restore into tenfold
sicut et prius in destructione claustri visus est egisse.
as also before in the-destruction of-the-cloister seen he-was to-have-done
[O sacrilegium! Duae cruces auro paratae cum gemmis,
O sacrilege two crosses with-gold prepared with gems
altare maius et calix, ambo rutilantia ex auro et lapidibus
the-altar greater and the-chalice both glowing from gold and stones
contexta preciosis, confracta sunt; in quibus erant auri
woven precious broken were in which were of-gold
pondera viginti marcae, quas optulit domna Emma Bremensi
weights twenty marks which offered lady Emma to-the-Bremen

ecclesiae cum aliis donis pluribus. Narravit faber illa
church with other gifts many told the-smith those-things
cremans, magno se dolore coactum ad hoc sacrilegium, ut
burning by-great himself grief forced to this sacrilege that
confringeret illas cruces, secreto quibusdam asserens, se ad
he-should-break those crosses secretly to-certain-ones asserting himself at
sonitum mallei audisse quasi vocem gementis pueri].
the-sound of-the-hammer to-have-heard as-if the-voice of-a-groaning child
Tunc autem et tali modo thesauri Bremensis ecclesiae, a
then moreover and in-such manner the-treasures of-the-Bremen church by
veteribus et suo tempore summo labore magnaque fidelium
the-ancients and in-his time with-highest labor and-great of-the-faithful
devotione collecti, una et miserabili hora pro nichilo sunt
devotion gathered in-one and miserable hour for nothing were
pessundati. Vix tamen ex eadem pecunia media pars
sunk scarcely yet from the-same money half the-part
debiti conflata est. Gemmas sanctarum crucum distractas
of-the-debt melted-together was the-gems of-the-holy crosses taken-apart
audivimus a quibusdam meretriculis donatas.
we-have-heard to certain harlots given
Horreo, fateor, omnia sicut facta sunt propalare, eo quod
I-shudder I-confess all-things as done they-were to-make-public for-this that
initium dolorum haec erant gravisque secuta est vindicta. Ab
the-beginning of-sorrows these were and-heavy followed has vengeance from
illo ergo die ruentibus in occasum prosperis, omnia nobis
that therefore day falling into the-setting prosperous all-things to-us
et ecclesiae adversa fuerunt, ita ut episcopus noster et sui
and to-the-church adverse were so that bishop our and his
asseclae ab omnibus exsibilarentur sicut heretici. At ille parvi
followers by all were-hissed-off as heretics but he at-little
pendens omnium voces, simul etiam relicta rei domesticae
valuing of-all the-voices together also left of-the-affair domestic

cura, totus in curiam vehemens et in gloriam praeceps
the-care wholly into the-court vehement and into glory headlong
ferebatur, hac causa, ut ipse retulit, capessendae rei
was-borne for-this cause as he-himself related of-seizing of-the-thing
publicae quaerens primatum, quia dominum et regem suum
public seeking the-primacy because lord and king his
inter manus trahentium non posset videre captivum. Et iam
among the-hands of-those-dragging not he-could to-see captive and already
consulatum adeptus est, iam remotis aemulis solus possedit
the-consulship obtained he-has already removed the-rivals alone he-possessed
arcem capitolii, non tamen sine invidia, quae semper
the-citadel of-the-capitol not yet without envy which always
gloriam sequitur. Tunc vero metropolitanus noster quaedam
glory follows then indeed metropolitan our certain
aurea saecula renovaturus in consulatu suo, cogitasse fertur
golden ages about-to-renew in consulship his to-have-thought is-reported
disperdere de civitate Dei omnes qui operantur iniquitatem,
to-destroy from the-city of-God all who work iniquity
praecipue illos, qui vel in regem manus miserunt aut
chiefly those who either against the-king hands sent or
ecclesias depraedasse videbantur. Cuius delicti conscientia
the-churches to-have-plundered seemed of-which crime the-consciousness
cum fere omnes episcopi et principes regni tangerentur,
since almost all the-bishops and princes of-the-kingdom touched
unanimi odio conspirabant, ut ille [solus] periret, ne
with-unanimous hatred they-conspired that he alone should-perish lest
ceteri periclitarentur. Igitur omnes [simul] apud Triburiam
the-others should-be-imperiled therefore all together at Tribur
congregati, cum rex adesset praesens, archiepiscopum
gathered when the-king was-present in-person archbishop
nostrum quasi magum et seductorem a curia depulerunt.
our as-if a-magician and seducer from the-court drove-off

Adeo manus eius contra omnes, manusque omnium contra
so-much the-hand his against all and-the-hand of-all against
illum, ut controversiae finis pervenerit usque ad sanguinem.
him that of-the-controversy the-end came all-the-way to blood

Liber III, §§ 47–49

47–49 · MAGNUS BESIEGES ADALBERT; GOTTSCHALK KILLED

The dukes rejoiced. Magnus, Ordulf's son, sought to kill or maim the archbishop, who fled to Goslar and bought peace by granting Magnus a thousand manses; the see was divided among Udo, Magnus, and the king's flatterers. Across the Elbe the pagans killed Gottschalk at Lenzen with the priest Yppo, and monks were stoned at Ratzeburg.

Audientes autem duces nostri, quod pontifex ab ordine
hearing moreover dukes our that the-pontiff from the-order
senatorum esset eiectus, magno repleti gaudio cogitabant
of-senators had-been cast-out with-great filled joy thought
et ipsi tempus invenisse ultionis, ut eum penitus
also themselves the-time to-have-found of-vengeance that him utterly
alienarent a suo episcopio, dicentes: 'Exinanite usque
they-might-estrange from his bishopric saying empty-it all-the-way
ad fundamentum in eo, et conteramus eum de terra
to the-foundation in it and let-us-crush him from the-land
viventium'. Itaque multae insidiae multaque obprobria eorum
of-the-living and-so many ambushes and-many reproaches of-them
adversum archiepiscopum, qui eo tempore, cum nil
against the-archbishop who at-that time since nothing
tucius haberet, Bremae sedit, quasi obsessus et custodia
safer he-had at-Bremen sat as-if besieged and by-a-guard
vallatus inimicorum. Cumque tota ducis familia pastorem
fenced of-enemies and-when the-whole of-the-duke household the-shepherd

et ecclesiam et populum et sanctuarium derisioni haberent,
and the-church and the-people and the-sanctuary in-derision held
Magnus tamen ante omnes saeviebat, glorians se tandem
Magnus yet before all raged boasting himself at-last
reservatum esse, qui rebellem domaret ecclesiam.
reserved to-be who the-rebellious should-tame church
Magnus igitur, filius ducis, collecta latronum multitudine, non
Magnus therefore son of-the-duke gathered of-robbers a-multitude not
eo modo conatus est ecclesiam impugnare, quemadmodum
in-that way tried has the-church to-attack as
parentes eius, verum ipsum pastorem ecclesiae persecutus,
parents his but himself the-shepherd of-the-church having-pursued
ut contentionem diutinam finisse videretur, aut membris
that the-contention long-lasting to-have-ended he-might-seem either in-limbs
truncare aut funditus interficere quaerebat episcopum. Nec
to-maim or utterly to-kill he-sought the-bishop nor
tamen illi dolus ad cavendum defuit, auxilium vero
yet to-him guile for taking-care was-lacking aid indeed
in militibus nullum prorsus habuit. Ipso tempore
in soldiers none at-all he-had at-that-very time
archiepiscopus a Magno duce obsessus, clam noctu fugit
the-archbishop by Magnus the-duke besieged secretly by-night fled
Goslariam, ibique secure per dimidium annum mansit in
to-Goslar and-there securely for half a-year remained on
praedio suo apud Loctunam. Castra et servicium eius ab
estate his at Lochtum the-camp and service his by
hostibus direpta sunt. Quibus angustiarum laqueis obstrictus,
the-enemies plundered were by-which of-straits snares bound
ignominiosum quidem, sed necessarium cum tyranno fedus
a-shameful indeed but necessary with the-tyrant treaty
pepigit, ut, qui hostis erat, miles efficeretur, offerens ei
he-struck that he-who an-enemy was a-soldier should-be-made offering him

de bonis ecclesiae mille mansos in beneficium et amplius:
from the-goods of-the-church a-thousand manses in benefice and more
eo nimirum tenore, ut comitatus Fresiae, quorum alterum
on-that surely condition that the-counties of-Frisia of-which the-one
Bernardus, alterum Ekibertus invito pontifice retinebat,
Bernard the-other Ekbert unwilling the-pontiff were-holding
Magnus absque omni dolo vendicaret iuri ecclesiae
Magnus without any guile should-claim for-the-right of-the-church
ac defenderet. Ita prorsus diviso in tres partes Bremensi
and should-defend so utterly divided into three parts the-Bremen
episcopatu, cum unam partem Udo, alteram Magnus haberet,
bishopric since one part Udo the-other Magnus had
vix tercia remansit episcopo, quam tamen ipse postea
scarcely the-third remained to-the-bishop which yet he afterward
Eberhardo aliisque regis adulatoribus distribuens, fere
to-Eberhard and-other of-the-king flatterers distributing almost
nichil sibi retinuit. Nam et cortes episcopi et decimae
nothing for-himself kept for both the-manors of-the-bishop and the-tithes
ecclesiarum, unde clerici, viduae et inopes sustentari deberent,
of-the-churches whence the-clerics widows and needy to-be-supported ought
omnia cesserunt in usum laicorum, ita ut meretrices cum
all passed into the-use of-laymen so that harlots with
latronibus usque hodie luxurientur ex bonis ecclesiae,
robbers all-the-way-to today live-luxuriously from the-goods of-the-church
in derisum habentes episcopum omnesque ministros altaris.
in derision holding the-bishop and-all the-ministers of-the-altar
Tantis igitur largitionibus, sicut hodie videri potest, nichil
with-so-great therefore largesses as today to-be-seen can nothing
lucratus est archiepiscopus erga Udonem et Magnum, quam
gained has the-archbishop with Udo and Magnus than

ne expelleretur a suo episcopatu; a ceteris vero nichil
lest he-should-be-expelled from his bishopric from the-others indeed nothing
aliud servitii meruit, nisi ut dominus vocaretur.
else of-service he-merited except that lord he-should-be-called
Haec nobis prima ruina contigit in Bremensi parrochia;
this to-us the-first ruin happened in the-Bremen diocese
verum trans Albiam quoque vindictae magnitudo pervenit,
but across the-Elbe also of-the-vengeance the-magnitude came
quoniam princeps Gotescalcus eo tempore interfectus est a
since prince Gottschalk at-that time slain was by
paganis, quos ad christianitatem nitebatur ipse convertere.
the-pagans whom to Christianity he-was-striving himself to-convert
Et quidem vir omni aevo memorabilis magnam partem
and indeed a-man in-every age memorable a-great part
Sclavaniae conversam habuit ad divinam religionem. Sed quia
of-Slavia converted had to divine religion but since
nondum impletae sunt iniquitates Amorreorum, neque adhuc
not-yet fulfilled were the-iniquities of-the-Amorites nor yet
venit tempus miserendi eorum, necesse erat ut venirent
came the-time of-having-mercy on-them necessary it-was that should-come
scandala, ut probati fierent manifesti. Passus est autem
offenses that the-approved should-become manifest suffered has moreover
noster Machabaeus in civitate Leontia, 7. Idus Iunii, cum
our Maccabee in the-city Lenzen on-the-7th Ides of-June with
presbytero Yppone, qui super altare immolatus est, et aliis
the-presbyter Yppo who upon the-altar sacrificed was and others
multis tam laicis quam clericis, qui diversa ubique pro Christo
many as-much laymen as clerics who various everywhere for Christ
pertulerunt supplicia. Ansverus monacus et cum eo alii apud
bore tortures Answer the-monk and with him others at
Razzisburg lapidati sunt. Idus Iulii passio illorum occurrit.
Ratzeburg stoned were on-the-Ides of-July the-passion of-them falls

Liber III, §§ 50–52

50–52 · THE SLAVIC UPRISING AND THE CONQUEST OF ENGLAND

Bishop John was mutilated and his head offered to Redigast at Rethra. The Slavs relapsed, destroyed Hamburg, and defeated Duke Ordulf for twelve years. In England Harold defeated Tostig and the Norwegian king, then fell to William the Bastard, who installed Lanfranc. In Sweden Stenkil died and both Erics fell, ending the royal line and leaving the church in disarray.

Iohannes episcopus senex cum ceteris christianis in
John the-bishop an-old-man with the-other Christians in
Magnopoli civitate captus servabatur ad triumphum. Ille igitur
Mecklenburg the-city captured was-kept for a-triumph he therefore
pro confessione Christi fustibus caesus, deinde per singulas
for the-confession of-Christ with-clubs beaten then through the-several
civitates Sclavorum ductus ad ludibrium, cum a Christi
cities of-the-Slavs led for mockery when from of-Christ
nomine flecti non posset, truncatis manibus ac pedibus, in
the-name to-be-bent not he-could cut-off the-hands and feet in
platea corpus eius proiectum est, caput vero eius desectum,
the-street the-body his thrown was the-head indeed his cut-off
quod pagani conto praefigentes in titulum victoriae, deo
which the-pagans on-a-pole fixing as a-sign of-victory to-god
suo Redigast immolarunt. Haec in metropoli Sclavorum
their Redigast sacrificed these-things in the-metropolis of-the-Slavs
Rethre gesta sunt 4. Idus Novembris. Filia regis
Rethra done were on-the-4th Ides of-November the-daughter of-the-king
Danorum apud Michilenburg, civitatem Obodritorum, inventa
of-the-Danes at Mecklenburg the-city of-the-Obodrites found
cum mulieribus, diu caesa nuda dimissa est. Hanc enim, ut
with women long beaten naked sent-away was her for as

praediximus, Gotescalcus princeps habuit uxorem, a qua
we-have-said-before Gottschalk the-prince had as-wife from whom
et filium suscepit Heinricum. Ex alia vero Butue natus
also a-son he-received Henry from another indeed Butue born
fuit, magno uterque Sclavis excidio genitus. Et illi quidem
was to-great each for-the-Slavs ruin begotten and they indeed
victoria potiti totam Hammaburg provintiam ferro et
victory having-gained the-whole Hamburg province with-iron and
igne demoliti sunt, Sturmarii fere omnes aut occisi aut
fire demolished have the-Stormarians almost all either slain or
in captivitatem ducti, castrum Hammaburg funditus excisum,
into captivity led the-castle Hamburg utterly destroyed
et in derisionem Salvatoris nostri etiam cruces a paganis
and in derision of-Savior our even the-crosses by the-pagans
truncatae sunt. Impleta est nobiscum prophetia, quae ait:
cut-down were fulfilled is with-us the-prophecy which says
'Deus, venerunt gentes in hereditatem tuam; polluerunt
God have-come the-nations into inheritance your they-have-polluted
templum sanctum tuum' et reliqua; quae prophetice
temple holy your and the-rest which prophetically
deplorantur in Ierosolimitanae urbis excidio. Huius auctor
are-lamented in of-the-Jerusalem city destruction of-this the-author
cladis Blusso fuisse dicitur, qui sororem habuit Godescalci,
disaster Blusso to-have-been is-said who as-sister had of-Gottschalk
domumque reversus et ipse obtruncatus est. Itaque omnes
and-home returned also himself cut-down was and-so all
Sclavi, facta conspiratione generali, ad paganismum denuo
the-Slavs made a-conspiracy general to paganism again
relapsi sunt, eis occisis qui perstiterunt in fide. Dux noster
relapsed have them slain who persisted in the-faith duke our
Ordulfus in vanum saepe contra Sclavos dimicans, per
Ordulf in vain often against the-Slavs fighting through

duodecim annos, quibus patri supervixit, numquam potuit
twelve years in-which (his)-father he-survived never could
victoriam habere, totiensque victus a paganis, a suis etiam
victory to-have and-so-often conquered by the-pagans by his-own even
derisus est. Igitur expulsio archiepiscopi et mors Gotescalci
mocked was therefore the-expulsion of-the-archbishop and the-death of-Gottschalk
uno fere anno contigit, qui est pontificis 22. Et nisi
in-one almost year happened which is of-the-pontiff 22nd and unless
fallor, haec mala nobis ventura signavit ille horribilis
I-am-mistaken these evils to-us to-come signified that horrible
cometa, qui ipso apparuit anno circa dies paschae.
comet which in-that-very appeared year about the-days of-Easter
Eodem quoque tempore clades illa memorabilis in Anglia facta
at-the-same also time disaster that memorable in England done
est, cuius magnitudo, et quod Anglia Danis ex antiquo
was whose greatness and that England to-the-Danes from of-old
subiecta est, summam nos eventuum praeterire non sinit. Post
subjected is the-sum us of-the-events to-pass-over not allows after
mortem sanctissimi regis Anglorum Eduardi, contendentibus
the-death of-the-most-holy king of-the-English Edward contending
pro illo regno principibus, Haroldus quidam Anglorum dux,
for that kingdom the-princes Harold a-certain of-the-English duke
vir maleficus, sceptrum invasit. Quod dum sibi frater eius,
a-man wicked the-scepter seized which when from-him brother his
nomine Tosti, ereptum audiret, regem Nordmannorum auxilio
by-name Tostig snatched heard the-king of-the-Northmen to-(his)-aid
ducit Haroldum regemque Scotorum; et occisus est ipse Tosti
leads Harald and-the-king of-the-Scots and slain was himself Tostig
et rex Hiberniae et Haroldus cum toto exercitu eorum
and the-king of-Ireland and Harald with the-whole army of-them
a rege Anglorum. Vix, ut aiunt, dies octo transierunt, et
by the-king of-the-English scarcely as they-say days eight passed and

ecce Willehelmus, cui pro oblico sanguine cognomen est
behold William to-whom for oblique blood the-surname is
Bastardus, a Gallia transfretans in Angliam, lasso victori
Bastard from Gaul crossing into England on-the-weary victor
bellum intulit. In quo Angli primum victores, deinde victi
war brought in which the-English first victors then conquered
a Nordmannis usque ad finem contriti sunt. Haroldus ibi
by the-Normans all-the-way to the-end crushed were Harold there
cecidit, et post eum ex Anglis fere centum milia. Bastardus
fell and after him of the-English almost a-hundred thousand the-Bastard
victor in ultionem Dei, quem ipsi offenderant Angli, omnes
victor in vengeance of-God whom they had-offended the-English all
fere clericos et monachos absque regula viventes expulit.
almost clerics and monks without rule living expelled
Deinde ablatis scandalis, Lanfrancum philosophum in ecclesia
then removed the-scandals Lanfranc the-philosopher in the-church
posuit doctorem, cuius studio et prius in Gallia et postmodum
set as-teacher by-whose zeal both before in Gaul and afterward
in Anglia multi ad divinum animati sunt obsequium.
in England many to divine animated were service
In Sueonia per idem tempus christianissimus rex Stinkel
in Sweden through the-same time the-most-Christian king Stenkil
defunctus est; post quem certantibus de regno duobus
died has after whom contending for the-kingdom two
Hericis, omnes Suedorum potentes feruntur occubuisse in bello.
Erics all of-the-Swedes the-powerful are-reported to-have-fallen in war
Nam et reges ambo ibi perierunt. Ita prorsus deficiente omni
for also kings both there perished so utterly failing all
regali prosapia, et status regni mutatus et christianitas
the-royal stock both the-state of-the-kingdom changed and Christianity
ibi turbata est valde. Episcopi, quos illuc metropolitanus
there disturbed was greatly the-bishops whom thither the-metropolitan

ordinavit, persecutiones metuentes, domi sederunt. Solus
ordained persecutions fearing at-home sat alone
episcopus Sconiae procuravit ecclesias Gothorum. Et quidam
the-bishop of-Scania took-care-of the-churches of-the-Goths and a-certain
Sueonum satrapa Gniph ad christianitatem populum confortavit.
of-the-Swedes satrap Gniph to Christianity the-people strengthened

Liber III, §§ 53–54

53–54 · SVEIN OF DENMARK; ADALBERT IN RETIREMENT

Svein of Denmark, learned and generous though given to lust, spread the faith and told Adam much of this book, including martyrdoms in Sweden and Norway. Driven from court, Adalbert sat at Bremen, troubled rather than at peace, laboring now only to free his see and saying psalms against its enemies.

Illo tempore clarissimus inter barbaros fuit Suein, rex
at-that time most-renowned among the-barbarians was Svein king
Danorum, qui reges Nortmannorum Olaph et Magnum
of-the-Danes who the-kings of-the-Northmen Olaf and Magnus
constrinxit magna virtute. Inter Suein et Bastardum perpetua
constrained with-great strength between Svein and the-Bastard perpetual
contentio de Anglia fuit, licet noster pontifex, muneribus
contention about England was although our pontiff by-the-gifts
Willehelmi persuasus, inter reges pacem formare voluerit.
of-William persuaded between the-kings peace to-form wished
Christianitas ab illo Suein rege in exteras nationes longe
Christianity by that Svein king into foreign nations far
lateque diffusa est. Et cum multis virtutibus polleret, sola
and-wide spread was and though with-many virtues he-was-strong alone
aegrotavit luxuria. Novissimis archiepiscopi temporibus, cum
he-was-sick with-lust in-the-last of-the-archbishop times when

ego Bremam venerim, audita eiusdem regis sapientia, mox ad
I to-Bremen came having-heard of-the-same king the-wisdom soon to
eum venire disposui; a quo etiam clementissime susceptus, ut
him to-come I-arranged by whom also most-kindly received as
omnes, magnam huius libelli materiam ex eius ore collegi.
all great of-this little-book the-material from his mouth I-gathered
Erat enim scientia litterarum eruditus et liberalissimus
he-was for in-knowledge of-letters learned and most-generous
in extraneos, et ipse direxit praedicatores suos clericos in
toward strangers and himself directed preachers his clerics into
omnem Suediam, Nortmanniam et in insulas quae sunt in
all Sweden Norway and into the-islands which are in
illis partibus. Cuius veraci et dulcissima narratione didici, suo
those parts by-whose truthful and most-sweet narration I-learned in-his
tempore multos ex barbaris nationibus ad christianam fidem
time many from barbarian nations to the-Christian faith
conversos, aliquos etiam tam in Suedia quam in Norvegia
converted some also both in Sweden and in Norway
martyrio coronatos; 'ex quibus', ait, 'Hericus quidam
with-martyrdom crowned of whom he-says Eric a-certain
peregrinus, dum Sueones ulteriores praedicaret, martyrii
pilgrim while the-Swedes farther he-preached of-martyrdom
palmam capitis abscisione meruit. Alter, quidam Alfwardus
the-palm of-the-head by-the-cutting-off merited another a-certain Alfward
nomine inter Nortmannos sancta conversatione diu latenter
by-name among the-Northmen in-holy conduct long secretly
vivens, abscondi non potuit. Ille igitur dum protexit inimicum,
living to-be-hidden not could he therefore while he-protected an-enemy
occisus est ab amicis. Ad quorum requiętionis locum magna
slain was by friends at whose of-rest place great
hodieque sanitatum miracula populis declarantur'. Igitur
even-today of-healings miracles to-the-peoples are-declared therefore

et ea, quae diximus vel adhuc sumus dicturi de
also those-things which we-have-said or still are about-to-say about
barbaris, omnia relatu illius viri cognovimus.
the-barbarians all by-the-account of-that man we-have-learned
Interea noster archiepiscopus zelo, ut aiunt, Agrippinensis
meanwhile our archbishop by-the-zeal as they-say of-the-Cologne
episcopi a curia perturbatus, Bremae sedit privatus,
bishop from the-court driven at-Bremen sat private
solitarius et quietus. Atque utinam tanta quiete mentis
solitary and quiet and would-that so-great quiet of-mind
frueretur, quanta corporis fatigatione carebat. Felix, inquam,
he-enjoyed as-much-as of-body fatigue he-lacked happy I-say
si domesticis ecclesiae bonis avitisque parentum contentus
if with-the-domestic of-the-church goods and-ancestral of-parents content
divitiis, infelicem curiam aut nunquam vidisset aut raro
riches the-unhappy court either never he-had-seen or rarely
visitasset. Et de aliis quidem viris magnis legitur,
had-visited and about other indeed men great it-is-read
quod gloriam [mundi] contempnentes, aulam regiam veluti
that the-glory of-the-world despising the-hall royal as-if
secundam ydolatriam refugerint, iudicantes nimirum ad hoc
a-second idolatry they-fled judging surely to this
philosophicum solitariae vitae ocium a tempestate seculi
philosophic of-solitary life leisure from the-storm of-the-world
et tumultu palatii quasi ad portum et requiem beatitudinis
and the-tumult of-the-palace as-if to a-harbor and rest of-blessedness
veniendum. Noster vero pontifex contraria via currebat,
to-be-come our indeed pontiff by-the-contrary way ran
sapientis viri officium aestimans, ut pro salute ecclesiae suae
of-a-wise man the-office judging that for the-safety of-church his
non solum curiae labores sustineat, verum etiam, si ita
not only of-the-court the-labors he-should-endure but even if so

necessitas erit, pericula et mortem subire non dubitet.
necessity shall-be perils and death to-undergo not he-should-hesitate
Unde, nisi fallor, primo tempore suo curiam regis
whence unless I-am-mistaken in-the-first time his the-court of-the-king
frequentavit pro exaltanda ecclesia sua; circa finem vero,
he-frequented for exalting church his toward the-end indeed
perditis aut potius dispersis, quae habuit, pro liberando
lost or rather scattered the-things-which he-had for freeing
laboravit episcopio. In qua re, sicut illud persuasit ambitus
he-labored the-bishopric in which matter as that persuaded the-ambition
gloriae, ita istud necessitas imperavit ecclesiae, quae invidia
of-glory so this necessity commanded of-the-church which by-the-envy
ducum huius patriae semper impugnata, nunc demum etiam
of-the-dukes of-this fatherland always attacked now at-last even
ad nichilum redacta est. Quam calamitatem sui temporis ipse
to nothing reduced is which calamity of-his time he
miserabiliter cotidie deploravit, spetiales ad hoc psalmos habens
miserably daily lamented special for this psalms having
constitutos, quibus in hostes ecclesiae posset ulcisci.
established by-which on the-enemies of-the-church he-might-be-able to-take-vengeance

Liber III, § 55

55 · WHY ADALBERT WAS HARSH TO HIS PEOPLE

Adalbert gave reasons for his harshness: a priest of the diocese had killed his brother Dedo; his household had threatened him with arms; his stewards scattered his goods; and his people were drunkards, perjurers, and polygamists, loyal to the duke. He resolved to rule them with bit and bridle, and his agents went beyond measure in plunder.

Quod autem erga suos parrochianos se tam crudelem
that moreover toward his parishioners himself so cruel
exhibuit, quos potius diligere ac sicut pastor oves suas
he-showed whom rather to-love and as a-shepherd sheep his
procurare deberet, ipse magnam exposuit rationem, quam
to-care-for he-ought he a-great set-out reason which
de illius ore nos audivimus; alia didicimus ex aliis.
from his mouth we heard other-things we-learned from others
Germanus archiepiscopi frater, scilicet palatinus comes, nomine
the-full of-the-archbishop brother namely the-palatine count by-name
Dedus, a quodam suae diocesis presbytero interfectus est,
Dedo by a-certain of-his diocese presbyter slain was
eodem anno, quo et caesar defunctus est, vir bonus
in-the-same year in-which also the-caesar died has a-man good
et iustus, qui nemini unquam vel ipse nocuit vel fratrem
and just who to-no-one ever either himself harmed or (his)-brother
nocere permisit. Apparuit hoc in fine memorabilis viri, qui
to-harm allowed appeared this in the-end of-the-memorable man who
circumstantes iam moriens obtestatus est pro salute sui
those-standing-around already dying adjured has for the-safety of-his
occisoris, hoc mandavit et fratri. Qui defuncti complens
killer this he-enjoined also on-(his)-brother who of-the-dead fulfilling

vota, presbyterum quidem abire permisit illaesum, ex
the-wishes the-presbyter indeed to-go-away allowed unharmed from
eo autem tempore odio habuit omnem familiam ecclesiae.
that moreover time in-hatred he-held the-whole household of-the-church
Dicunt et alium fomitem odii, quod, dum aliquando
they-tell also another kindling of-hatred that when once
pontifex nescio quem de familia superbius agentem iussisset
the-pontiff I-know-not whom of the-household too-proudly acting had-ordered
comprehendi, reliqui proinde commoti ad insaniam, cubiculum
to-be-seized the-rest accordingly moved to madness the-bedchamber
pontificis armati petunt, etiam vim facturi, nisi redderetur
of-the-pontiff armed seek even force about-to-do unless should-be-returned
comprehensus, et alia, quae furor persuasit iratis.
the-seized-man and other-things which fury urged on-the-angry
Tercia causa erat, quod episcopus, ut bonis suis parceret,
the-third cause was that the-bishop that his goods he-might-spare
annum integrum aut saepe biennium a domo peregrinatus
a-year whole or often two-years from home wandered
est. Post multum vero temporis in episcopatum regressus,
has after much indeed time into the-bishopric returned
coepit rationem ponere cum servis et villicis suis, invenitque
he-began account to-set with the-serfs and stewards his and-he-found
omnia bona et reditus fructuum non minus dissipata,
all the-goods and the-returns of-the-produce not less scattered
quam si domi esset. Est enim hoc 'genus hominum', ut
than if at-home he-had-been is for this the-kind of-men as
bene Salustius describit, 'mobile et infidum, neque beneficio
well Sallust describes fickle and faithless neither by-kindness
neque metu coercetur'. Praeterea ingurgitationem potus, quod
nor by-fear is-restrained moreover the-guzzling of-drink which
peculiare est vitium illis gentibus, ita est abhominatus
peculiar is the-vice to-those nations so has abhorred

pontifex in eis, ut saepe de illis dicere solitus sit,
the-pontiff in them that often about them to-say accustomed he-was
'quorum venter Deus est.' Nam contentiones et pugnas,
whose belly God is for contentions and fights
oblocutiones et blasphemias, et quaecumque maiora scelera
abuse and blasphemies and whatever greater crimes
commiserint in ebrietate, in crastinum illi pro ludo habent.
they-have-committed in drunkenness on the-morrow they as a-joke hold
Querebatur etiam usque ad sua tempora multos paganorum
he-complained also all-the-way to his times many of-the-pagans
erroribus implicitos, ita ut diem sextae feriae carnis
in-errors entangled so that the-day of-the-sixth weekday of-meat
esu maculerent, ut vigilias sollempnitatesque sanctorum
by-eating they-stained that the-vigils and-solemnities of-the-saints
ac venerabilem quadragesimam gula fornicationeque
and the-venerable Lent with-gluttony and-fornication
polluerent, ut periuria pro nichilo computent, ut effusionem
they-polluted that perjuries for nothing they-reckon that the-shedding
sanguinis in laude habeant; similiter adulteria, incestuositates
of-blood in praise they-hold likewise adulteries incests
aliaeque naturam excedentes immunditiae vix culpantur ab
and-other nature exceeding uncleannesses scarcely are-blamed by
aliquo eorum. Plerique duas vel tres aut innumerabiles simul
any of-them most two or three or countless together
uxores tenent. Item morticina et sanguinem et suffocata
wives hold likewise carrion and blood and things-strangled
carnesque iumentorum licite utuntur. Postremum est, quod
and-the-flesh of-beasts lawfully they-use the-last is that
archiepiscopus adprime doluit super invidia, quam in
the-archbishop especially grieved at the-envy which toward
advenas habent, et quod adhuc duci fideliores erant
strangers they-have and that still to-the-duke more-faithful they-were

quam sibi aut ecclesiae suae. Haec et alia populi delicta
than to-himself or to-church his these and other of-the-people faults
dum saepe metropolitanus in ecclesia declamatorio sermone
while often the-metropolitan in the-church in-declamatory speech
fieri prohiberet, illi correptionem paternam derisioni habere,
to-be-done forbade they correction fatherly in-derision held
nec, ut sacerdotibus aut ecclesiis Dei ullam reverentiam
nor so-that for-priests or churches of-God any reverence
haberent, flecti moverique potuere. Quibus rerum causis
they-might-have to-be-bent and-moved could by-which of-things causes
impellentibus, statuit eis archiepiscopus, ut populo
driving decided toward-them the-archbishop that to-a-people
durae cervicis neque parcendum esse, neque credendum, ita
of-hard neck neither to-be-spared to-be nor to-be-believed so
dicens: 'In chamo et freno maxillas eorum constringe';
saying with bit and bridle the-jaws their constrain
rursumque: 'Visitabo in virga iniquitates eorum'; et alia.
and-again I-shall-visit with the-rod iniquities their and other-things
Itaque inventa occasione, si quis eorum offendisset, eum
and-so found an-occasion if any of-them had-offended him
mox in vincula conici iussit, aut spoliare omnibus bonis,
soon into chains to-be-thrown he-ordered or to-despoil of-all goods
asserens cum risu, afflictionem corporis animae utilem,
asserting with a-laugh affliction of-body for-the-soul useful
dampna bonorum hoc esse purgationem delictorum. Unde
the-losses of-goods this to-be the-purging of-faults whence
factum est, ut praepositi operum, quibus ipse vicem suam
done it-is that the-overseers of-the-works to-whom he office his
commisit, in rapiendo et affligendo modum excesserint.
committed in seizing and afflicting the-measure exceeded

Impletumque est vaticinium, quod ait: ‘Ego iratus sum
and-fulfilled is the-prophecy which says I angered was
parum, ipsi vero adiuverunt me in malum, dicit Dominus’.
a-little they indeed have-helped me into evil says the-Lord

Liber III, §§ 56–58

56–58 · THE PLUNDERING OF BREMEN AND ADALBERT’S RETURN

With nothing left, Adalbert lived on the goods of the congregations. The provostships were wasted, and the famous hospital gave no alms for seven years while the poor died in the streets. His agents stripped rich and poor and drove away the merchants. After three years he regained his place at court, sought peace with the bishop of Cologne, and acquired new estates.

Tunc igitur Bremae commoratus pontifex, cum nil haberet
then therefore at-Bremen staying the-pontiff since nothing he-had
residui, de rapinis pauperum vixit et bonis sanctarum
left from the-plunder of-the-poor he-lived and on-the-goods of-the-holy
congregationum. Praeposituram maiorem episcopii servus
congregations the-provostship greater of-the-bishopric servant
eius quidam Suidger administravit. Is cum, dispersis fratrum
his a-certain Suidger administered he since scattered of-the-brothers
bonis, propter homicidium diaconi esset depositus
goods for the-killing of-a-deacon he-had-been deposed
iterumque restitutus, nec haberet quod fratribus aut domino
and-again restored nor had what to-the-brothers or to-the-lord
servicii daret, conscientiae metu perculsus, aufugit iram
of-service he-might-give of-conscience by-fear struck fled the-wrath
pontificis. Sicque praepositura in ditionem episcopi redacta
of-the-pontiff and-so the-provostship into the-power of-the-bishop brought
per vicarios sua quaerentes miserabiliter eo tempore
through vicars their-own seeking miserably at-that time

laniata est. Similiter per singulas fiebat congregationes;
torn was likewise through each it-was-done congregations
pontifice in praepositos irato, illis autem in vulgus
the-pontiff against the-provosts angered they moreover against the-common-folk
zelantibus, dissipata sunt omnia bona ecclesiae. Huius cladis
raging scattered were all the-goods of-the-church of-this disaster
solum expers erat xenodochium, quod a sancto Ansgario
alone free was the-hospice which by saint Ansgar
primitus inceptum, postea succedentium patrum diligentia
first begun afterward of-the-succeeding fathers by-the-diligence
usque ad novissima tempora domni Adalberti salvum
all-the-way to the-last times of-lord Adalbert safe
permansit et integrum. Et tunc quidem vicedomnus noster,
remained and whole and then indeed steward our
quasi fidelis dispensator et prudens, ad custodiendum
as-if a-faithful steward and prudent for guarding
pauperum elemosinas deputabatur. Non audeo dicere, quantum
of-the-poor the-alms was-appointed not I-dare to-say how-great
peccatum sit defraudare pauperum res, quod alii
a-sin it-may-be to-defraud of-the-poor the-goods which some
canones sacrilegium vocant, alii homicidium; hoc solum fas
canons sacrilege call others murder this alone right
est pace omnium dici fratrum, quia toto septennio,
it-is by-leave of-all to-be-said of-the-brothers that in-the-whole seven-years
quo supervixit archiepiscopus, ex illo famoso et opulento
in-which survived the-archbishop from that famous and wealthy
Bremensis ecclesiae hospitali nulla prorsus data est elemosina.
of-the-Bremen church hospital none at-all given was alms
Quod ex eo miserabile et inhumanum videtur, quoniam
which from that miserable and inhuman seems since
et tempus incubuit famis, et multi pauperes in plateis
both a-time came-upon of-famine and many poor in the-streets

ubique reperti sunt mortui. Ita intento ad curiam pastore
everywhere found were dead so intent on the-court shepherd
nostro, sanctissimi vicarii eius dominicum ovile vastantes,
our the-most-holy vicars his the-Lord's sheepfold laying-waste
more luporum in episcopio grassati sunt, ibi solummodo
in-the-manner of-wolves in the-bishopric rampaged have there only
parcentes, ubi nichil invenerunt, quod posset auferri.
sparing where nothing they-found which could to-be-carried-off
Cerneres eo tempore lamentabilem Bremae tragoediam
you-might-have-seen at-that time a-lamentable at-Bremen tragedy
in afflictionibus civium militumque ac mangonum, item,
in the-afflictions of-the-citizens and-of-the-soldiers and of-the-traders likewise
quod gravius erat, clericorum et sanctimonialium. Et de
what heavier was of-the-clerics and nuns and about
nocentibus quidem iuste actum videtur, ut corriperentur; de
the-guilty indeed justly done it-seems that they-should-be-rebuked about
aliis vero non sic. Primo igitur, si quis divitum putabatur
the-others indeed not so first therefore if any of-the-rich was-thought
innocens, ei aliqua iubebantur, ut nocens fieret,
innocent on-him some-things were-ordered that guilty he-might-become
vix possibilia, quae dum ille praeteriret aut forte impossibilia
scarcely possible which while he passed-over or perhaps impossible
clamaret, statim omnibus bonis exspoliatus est; si murmurare
cried-out at-once of-all goods despoiled was if to-murmur
praesumpsit, in vincula coniectus. Erat autem videre alios
he-presumed into chains thrown it-was moreover to-see others
flagris torqueri, multos in nervum mitti, quosdam pelli
with-whips to-be-tormented many into the-stocks to-be-put some to-be-driven
a domo, plerosque deportari in exilium. Ac velut in
from home most to-be-carried-off into exile and as in
civili Sillae victoria contigit, quem aliquis potentium privato
the-civil of-Sulla victory it-happened whom any of-the-powerful with-private

odio infensum habuit, eum saepe ignorante archiepiscopo
hatred hostile held him often not-knowing the-archbishop
dampnavit, quasi ex eius praecepto. Tum vero, ne aliquis
he-condemned as-if by his command then indeed lest any
sexus aut ordo immunis haberetur in tanto scelere, vidimus
sex or order immune should-be-held in so-great a-crime we-saw
etiam mulierculas auro vestibusque nudatas et infamis
even little-women of-gold and-garments stripped and of-infamous
praedae auctores cum presbyteris vel episcopis existere. Porro
plunder the-authors with presbyters or bishops to-be further
ex illis, quibus ablata sunt bona sua, aut qui durius a
of those from-whom taken-away were goods their or who more-harshly by
quaestore gravati sunt, compertum est nobis, aliquos eorum
the-quaestor burdened were found-out it-is by-us some of-them
nimio dolore permotos in amentiam venisse, quosdam vero
by-excessive grief moved into madness to-have-come some indeed
nuper divites ostiatim mendicasse. Cumque rapinarum
lately rich from-door-to-door to-have-begged and-since of-plunders
quaestio in omnes caderet episcopo subiectos, non transivit
the-inquiry upon all fell to-the-bishop subject not it-passed-over
etiam negotiatores, qui ex omni terrarum parte Bremam
even the-merchants who from every of-the-lands part Bremen
solitis frequentabant mercibus, eos omnes execranda
with-(their)-usual frequented wares them all the-execrable
vicedomnorum exactio coegit saepe nudos abire. Ita civitas a
of-the-stewards exaction forced often naked to-go-away so the-city of
civibus et forum mercibus usque hodie defecisse videtur,
citizens and the-market of-wares all-the-way-to today to-have-failed seems
cum praesertim, si quid nostris intactum superfuit, hoc
since especially if anything to-ours untouched survived this
servi ducis radicitus absumpserint. Et haec omnia cum
the-serfs of-the-duke from-the-root consumed and these-things all though

saepe antea facta sint et praesente archiepiscopo, intolerabiliter
often before done were and present the-archbishop intolerably
autem illo absente ac post diem expulsionis suae.
moreover he absent and after the-day of-expulsion his
Multo igitur labore multisque largitionibus in vanum
with-much therefore labor and-many largesses in vain
consumptis, metropolitanus tandem post triennium expulsionis
spent the-metropolitan at-last after three-years of-expulsion
suae voti compos effectus, in pristinum gradum curiae
his of-(his)-wish possessed made into former rank of-the-court
restitutus est, mox quoque succedentibus prosperis, summam
restored was soon also following prosperities the-sum
rerum, quod est vicedomnatus, iam septies consul meruit.
of-things which is the-stewardship already seven-times consul he-merited
Nactus vero locum dignitatis, in quo magnitudinem animi
having-obtained indeed a-place of-dignity in which the-greatness of-mind
posset ostendere, iam tunc caute ambulandum esse deliberavit
he-could to-show already then cautiously to-be-walked to-be he-resolved
erga principes, ut non offenderet eos sicut prius. Quapropter
toward the-princes that not he-should-offend them as before wherefore
Coloniensi episcopo primum reconciliari voluit, deinde
with-the-Cologne bishop first to-be-reconciled he-wished then
ceteris, in quos ipse, vel potius qui in illum peccasse
with-the-others against whom he or rather who against him to-have-sinned
videbantur. Deinde remotis impedimentis ecclesiae suae, pro
seemed then removed the-hindrances of-church his for
cuius exaltatione tam in ambitu curiae, quam in profusione
whose exaltation as-much in the-canvassing of-the-court as in the-lavishing
pecuniae videbatur improbior, non fuit ociosus. Quo
of-money he-seemed more-shameless not he-was idle at-which
tempore Plisnam, Duspurc, Groningon et Sincicum acquisivit.
time Plisna Duisburg Groningen and Sinzig he-acquired

Wildashusin, praeposituram Bremae vicinam, prope in manibus
the-Wildeshausen provostship to-Bremen neighboring nearly in hands
habuit, et Roseveldon Hammaburc proximam. Ceterum si
he-had and Rosenfeld to-Hamburg nearest however if
diutius haberet vitam, cogitavit etiam Fardensem episcopatum
longer he-should-have life he-thought also the-Verden bishopric
nostrae metropoli subiugare. Postremo in Hammaburc iam
to-our metropolis to-subjugate lastly in Hamburg already
aperte laboravit patriarchatum efficere, aliaque magna et
openly he-labored a-patriarchate to-effect and-other great and
incredibilia, de quibus supra nimis dictum est.
incredible-things about which above too-much said it-is

Liber III, §§ 59–61

59–61 · THE SIGNS BEFORE HIS DEATH

In Adalbert's consulship the emperor met the Danish king at Lüneburg, and Otto and Magnus submitted. He followed the court in a litter and lost Lorsch through the king's delays. Adam lists the signs of his approaching end: his sleepless nights, his credulity, his gifts to the rich, and his fits of anger, though his eloquence lasted to the end.

Accessit hoc ad gloriam praesulis, quod in anno consulatus
came this to the-glory of-the-prelate that in the-year of-consulship
sui famosum illud colloquium caesaris cum rege Danorum
his famous that conference of-the-caesar with the-king of-the-Danes
ad contumeliam ducis habitum est in Luniburc, ubi sub
to the-insult of-the-duke held was in Lüneburg where under
optentu federis contra Saxones arma laudata sunt. Eodemque
the-pretext of-a-treaty against the-Saxons arms agreed-upon were and-in-the-same
anno restincta est illa conspiratio prima in regem facta, in
year extinguished was that conspiracy first against the-king made in

qua dux Otto et Magnus, devastata per annum Saxonia,
which duke Otto and Magnus laid-waste through a-year Saxony
tandem consilio praesulis in potestatem se regis
at-last by-the-counsel of-the-prelate into the-power themselves of-the-king
dederunt. Rex ducatum Ottonis Welpo dedit, archiepiscopus
gave the-king the-duchy of-Otto to-Welf gave archbishop
noster bona ecclesiae recepit, quae ante habuit Magnus.
our the-goods of-the-church received-back which before had Magnus
Itaque in summa rerum gloria positus, licet crebra corporis
and-so in the-highest of-things glory placed although by-frequent of-body
molestia pulsaretur, negotiis tamen publicis deesse noluit,
trouble he-was-beaten to-the-affairs yet public to-be-lacking he-would-not
a Rheno ad Danubium, indeque in Saxoniam cum rege
from the-Rhine to the-Danube and-thence into Saxony with the-king
portatus in lectica. Aiunt quidam, laudatum esse regia
carried in a-litter say some agreed to-be by-royal
sponsione, ut in proxima sollempnitate pascali convenientibus
pledge that at the-next solemnity paschal gathering
apud Traiectum Rheni principibus, ibi confirmarentur ei
at Utrecht of-the-Rhine the-princes there should-be-confirmed to-him
omnia, quae de Lauressa vel Corbeia et ceteris desideravit
all-things which about Lorsch or Corvey and the-others desired
anima eius. Asserunt alii, callidis dilationibus a rege tractum
soul his assert others by-cunning delays by the-king drawn-on
esse pontificem, quo scilicet Lauressam dimittens,
to-have-been the-pontiff whereby namely Lorsch letting-go
ubicumque mallet in regno, bis tantum suae reciperet
wherever he-preferred in the-kingdom twice as-much for-his he-might-receive
ecclesiae donandum, verum ille pertinax incepit, dum nil
church to-be-given but he obstinate in-what-he-began while nothing

aliud velle respondit; tandem frustrato nisu decidens, una
else to-wish he-answered at-last frustrated in-effort falling at-once
et vitam et Lauressam cum ceteris ecclesiae bonis perdidit.
both life and Lorsch with the-other of-the-church goods he-lost
Signa vel prognostica vicinae mortis eius plurima fuerunt,
the-signs or prognostics of-the-near death his very-many were
tam pavorabilia et insolita, ut nos ipsumque pontificem
so frightening and unaccustomed that us and-himself the-pontiff
terrefacere viderentur; tam ingentia et manifesta, ut quisquis
to-terrify they-seemed so huge and manifest that whoever
morum suorum turbulentiam, valitudinis inconstantiam
of-morals his the-turbulence of-health the-inconstancy
diligentius intueretur, procul dubio finem dixerit
more-carefully looked-at far from-doubt the-end would-have-said
adventasse. Siquidem mores viri, licet semper a
to-have-approached since the-morals of-the-man although always from
communi mortalium habitudine dissentirent, circa terminum
the-common of-mortals condition they-differed toward the-end
vero inhumani intolerabilesque et alieni a semet ipso
indeed inhuman and-intolerable and estranged from him himself
videbantur, maxime post diem expulsionis suae vel devastationis
seemed most-of-all after the-day of-expulsion his or of-the-devastation
parrochiae, quae simul comitata est. Post illum, inquam, diem
of-the-diocese which together accompanied has after that I-say day
pudore, ira doloreque maiori quam sapientem virum decuit
by-shame anger and-pain greater than a-wise man befitted
permotus, quia recuperandi bona ecclesiae non invenit
moved because of-recovering the-goods of-the-church not he-found
consilium, ex nimia sollicitudine multiformium angustiarum,
a-plan from excessive anxiety of-manifold straits
non audeo dicere insanus, sed impos mentis effectus est.
not I-dare to-say mad but powerless of-mind made he-was

Porro quae per eum deinde gerebantur, aliqua errantis
further what-things through him then were-done some of-one-erring
vel desipientis poterant videri, quae, ut aestimo, ‘non sani
or being-foolish could to-seem which as I-think not of-a-sane
hominis, non sanus iuret Orestes’. Sicut est illud, quod
man not sane would-swear Orestes as is that which
praefati sumus, quia noctem integram vigilando diemque
said-before we-have that the-night whole in-watching and-the-day
transegit dormiendo. Item illud, quod a veritate quidem
he-spent in-sleeping likewise that that from the-truth indeed
auditum avertens, ad fabulas et somnia conversus est. Item
the-hearing turning-away to tales and dreams turned he-was likewise
illud, quod elemosinarum oblitus in pauperes, omnia quae
that that of-alms forgetful toward the-poor all-things which
habere potuit dispersit in divites, praecipue in adulatores.
to-have he-could he-scattered among the-rich chiefly among the-flatterers
Item illud, quod, dispersis bonis ecclesiae, cum nil haberet
likewise that that scattered the-goods of-the-church when nothing he-had
residui, de rapinis miserorum vixit et legitimis
left from the-plunder of-the-wretched he-lived and from-the-lawful-dues
sanctarum congregationum. Item illud, quod de praepositura
of-the-holy congregations likewise that that from the-provostship
villicationem faciens, et de hospitali praeposituram, non impar
a-stewardship making and from the-hospital a-provostship not unequal
fuit illi, qui ‘diruens aedificat, mutat quadrata rotundis’.
he-was to-him who pulling-down builds changes squares for-rounds
Item illud, quod facilius solito provocatus ad iracundiam,
likewise that that more-easily than-usual provoked to anger
aliquos manu percussit usque ad effusionem sanguinis,
some with-hand he-struck all-the-way to the-shedding of-blood
multos etiam ignominiosis exasperans verbis, non minus se
many also with-shameful exasperating words not less himself

quam illos inhonoravit. Talis ille circa finem totus a se
than them he-dishonored such he toward the-end wholly from himself
alteratus et a pristina virtute pessumdatus, quid vellet aut
altered and from former virtue sunk what he-wished or
nollet, nec sibi nec ulli suorum poterat satis notum
wished-not neither to-himself nor to-any of-his-own could sufficiently known
esse. Ceterum talis erat eloquentia eius usque in finem, ut,
to-be however such was the-eloquence his all-the-way into the-end that
si eum audires contionantem, facile tibi persuaderetur, omnia
if him you-heard haranguing easily you would-be-persuaded all-things
per illum fieri plena ratione magnaque auctoritate.
through him to-be-done with-full reason and-great authority

Liber III, §§ 62–63

62–63 · ADALBERT'S LAST ILLNESS

His brother Frederick blamed Notebald and other flatterers, and rumor called Adalbert a sorcerer, which Adam denies. He fell from his horse, recovered for three years, and ignored a soothsayer's warning. Omens appeared at Bremen, Hamburg was burned and twice laid waste, and at Goslar he refused medicine, shut out the archbishop of Magdeburg and the brethren, and commended his church to the king.

Hanc pernitiosam clarissimi viri commutacionem sive
this pernicious of-the-most-renowned man change or
degressionem et apertius deteriorationem dum per singulas
departure and more-openly worsening while through the-several
orbis provintias fama volans dispergeret, insignis germanus
of-the-world provinces rumor flying scattered the-distinguished brother
eius, scilicet palatinus comes Fridericus, ad corripiendum
his namely the-palatine count Frederick for rebuking
fratrem, sicut memini, pervenit usque Lismonam. Sed frustra
(his)-brother as I-remember came up-to to-Lesum but in-vain

commonens eum de his quae honori eius attinerent
admonishing him about those-things which to-the-honor his pertained
vel saluti, molestus abscessit, Notebaldum suosque pares
or salvation troubled he-went-away Notebald and-his peers
accusans, qui suis maleficiis illustrem virum circumvenirent,
accusing who by-their sorceries the-illustrious man had-surrounded
suisque dementem reddiderint consiliis. Haec ille. Nos
and-by-their mad had-made counsels these-things he we
autem vidimus ipsum pontificem ad tantam illo tempore
moreover saw himself the-pontiff to such at-that time
pervenisse infamiam, ut magicis inservisse artibus diceretur;
to-have-come infamy that magic to-have-served arts he-was-said
a quo crimine, Iesum testor et angelos eius omnesque
from which crime Jesus I-call-to-witness and angels his and-all
sanctos, illum virum prorsus immunem et liberum esse,
the-saints that man wholly immune and free to-be
praesertim cum maleficos et divinos et eiusmodi homines
especially since sorcerers and diviners and of-this-kind men
saepe iudicaret morte esse multandos. Quoniam vero
often he-judged with-death to-be to-be-punished since indeed
scriptum est: ‘Cum sancto sanctus eris, et cum perverso
written it-is with the-holy holy you-shall-be and with the-perverse
perverteris’, arbitror, eum aut malignitate eorum quos
you-shall-be-perverted I-think him either by-the-malignity of-those whom
sibi fideles credidit, aut infestatione inimicorum, qui
to-himself faithful he-believed or by-the-harassment of-the-enemies who
ecclesiam eius impugnabant, a statu solitae rectitudinis
church his attacked from the-state of-accustomed uprightness
primo lapsum, deinde corruisse totum. Tandem saeva
first to-have-slipped then to-have-collapsed wholly at-last by-savage
perturbatione morum infractus, cum simul exterioribus
disturbance of-morals broken when together by-the-outward

fortunae quateretur adversis, quasi navis obruta fluctibus,
of-fortune he-was-shaken adversities like a-ship overwhelmed by-waves
etiam corpore debilitari cepit. Dumque medicorum auxilio
also in-body to-be-weakened he-began and-while of-the-physicians by-the-aid
studuit recuperare valitudinem, propter crebra medicaminum
he-strove to-recover health because-of the-frequent of-medicines
temptamenta graviorem mox incidit infirmitatem, ita ut
trials a-heavier soon he-fell-into infirmity so that
semianimis iacens, in extremis iam fuerit desperatus. [Quo
half-alive lying in extremity already he-was despaired at-which
etiam tempore ad curiam tendens, gravi casu de equo
also time to the-court making-way by-a-heavy fall from (his)-horse
lapsus est.] Tunc ille compunctus amare flevit cum Ezechia,
slipped he-has then he pricked bitterly wept with Hezekiah
correctionemque suae vitae Deo promittens, o solita Christi
and-the-correction of-his life to-God promising O customary of-Christ
clementia, statim convaluit, totumque supervivens triennium,
clemency at-once he-recovered and-the-whole surviving three-years
multa complevit, non tamen omnia quae promisit.
many-things he-fulfilled not yet all-things which he-promised
In diebus illis supervenit quaedam mulier spiritum habens
in days those came-upon a-certain woman a-spirit having
Phitonis; haec voce publica dixit omnibus, celerem
of-Python she with-voice public told all a-swift
archiepiscopo transitum affore infra biennium, nisi
for-the-archbishop passing to-be-at-hand within two-years unless
forte converteretur. Hoc idem contestati sunt medici.
perhaps he-should-be-converted this same-thing attested have the-physicians
Erant autem cum pontifice alii pseudoprophetae, longe
there-were moreover with the-pontiff other false-prophets far
alia promittentes, quibus maior fides habebatur. Hii
other-things promising to-whom greater faith was-held they

siquidem vaticinabantur, illum tam diu victurum, donec
indeed prophesied him so long about-to-live until
poneret omnes inimicos suos scabellum pedum suorum,
he-should-put all enemies his as-the-footstool of-feet his
hancque debilitatem corporis magnam deinde sanitatem vel
and-this weakness of-body great then health or
rerum prosperitatem secuturam. Familiarissimus omnium erat
of-affairs prosperity about-to-follow most-familiar of-all was
Notebaldus, qui multa pontifici saepe vera praedicens,
Notebald who many-things to-the-pontiff often true foretelling
uno et novissimo decepit verbo credentem. Vidimus eo
by-one and last deceived word him-believing we-saw at-that
tempore apud Bremam cruces sudasse lacrimis. Vidimus
time at Bremen crosses to-have-sweated tears we-saw
ecclesiam porcos violasse canesque, adeo ut vix possent
the-church pigs to-have-violated and-dogs so-much that scarcely they-could
ab ipsa altaris crepidine repelli. Vidimus lupos in
from the-very of-the-altar step to-be-driven-back we-saw wolves in
suburbanis loci nostri gregatim ululantes, horribili iurgio
the-suburbs of-place our in-flocks howling in-horrible quarrel
certasse cum bubonibus. Cumque somnia vehementer
to-have-contended with owls and-when dreams vehemently
episcopus attenderet, haec ab omnibus frustra nunciabantur
the-bishop heeded these-things by all in-vain were-announced
in ipsum respicere. Mortui numquam tam familiariter locuti
to him to-point the-dead never so familiarly spoke
sunt cum vivis. Omnia mortem episcopi portendebant.
have with the-living all-things the-death of-the-bishop portended
Nam et Hammaburg eodem anno, quo metropolitanus
for also Hamburg in-the-same year in-which the-metropolitan
decessit, incensa et bis vastata est. Pagani victores
departed burned and twice laid-waste was the-pagans victors

totam Nordalbingiam deinceps habuerunt in sua ditione,
the-whole Nordalbingia thereafter had in their power
bellatoribusque occisis aut in captivitatem ductis, provincia
and-the-warriors slain or into captivity led the-province
in solitudinem redacta est, ut diceres, in boni
into a-wilderness reduced was so-that you-would-say in of-the-good
pastoris fine etiam pacem terris ablatam. Quatuordecim
shepherd the-end even peace from-the-lands taken-away fourteen
dies ante obitum Goslariae positus, ex consuetudine sua nec
days before death at-Goslar placed by custom his neither
potionibus contineri voluit nec flebotomis. Quare gravissimo
by-potions to-be-restrained he-wished nor by-bloodlettings wherefore by-a-most-heavy
dissintheriae morbo correptus, et usque ad ossa tenuatus,
of-dysentery disease seized and all-the-way to the-bones wasted
heu suae prorsus adhuc immemor salutis, rei publicae
alas of-his utterly still unmindful salvation of-the-thing public
negotia tractavit usque ad extremam exitus horam.
the-affairs he-handled all-the-way to the-last of-departure hour
Aderat Magadburgensis archiepiscopus Wecil, et fratrum
was-present of-Magdeburg the-archbishop Wezel and of-the-brothers
alii, petentes, ut intromitterentur; quos tamen ipse, nescio
others asking that they-might-be-admitted whom yet he I-know-not
quibus offensus, excludi praecepit a ianuis, dicens,
by-what offended to-be-shut-out ordered from the-doors saying
se prae immunditia infirmitatis indignum, qui ab aliquo
himself for the-uncleanness of-the-infirmity unworthy who by anyone
videretur. Soli regi concedebatur aditus aegrum visitandi,
should-be-seen alone to-the-king was-granted access of-the-sick-man visiting
quem dilexit eo modo et usque in finem. Illum ergo
whom he-loved in-that way also all-the-way into the-end him therefore

suae fidei ammonens et diuturni servitii, multis gemitibus
of-his fealty admonishing and of-long service with-many groans
commendavit ei ecclesiam suam et bona ecclesiae.
he-commended to-him church his and the-goods of-the-church

Liber III, §§ 64–65

64–65 · ADALBERT'S DEATH

Trusting Notebald's promises of life, Adalbert died alone at Goslar on a Friday while his household sat at table. Adam would gladly write better of him but will not flatter the dead; some say he repented at the last. He laments that his flatterers abandoned him and that only the poor mourn him, and prays for his soul.

Interea feralis aderat dies Aegyptiacis cognata tenebris,
meanwhile the-deathly was-at-hand day to-the-Egyptian akin darkness
qua magnus praesul Adalbertus amarae mortis vicino
in-which the-great prelate Adalbert of-bitter death by-the-near
pulsabatur nuncio. Sensit et ipse solutionem corporis sui
was-struck messenger he-felt also himself the-dissolution of-body his
tam virium defectu quam rerum praesagio dictarum
as-much of-strength by-the-failing as of-things by-the-presage spoken
instare. Sed cum medici trepidarent indicare veritatem,
to-be-at-hand but when the-physicians trembled to-indicate the-truth
solusque promitteret vitam Notebaldus, inter spem vitae
and-alone promised life Notebald between the-hope of-life
mortisque metum vir sapiens iacuit incertus suique
and-of-death fear the-man wise lay uncertain and-of-himself
oblitus. Eheu ignorans, quia 'dies Domini sicut fur, ita in
forgetful alas not-knowing that the-day of-the-Lord as a-thief so in
nocte veniet'; et 'cum dixerint pax et securitas, tunc
the-night shall-come and when they-shall-have-said peace and security then

repentinus superveniet interitus', et alia, quibus praecipitur
sudden shall-come-upon destruction and other-things by-which it-is-commanded
in euangelio, ut vigilemus. 'Nescitis', inquit, 'diem neque
in the-Gospel that we-should-watch you-know-not it-says the-day nor
horam'. Qua in re memor sententiae cuiusdam sancti, non
the-hour in which matter mindful of-the-saying of-a-certain saint not
sine lacrimis huic loco possum aptare: 'Iam,' inquit 'percutitur,
without tears to-this place I-can to-fit now he-says he-is-struck
iam sine penitentia cogitur exire peccator, ut moriens
now without penitence he-is-forced to-go-out the-sinner that dying
obliviscatur sui, qui, dum viveret, oblitus est Dei'. Tali
he-may-forget himself who while he-lived forgot has God in-such
modo gloriosus ille metropolitanus, cum adhuc speraret de
manner the-glorious that metropolitan while still he-hoped about
vita praesenti, die medio sextae feriae, suis ad epulas
life the-present on-the-day middle of-the-sixth weekday his-own at the-feast
sedentibus, ipse in agonia solus iacens, exhalavit spiritum,
sitting himself in agony alone lying breathed-out his-spirit

'Vitaque cum gemitu fugit indignata sub umbras'.
and-life with a-groan flees indignant under the-shades

Eheu quam vellem meliora scribere de tanto viro, qui
alas how I-would-wish better-things to-write about so-great a-man who
et me dilexit et tam clarus in vita sua fuit. Verum timeo,
both me loved and so famous in life his was but I-fear
quia scriptum est: 'Vae illis qui malum bonum dicunt', et:
because written it-is woe to-those who evil good call and
pereant 'qui nigrum in candidum vertunt'. Videturque mihi
let-them-perish who black into white turn and-it-seems to-me
periculosum esse, ut talis homo, qui dum viveret propter
perilous to-be that such a-man who while he-lived because-of

adulationes perditus est, ei nos scribentes aut loquentes
flatteries ruined was him we writing or speaking
post mortem adulari debeamus. Asserunt tamen aliqui, cum
after death to-flatter we-should assert yet some when
ita solus iacuisset, paucos interfuisse arbitros, in quorum
so alone he-had-lain a-few to-have-been-present witnesses in whose
praesentia de omnibus gestorum suorum offendiculis amaram
presence for all of-deeds his the-stumbling-blocks a-bitter
in novissimo gesserit penitentiam, flens et eiulans, se
in the-last he-bore penitence weeping and wailing himself
dies suos perdidisse, tuncque demum cognoscens, quam
the-days his to-have-lost and-then at-last knowing how
parva, immo quam misera est nostri pulveris gloria; 'quia
small rather how wretched is of-our dust the-glory because
omnis caro foenum, et omnis gloria eius quasi flos foeni'.
all flesh (is)-grass and all the-glory of-it like the-flower of-grass
O fallax humanae vitae prosperitas! O fugienda honorum
O deceitful of-human life prosperity O to-be-fled of-honors
ambitio! Quid tibi nunc, o venerabilis pater Adalberte, prosunt
ambition what to-you now O venerable father Adalbert avail
illa quae semper dilexisti, gloria mundi, populorum
those-things which always you-loved the-glory of-the-world of-the-peoples
frequentia, elatio nobilitatis? Nempe solus iaces in alto
the-throng the-elation of-nobility surely alone you-lie in the-high
palatio, derelictus ab omnibus tuis. Ubi sunt autem medici,
palace forsaken by all your-own where are moreover the-physicians
adulatores et ypocritae, qui te laudabant in desideriis animae
the-flatterers and the-hypocrites who you praised in the-desires of-soul
tuae, qui te iuraverunt convaliturum esse de hac infirmitate,
your who you swore about-to-recover to-be from this infirmity
qui te usque ad decrepitam aetatem victurum calcularunt?
who you all-the-way to decrepit age about-to-live reckoned

Omnes, ut video, socii mensae fuerunt, et recesserunt
all as I-see companions of-the-table were and withdrew
in die temptationis. Soli remanserunt inopes et peregrini,
in the-day of-temptation alone remained the-needy and pilgrims
viduae ac orphani, atque omnes oppressi, qui se tua
widows and orphans and all the-oppressed who themselves by-your
morte fatentur esse desolatos. Cum quibus et nos veraciter
death confess to-be desolated with whom also we truly
possumus affirmare, tibi neminem deinceps comparem fore in
can to-affirm to-you no-one thereafter equal to-be in
clementia et largitate peregrinorum, in defensione sanctarum
clemency and generosity toward-pilgrims in the-defense of-the-holy
ecclesiarum et reverentia omnium clericorum, sive qui
churches and reverence of-all clerics or who
male potentium rapinas aut praesumptiones superborum
of-the-wickedly powerful the-plunders or the-presumptions of-the-proud
ita persequatur; postremo qui in divinis humanisque prudenter
so may-pursue lastly who in divine and-human-things prudently
disponendis paratior inveniatur ad omne consilium. Si quid
to-be-arranged readier may-be-found for every counsel if anything
vero in moribus tuis reprehensibile videbatur, hoc magis
indeed in morals your reprehensible seemed this rather
accidit ex eorum nequitia, quibus tu plus iusto credidisti,
happened from of-those the-wickedness whom you more than-just believed
sive quos inimicos propter veritatem sustinuisti. Illi enim
or whom as-enemies for truth you-endured they for
tuum laudabile ingenium suis depravantes insidiis, a
your praiseworthy nature by-their depraving plots from
bono malum effecerant; ideoque oportet nos clementissimum
good evil had-made and-therefore it-behooves us the-most-clement
orare Dominum, ut tibi indulgeat secundum multitudinem
to-pray Lord that you he-may-pardon according-to the-multitude

misericordiae suae, teque in aeterna beatitudine collocet, per
of-mercy his and-you in eternal blessedness may-place through
merita omnium sanctorum suorum, quorum te patrocinio
the-merits of-all saints his to-whose you patronage
devote semper commendasti.
devoutly always have-commended

Liber III, §§ 66–68

66–68 · BURIAL AND REPENTANCE

Adalbert died in 1072; the king took his treasures and the hand of Saint James. He was buried at Bremen, though he wished for Hamburg. Dying, he rued his vain largesse but claimed two thousand manses for his church. In a vision Alebrand refused his offering for his pride, and he then honored his predecessors' anniversaries. After the devastation he lived in grief, wishing to become a monk or a martyr.

Obiit autem clarissimus noster metropolitanus Adalbertus
died moreover the-most-renowned our metropolitan Adalbert
17. Kalend. Aprilis, indictione 10. Hic est annus
on-the-17th Kalends of-April in-the-indiction 10th this is the-year
domini nostri Iesu Christi millesimus 72, Alexandri papae
of-lord our Jesus Christ the-thousandth 72nd of-Alexander the-pope
11, Heinrici regis quarti 17. Praeter libros atque sanctorum
11th of-Henry the-king fourth 17th besides books and of-the-saints
reliquias et vestimenta sacra fere nichil inventum est in
relics and vestments sacred almost nothing found was in
tesauris eiusdem viri. Quae tamen omnia rex accipiens,
the-treasuries of-the-same man which yet all the-king receiving
una cum praeceptis ecclesiae tulit etiam manum sancti
together with the-charters of-the-church took also the-hand of-saint

Iacobi apostoli. Hanc manum, dum esset in Ytalia pontifex,
James the-apostle this hand while he-was in Italy the-pontiff
accepit a quodam Veneciarum episcopo Vitale.
received from a-certain of-Venice bishop Vitalis
Igitur corpus archiepiscopi magno stupore totius regni
therefore the-body of-the-archbishop with-great astonishment of-the-whole kingdom
a Goslaria Bremam portatum, decimo die, quod est
from Goslar to-Bremen carried on-the-tenth day which is
in annuntiatione sanctae Mariae, condigna populorum
on the-annunciation of-holy Mary with-fitting of-the-peoples
frequentatione sepultum est in medio chori novae,
throng buried was in the-middle of-the-choir of-the-new
quam ipse construxit, basilicae; cum tamen affirment, illum
which he built basilica though yet they-affirm him
saepe antea rogasse, ut sepeliretur in urbe metropoli
often before to-have-asked that he-might-be-buried in the-city metropolis
Hammaburg, quam, sicut decessores sui, omni semper
Hamburg which as predecessors his with-every always
amore censuit esse colendam. Ibi namque, dum adhuc viveret,
love he-judged to-be to-be-cherished there for while still he-lived
plerumque totam aestatem transigens, praecipuas sollempnitates
mostly the-whole summer spending the-chief solemnities
cum magna gloria celebravit. Ibi promotiones ecclesiasticorum
with great glory he-celebrated there the-promotions of-ecclesiastical
ordinum legitimis temporibus gravi prorsus reverentia
orders at-lawful times with-grave utterly reverence
sepius implevit. Ibi tempus et locum, quo a nostris
quite-often he-fulfilled there the-time and place in-which by our
ducibus seu a proximis Sclavorum gentibus sive a ceteris
dukes or by the-nearest of-the-Slavs nations or by the-other
arctoae gentis legatis adiri posset, ex more constituit.
of-the-northern nation envoys to-be-approached he-could by custom he-established

Tantum honorem destructae urbi tantumque amorem habens
so-great honor to-the-destroyed city and-so-great love having
exhaustae matri, ut in illa diceret impletum scripturae
for-the-exhausted mother that in her he-said fulfilled of-scripture
vaticinium, quae dicit: 'Laetare sterilis, quae non paris, quia
the-prophecy which says rejoice barren-one who not you-bear for
multi filii desertae, magis quam eius quae habet virum'.
many the-sons of-the-deserted-one more than of-her who has a-husband
Ferunt, eum ante obitus sui diem vix tercium decubuisse,
they-report him before of-death his the-day scarcely the-third to-have-taken-to-bed
quod a lecto surgere nequiverit. Nam tanta in viro
that from the-bed to-rise he-could-not for so-great in the-man
animi fortitudo fuit, ut in gravissima corporis infirmitate
of-mind strength was that in the-most-grievous of-body infirmity
numquam ab aliquo vellet sustineri, numquam emitteret
never by anyone he-wished to-be-supported never he-uttered
vocem doloris. Cumque iacens in extremis horam vocationis
a-cry of-pain and-when lying in extremity the-hour of-calling
suae iam sentiret imminentem, crebris iteravit suspiriis:
his already he-felt impending with-frequent he-repeated sighs
'Heu', inquiens, 'infelicem et miserum, qui tantas in vanum
alas he-said unhappy-me and wretched who so-great in vain
largitiones consumpsi; potui vero esse beatus, si ea
largesses consumed I-could indeed to-be blessed if those-things
pauperibus disperserim, quae pro gloria saeculi distraxisse
to-the-poor I-had-scattered which for the-glory of-the-world to-have-squandered
me doleo. Nunc autem illum adhibeo testem, cuius oculus
I I-grieve now moreover him I-call-in as-witness whose eye
profunda intuetur abyssi, quod tota intentio cordis mei
the-depths beholds of-the-abyss that the-whole intention of-heart my
fuit pro exaltatione ecclesiae meae. Quae licet, mea culpa
was for the-exaltation of-church my which although my fault

exigente, vel odio inimicorum praevalente, nimis extenuata
demanding or the-hatred of-enemies prevailing too-much diminished
videatur, sunt tamen amplius quam duo milia mansi,
it-may-seem there-are yet more than two thousand manses
quos ex mea haereditate vel meo labore gratulor adiectos
which from my inheritance or my labor I-rejoice added
ecclesiae'. Quo sapientis viri sermone potest cognosci, quia,
to-the-church by-which of-the-wise man word it-can to-be-known that
si peccavit in aliquibus ut homo, saepe ut bonus homo
if he-sinned in some-things as a-man often as a-good man
penituit de erratis. [Cuius rei exemplum habeo unum, quod
he-repented of errors of-which thing an-example I-have one that
in principio introitus sui, cum esset vir superbissimus,
in the-beginning of-entry his since he-was a-man most-proud
arrogantia sua multos sibi mortales fecit contrarios.
by-arrogance his many to-himself mortals he-made adverse
Unde etiam pro nobilitatis suae gloria unum dixit verbum,
whence also for of-nobility his the-glory one he-said word
quod utinam non dixisset: omnes scilicet episcopos, qui
which would-that not he-had-said all namely the-bishops who
ante eum praesederunt, obscuros fuisse ac ignobiles,
before him had-presided obscure to-have-been and ignoble
solum se generis et divitiarum titulis excellere, porro
alone himself of-birth and of-riches in-titles to-excel further
dignum qui maiorem sortiretur cathedram vel ipsam sedem
worthy who a-greater should-obtain chair or the-very see
apostolicam. Talia non semel iactantem visio dicitur magna
apostolic such-things not once boasting a-vision is-said great
perterruisse, quam pro sui magnitudine, cum et veraciter
to-have-terrified which for its greatness since also truly
nobis comperta esset, hic adiungere non supersedi. Vidit
to-us found-out it-was here to-add not I-have-forborne he-saw

igitur nocte intempesta se in conventum ecclesiae raptum,
therefore at-night unseasonable himself into the-assembly of-the-church carried
ubi missarum sollempnia deberent celebrari, astantibus
where of-masses the-solemnities ought to-be-celebrated standing-by
quatuordecim suis ex ordine decessoribus, ita ut proximus qui
fourteen his in order predecessors so that the-nearest who
ante ipsum fuerat Alebrandus perageret illa quae ad missas
before him had-been Alebrand performed those which at masses
fieri solent mysteria. Cumque lecto euangelio sacerdos
to-be-done are-wont mysteries and-when read the-Gospel the-priest
Dei ad suscipienda offerentium munera conversus pervenisset
of-God for receiving of-the-offerers the-gifts turned had-come
ad domnum Adalbertum, qui stabat in ultimo chori loco,
to lord Adalbert who stood in the-last of-the-choir place
mox torvis in eum luminibus intuens, oblationem eius
soon with-grim on him eyes looking the-offering his
reppulit, dicens: 'Tu homo nobilis et clarus non potes habere
repelled saying you a-man noble and famous not can to-have
partem cum humilibus', et abscessit in haec verba. Sane
a-part with the-humble and he-withdrew with these words truly
ex illa hora penitens super his quae incaute protulit
from that hour repenting over these-things which incautiously he-uttered
verbis, omnes decessores suos in ingenti veneratione habuit,
in-words all predecessors his in huge veneration he-held
seque multis gemitibus testabatur indignum sanctorum
and-himself with-many groans he-testified unworthy of-the-holy
consortio virorum. Unde etiam mox statuit, per singulos
fellowship of-men whence also soon he-decreed on the-several
antecessorum anniversarios dies de corte Bromstede convivia
of-(his)-predecessors anniversary days from the-estate Bramstedt feasts
dari fratribus plenissima atque pauperibus, quod prius a
to-be-given to-the-brothers most-full and to-the-poor which before by

penitus nullo episcopo solebat exhiberi.] Nam et alia multa
utterly no bishop was-wont to-be-shown for also other many
reliquit signa penitentiae vel conversionis suae; ex quibus hoc
he-left signs of-penitence or of-conversion his of which this
memorabile est, quod post vastationem ecclesiae vel diem
memorable is that after the-devastation of-the-church or the-day
expulsionis suae, cum superviveret quinquennium, numquam
of-expulsion his though he-survived five-years never
est balneis usus, numquam est hylaris visus, raro processit in
has baths used never was cheerful seen rarely he-went-out into
publicum vel ad convivium, nisi ad curiam isset aut diei
public or to a-feast unless to the-court he-had-gone or of-a-day
festi necessitas poposcisset. [O quotiens vidimus cum planctu
festal the-need had-demanded O how-often we-saw with lament
faciem turbatam, si quando vastationis ecclesiae recordatus
the-face troubled if ever of-the-devastation of-the-church remembered
est, sive cum ipsos vastatores conspexisset? In die festo
he-has or when the-devastators themselves he-had-seen on the-day festal
natalis Domini, cum Magnus dux adesset praesens itemque
of-the-birth of-the-Lord when Magnus the-duke was-present in-person and-likewise
magna coesset recumbentium multitudo, hilares convivae
a-great was-gathered of-those-reclining multitude the-merry banqueters
pro sua consuetudine finitis epulis plausum cum voce
according-to their custom finished the-feast applause with voice
levaverunt, quod tamen non parum displicuit archiepiscopo.
raised which yet not little displeased the-archbishop
Itaque innuens fratribus nostris, qui simul aderant, praecepit
and-so nodding to-the-brothers our who together were-present he-ordered
cantori, ut imponeret antiphonam: 'Hymnum cantate
the-cantor that he-should-intone the-antiphon a-hymn sing
nobis'. At vero laicis denuo perstrepentibus, inchoari
for-us but indeed the-laymen again making-a-din to-be-begun

fecit: ‘Sustinuimus pacem et non venit’. Tercio vero
he-had we-waited-for peace and not it-came the-third-time indeed
cum adhuc in poculis ululârent, multum iratus, levari
when still in (their)-cups they-howled much angered to-be-raised
mensam praecepit, magna voce pronuncians: ‘Converte’,
the-table he-ordered with-great voice pronouncing turn
inquit, ‘Domine, captivitatem nostram’; respondente choro:
he-says O-Lord captivity our answering the-choir
‘sicut torrens in austro’. Ita ille, nobis pone sequentibus,
as the-torrent in the-south so he with-us behind following
in oratorium reclusus, flevit amare. ‘Non cessabo a fletu’,
into the-oratory shut-in wept bitterly not I-shall-cease from weeping
ait, ‘donec iustus iudex fortis et patiens liberabit ecclesiam
he-said until the-just judge strong and patient shall-free church
meam, vel potius suam, quam pastore contempto videt
my or rather his-own which the-shepherd despised he-sees
miserabiliter a lupis discerpi. Impletum est enim desiderium
miserably by wolves to-be-torn fulfilled is for the-desire
eorum, qui dixerunt: ‘Haereditate possideamus sanctuarium
of-those who said by-inheritance let-us-possess the-sanctuary
Dei, et quiescere faciamus omnes dies festos Dei a
of-God and to-cease let-us-make all the-days festal of-God from
terra, et disperdamus eos de gente, et non memoretur
the-land and let-us-destroy them from the-nation and not let-be-remembered
nomen Israel ultra’. Exurge: quare obdormis, Domine, et
the-name of-Israel any-more arise why sleep-you O-Lord and
ne repellas in finem. Quia superbia eorum qui te oderunt
not repel unto the-end for the-pride of-them who you hate
ascendit semper. Miserere nostri, quoniam multum repleti
ascends always have-mercy on-us since much filled
sumus despectione. Quoniam quem tu percussisti, persecuti
we-are with-contempt since him-whom you have-struck persecuted

sunt, et super dolorem vulnerum meorum addiderunt'. Haec
they-have and upon the-pain of-wounds my they-have-added these
et alia nos in illo compunctionis tempore lamenta saepe
and other-things we in that of-compunction time laments often
contemplati sumus, adeo ut monachus multotiens fieri
beheld we-have so-much that a-monk many-times to-become
desideraverit. Aliquando etiam optabat, ut in ministerio
he-desired sometimes also he-wished that in the-ministry
legationis suae aut in Sclavania vel in Suedia sive in ultima
of-mission his either in Slavia or in Sweden or in farthest
Island obire mereretur. Saepe vero talis erat voluntas eius,
Iceland to-die he-might-merit often indeed such was the-will his
qui pro veritate vel decollari malle non dubitaverit in
who for truth even to-be-beheaded to-prefer not would-have-hesitated in
Christi confessione. Ceterum novit ille cognitor omnium
of-Christ confession however knows he the-knower of-all
secretorum Deus, si melior fuit in conspectu suo, quam
secrets God if better he-was in sight his than
apparuit coram hominibus. Homo namque videt in facie,
he-appeared before men man for sees in the-face
Deus autem in corde.]
God moreover in the-heart

Liber III, § 70

70 · THE MISSION UNDER ADALBERT

Adam asks the reader's pardon for so varied a portrait. Adalbert had planned to visit the whole north himself, but the king of the Danes persuaded him to send men of the people's own tongue. He ordained twenty bishops for Denmark, Sweden, Norway, the Orkneys, and Iceland, planned a synod at Schleswig, kept three bishops at his side, and served both pope and king.

Ignosce igitur, quaeso, lector, si tam diversi hominis diversam
pardon therefore I-pray reader if of-so diverse a-man a-diverse
hystoriam diverso themate compaginans; cum non potui
history with-diverse theme putting-together since not I-could
breviter aut dilucide, ut ars praecipit, omnem operam dedi,
briefly or clearly as art prescribes all effort I-gave
ut scriberem veraciter, secundum quod scientia et opinio se
that I-might-write truly according-to what knowledge and opinion itself
habet in hac parte; quamvis multa reticens ad ea
holds in this part although many-things keeping-silent to those-things
praesertim festinarim, quae generaliter posteris ad sciendum
especially I-have-hastened which generally to-posterity for knowing
sunt digna, vel spetialiter ad retinendum Hammaburgensi
are worthy or especially for retaining to-the-Hamburg
ecclesiae utilia. Postremo, si qua sunt quae auditori
church useful lastly if any-things there-are which to-the-hearer
displiceant in male gestis et fortasse peius descriptis,
displease in badly done-things and perhaps worse described
summopere te moneo et postulo, ut, dum scriptorem
most-earnestly you I-admonish and ask that while the-writer
vituperas, tu vitiose dicta corrigas; dum illum, de quo
you-blame you the-faultily said-things may-correct while him about whom

scribitur, accusas, in sapientis viri casu tu cautior fias,
it-is-written you-accuse in of-a-wise man the-fall you more-cautious may-become
considerans te ipsum, ne et tu condempneris.
considering you yourself lest also you be-condemned
[In legatione autem Hammaburgensis ecclesiae, quae ad
in the-mission moreover of-the-Hamburg church which to
gentes fieri solet, quamvis magnus pontifex Adalbertus
the-nations to-be-done is-wont although the-great pontiff Adalbert
vigilanter omnes decessores suos laborasse cognoverit, ipse
watchfully all predecessors his to-have-labored knew he
tamen magnificentius quam ceteri potentiam archiepiscopalem
yet more-magnificently than the-others the-power archiepiscopal
longe lateque in exteras protendebat nationes. Quam ob
far and-wide into foreign extended nations for which
rem tractavit sedulo per se ipsum ingredi legationem
reason he-planned assiduously by him himself to-enter-upon mission
illam, si quam necdum conversis posset gentibus afferre
that if any to-the-not-yet converted he-could nations to-bring
salutem aut iam conversis addere perfectionem. Ad
salvation or to-the-already converted to-add perfection for
quod laboriosum iter peragendum, solita gloriari coepit
which laborious journey to-be-accomplished with-his-usual to-glory he-began
iactantia: primum fuisse Ansgarium, deinde Rimbertum,
boasting first to-have-been Ansgar then Rimbert
postea Unni, se vero quartum euangelistam postulari,
afterward Unni himself indeed as-the-fourth evangelist to-be-demanded
quia ceteros decessores suos viderit per suffraganeos, non
because the-other predecessors his he-had-seen through suffragans not
per se tanto oneri insudasse. Itaque iam certus
through themselves at-so-great a-burden to-have-toiled and-so already sure
eundi, vitam suam disposuit taliter finire, ut circuiens
of-going life his he-arranged so to-finish that going-round

latitudinem septentrionis, hoc est Daniam, Suediam et
the-breadth of-the-north that is Denmark Sweden and
Nordmanniam pertransiens, inde ad Orchadas extremamque
Norway passing-through thence to the-Orkneys and-the-farthest
orbis patriam Island posset attingere. Illi enim suo
of-the-world fatherland Iceland he-could to-reach they for in-his
tempore et suo labore conversi sunt ad fidem christianam.
time and by-his labor converted were to the-faith Christian
A cuius perfectione itineris, quod iam publice moliebatur,
from of-which the-completion journey which already publicly he-was-undertaking
de hortatu prudentissimi regis Danorum commodo deflexus
at the-urging of-the-most-prudent king of-the-Danes advantageously turned-aside
est, qui dixit ei, barbaras gentes facilius posse converti
was who told him the-barbarian nations more-easily to-be-able to-be-converted
per homines suae linguae morumque similium quam
through men of-their tongue and-of-morals like than
per ignotas ritumque nationis abhorrentes personas; itaque
through unknown and-the-rite of-the-nation abhorring persons and-so
nil illi opus esse, nisi ut sua largitate et affabilitate
nothing for-him need to-be except that by-his generosity and affability
redderet illos benivolos et fideles, quos ad praedicandum
he-should-render those well-disposed and faithful whom for preaching
gentibus verbum Dei paratos inveniret. In qua exhortatione
to-the-nations the-word of-God ready he-should-find in which exhortation
metropolitanus noster orthodoxo regi consentiens, ea largitate,
metropolitan our to-the-orthodox king agreeing that generosity
quam in omnes habuit, multo indulgentius uti coepit
which toward all he-had much more-indulgently to-use began
in episcopos gentium et legatos orientalium regum. Quos
toward the-bishops of-the-nations and the-envoys of-eastern kings whom
tanta hilaritate singulos recepit, tenuit dimisitque, ut
with-so-much cheerfulness each he-received held and-dismissed that

eum, posthabito papa, quasi patrem multorum populorum
him set-aside the-pope as-if the-father of-many peoples
ultro universi expeterent, ingentia viro munera
of-their-own-accord all should-seek huge to-the-man gifts
offerentes eiusque benedictionem reportantes pro munere.
offering and-his benediction carrying-back as gift
Archiepiscopus itaque in legatione sua talis erat, qualem
the-archbishop and-so in mission his such was as
et tempora et mores hominem mallent habere, ita
both the-times and the-morals a-man would-prefer to-have so
affabilis, ita munificus, ita hospitalis erga omnes homines,
affable so munificent so hospitable toward all men
ut parvula Brema ex illius magnitudine instar Romae
that little Bremen from his greatness in-the-likeness of-Rome
divulgata, ab omnibus terrarum partibus catervatim peteretur,
spread-abroad by all of-the-lands parts in-crowds was-sought
maxime a septentrionalibus populis. Inter quos extremi
most-of-all by the-northern peoples among whom the-farthest
venerant Islani, Gronlani Gothorumque et Orchadum legati,
had-come Icelanders Greenlanders and-of-the-Goths and of-the-Orkneys envoys
petentes, ut illuc praedicatores dirigeret; quod et statim
asking that thither preachers he-should-direct which also at-once
fecit. Nam et in Daniam, Suediam et Nordwegiam et
he-did for both into Denmark Sweden and Norway and
in insulas maris ordinavit episcopos multos; de quibus
into the-islands of-the-sea he-ordained bishops many about whom
et ipse gaudens dicere solebat: 'Messis quidem multa,
also himself rejoicing to-say he-was-wont the-harvest indeed great
operarii autem pauci. Rogate ergo Dominum messis,
the-workers but few pray therefore the-Lord of-the-harvest
ut mittat operarios in messem suam'. Quorum speciosa
that he-send workers into harvest his by-whose beautiful

multitudine tandem exhilaratus pontifex, primus omnium
multitude at-last gladdened the-pontiff first of-all
statuit in Dania synodum celebrare cum suffraganeis suis,
decided in Denmark a-synod to-celebrate with suffragans his
quoniam et temporis opportunitatem habuit, et quoniam
since both of-time the-opportunity he-had and since
illud regnum sufficientibus habundaret episcopis, et quoniam
that kingdom with-sufficient abounded bishops and since
multa corrigi necesse fuerat in novella plantatione, sicut
many-things to-be-corrected necessary had-been in the-new planting as
hoc, quod episcopi benedictionem vendunt, et quod populi
this that the-bishops benediction sell and that the-peoples
decimas dare nolunt, et quod in gula et mulieribus
tithes to-give refuse and that in gluttony and women
enormiter omnes excedunt. Ad quae omnia Romani papae
enormously all exceed for which all-things of-the-Roman pope
fultus auctoritate, regisque Danorum promptissimum
supported by-the-authority and-of-the-king of-the-Danes the-most-ready
sperans auxilium, magnificum prorsus, ut semper solebat,
hoping aid a-magnificent wholly as always he-was-wont
concilium fieri voluit omnium aquilonalium episcoporum.
council to-be-made he-wished of-all the-northern bishops
Soli diucius expectabantur transmarini. Ea res hactenus
alone longer were-awaited the-overseas-ones that thing so-far
synodum remorata est; ad cuius rei fidem praesto sunt
the-synod delayed has to of-which thing the-proof at-hand are
epistolae, quas papa in Daniam legavit episcopis ad synodum
the-letters which the-pope into Denmark sent to-the-bishops to the-synod
rebellibus, et ipsius archiepiscopi litterae aliis directae. Ex
rebellious and of-the-very of-the-archbishop the-letters to-others directed of
quibus duarum exemplar hic ponere duxi necessarium:
which of-two the-copy here to-set I-have-thought necessary

‘Alexander episcopus, servus servorum Dei, omnibus episcopis
Alexander bishop servant of-the-servants of-God to-all bishops
in regno Danorum constitutis, apostolicae sedi et nostro
in the-kingdom of-the-Danes established to-the-apostolic see and to-our
vicario obedientibus, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem.
vicar obedient greeting and apostolic benediction
Adalbertus, Hammaburgensis archiepiscopus venerabilis, vicarius
Adalbert of-Hamburg archbishop venerable vicar
noster, litteris et legatis suis conquestus est, quod quidam
our by-letters and envoys his complained has that a-certain
Edbertus, Farriensis episcopus, multis criminibus involutus,
Edbert of-Heligoland bishop in-many crimes entangled
ad synodum suam per triennium vocatus venire contempserit;
to synod his for three-years called to-come disdained
quod quia consilio quorundam vestrorum dicitur esse
which because by-the-counsel of-certain of-you it-is-said to-be
factum, mandamus et apostolica auctoritate praecipimus,
done we-enjoin and by-apostolic authority we-command
ut ab huiusmodi recedatis omnino consilio, eumque ad
that from such you-withdraw wholly counsel and-him to
audientiam praedicti fratris nostri ire admoneatis, quatinus
the-hearing of-the-aforesaid brother our to-go you-admonish so-that
post factam examinationem canonice iudicetur’. Et alia,
after made examination canonically he-be-judged and other-things
quibus ibidem praecipitur, ut ei obediant et subiectionem
in-which there it-is-commanded that him they-obey and subjection
exhibeant. Item aliarum litterarum exemplar:
show likewise of-the-other letter the-copy
‘Adalbertus, sanctae Romanae et apostolicae sedis legatus,
Adalbert of-the-holy Roman and apostolic see legate
necnon universarum septentrionalium nationum archiepiscopus,
and-also of-all northern nations archbishop

Hammaburgensis quoque ecclesiae provisor indignus, W.
of-the-Hamburg also church overseer unworthy to-W.
Roskildensi episcopo salutem. Ad synodum, quam apud
of-Roskilde bishop greeting to the-synod which at
Sleswich celebrandam esse constitui, vos venisse aut
Schleswig to-be-celebrated to-be I-have-decreed you to-have-come or
nuncium vestrum misisse, grato animo perciperem. Sed
messenger your to-have-sent with-grateful mind I-would-perceive but
de hoc alias. Nunc autem fraternitatem vestram latere
about this elsewhere now moreover from-brotherhood your to-be-hidden
nolo, quid molestiae mihi Adalwardus episcopus intulit,
I-wish-not what of-trouble to-me Adalward the-bishop brought
quem vobis teste, qui ordinationi eius interfuistis,
whom you being-witness who at-the-ordination his were-present
Sictonensis ecclesiae consecravi pontificem. Quem dum
of-the-Sigtuna church I-consecrated pontiff whom when
barbara gens sibi praeesse noluit, Scariensem ecclesiam
the-barbarous nation over-itself to-preside refused the-Skara church
invadere coepit. Peto igitur, ut nuncium meum, qui illuc
to-invade began I-ask therefore that the-messenger my who thither
iturus est, ad Dalbogiensem velitis episcopum dirigere'.
about-to-go is to the-Dalby you-may-wish bishop to-direct
Haec habui de synodo quae dicerem, cum et alia multa
these-things I-had about the-synod which I-might-say though also other many
sint, quae fastidii causa omitto.
there-be which of-weariness for-the-sake I-omit
Isti vero, quos metropolitanus ad gentes ordinavit, plures
those indeed whom the-metropolitan for the-nations ordained more
sunt, quorum sedes et nomina didicimus ipso narrante.
are whose sees and names we-have-learned himself telling
In Dania itaque novem constituit, Ratolfum ad Sleswich
in Denmark and-so nine he-established Ratolf at Schleswig

civitatem, Oddonem ad civitatem Ripam, Christianum ad
the-city Odo at the-city Ribe Christian at
civitatem Arhusin, Heribertum ad Wibergh civitatem, Magnum
the-city Aarhus Heribert at Viborg the-city Magnus
monachum et Albricum in Wendilam insulam, Eilbertum
a-monk and Albric for Vendsyssel the-island Eilbert
monachum in Farriam et Fiunem insulas, Willelmum
a-monk for Heligoland and Funen the-islands William
in insulam Seland, Eginonem in Scaniam provinciam. In
for the-island Zealand Egino for Scania the-province into
Suediam consecravit sex: Adalwardum et Acilinum, item
Sweden he-consecrated six Adalward and Acilin likewise
Adalwardum et Tadicum necnon Symeonem atque Iohannem
Adalward and Tadicus and-also Simeon and John
monachum. In Norwegiam duos tantum ipse consecravit,
a-monk into Norway two only he-himself consecrated
Tholf et Sewardum. Ceterum aliunde ordinatos, cum sibi
Tholf and Seward however elsewhere ordained when to-him
satisfacerent, et secum misericorditer tenuit, et abeuntes
they-made-amends both with-himself mercifully he-held and departing
dimisit hilariter; sicut Meinardum, Osmundum, Bernardum
dismissed cheerfully as Meinhard Osmund Bernard
et Asgotum aliosque multos. Praeterea Thurolfum quendam
and Asgot and-others many besides Thorolf a-certain
posuit ad Orchadas. Illuc etiam misit Iohannem in Scotia
he-set at the-Orkneys thither also he-sent John in Scotland
ordinatum et alium quendam Adalbertum, cognominem
ordained and another a-certain Adalbert namesake
suum. Isleph ad Island insulam. Sunt episcopi quos omnes
his Isleif to Iceland the-island there-are bishops whom all
ordinavit viginti, quorum tres abortivi et extra vineam
he-ordained twenty of-whom three abortive and outside the-vineyard

ociosi remanserunt, sua quaerentes, non quae Iesu
idle remained their-own-things seeking not those of-Jesus
Christi. Quos universos gloriosus archiepiscopus decenti
Christ whom all the-glorious archbishop with-fitting
honore habens, ad praedicandum barbaris verbum Dei
honor holding for preaching to-the-barbarians the-word of-God
prece et praemio commonebat. Ita saepissime vidimus
by-prayer and reward he-admonished so most-often we-saw
cum quatuor aut quinque stipatum episcopis; prout ipsum
with four or five surrounded bishops as him
audivimus dicentem, absque multitudine esse non posse.
we-heard saying without a-multitude to-be not to-be-able
Cum vero eos a se dimiserat, solito molestior
when indeed them from himself he-had-dismissed than-usual more-troubled
esse propter solitudinem videbatur. Numquam tamen carere
to-be because-of loneliness he-seemed never yet to-lack
maluit vel tribus, quorum frequentissimi erant Tangwardus
he-preferred even three of-whom most-frequent were Tangward
Brandenburgensis, vir sapiens et comes episcopi etiam
of-Brandenburg a-man wise and companion of-the-bishop even
ante episcopatum; alter erat Iohannes, quidam Scotorum
before the-bishopric the-second was John a-certain of-the-Scots
episcopus, vir simplex et timens Deum, qui postea in
bishop a-man simple and fearing God who afterward into
Sclavaniam missus, ibidem cum principe Gotescalco interfectus
Slavia sent there with prince Gottschalk slain
est; tercius Bovo nomen habuit, incertum unde natus
was the-third Bovo name had uncertain whence born
aut ubi ordinatus, qui se tamen peregrinationis amore
or where ordained who himself yet of-pilgrimage for-love
Iherosolimam ter accessisse iactabat, indeque Babiloniam
to-Jerusalem thrice to-have-gone boasted and-thence to-Babylon

deportatum a Sarracenis, tandemque solutum multas per
carried-off by the-Saracens and-at-last freed many through
orbem transisse provincias. Hos tres, cum non essent
the-world to-have-passed provinces these three since not they-were
eius suffraganei, comperimus eum, quod sedes proprias non
his suffragans we-have-found him because sees their-own not
haberent, maiori fovisse clementia. Eodemque studio
they-had with-greater to-have-cherished clemency and-with-the-same zeal
benignitatis utebatur erga Romanae sedis legatos. Quorum
of-kindness he-used toward of-the-Roman see legates whose
clientelam et contubernium in summo coluit amicitiarum
clientship and fellowship in the-highest he-cultivated of-friendships
loco, pariter gloriatus, se duos tantum habere dominos,
place equally having-boasted himself two only to-have lords
hoc est papam et regem, quorum dominio iure subiaceant
that is the-pope and the-king to-whose lordship by-right are-subject
omnes seculi et ecclesiae potestates; illos nimirum sibi
all of-the-world and of-the-church powers those surely to-himself
esse timori ac honori. Apparuit hoc in fide viri, quam
to-be for-fear and for-honor appeared this in the-faith of-the-man which
ita integram servavit utrisque, ut auctoritati apostolicae nichil
so whole he-kept to-both that to-authority apostolic nothing
praeponens, antiqui honoris privilegia sedi apostolicae
preferring of-ancient honor the-privileges for-the-see apostolic
contenderet integra servari debere, eiusque legatos summo
he-contended whole to-be-kept to-be-obliged and-its legates with-highest
recipiendos amore censeret. Maiestatem vero imperatoriam
to-be-received love he-judged the-majesty indeed imperial
quanti faceret, episcopatus eius testis est, ideo vel
how-much he-valued the-bishopric his witness is for-this-reason even
maxime destructus, quod a fidelitate regis nec minis nec
most-of-all destroyed that from loyalty to-the-king neither by-threats nor

blandimentis principum rescindi potuit. Formidolosa est enim
by-blandishments of-the-princes to-be-cut-off he-could fearful is for
malis regia potestas. Unde etiam frequentes in regno
to-the-wicked royal power whence also frequent in the-kingdom
conspirationes fieri solent. Quibus ipse tamen nec in
conspiracies to-be-made are-wont in-which he yet not-even in
verbo communicare umquam voluit. Pro cuius fidei merito a
word to-share ever wished for whose faith merit by
rege quidem ut maior domus in palatio constitutus, dono
the-king indeed as the-chief of-the-house in the-palace established by-gift
eius multa bona lucrabatur Bremensi ecclesiae, de quibus
his many goods he-gained for-the-Bremen church about which
supra plenius dictum est. A papa vero meruit hoc dignitatis
above more-fully said it-is from the-pope indeed he-merited this of-dignity
privilegium, ut totum ius suum domnus apostolicus in
privilege that all right his lord apostolic into
illum transfunderet successoresque eius, adeo ut ipse per
him should-pour-across and-successors his so-much that he through
totum aquilonem, in quibus locis oportunum videbatur, sepe
the-whole north in what places fitting it-seemed often
invitis regibus, episcopatus constitueret, ordinaretque episcopos
unwilling the-kings bishoprics should-establish and-should-ordain bishops
ex capella sua quos vellet electos. Quorum ordinationes
from chapel his whom he-wished chosen whose ordinations
vel sedes, quoniam huc usque distulimus, non incongruum
or sees since hither up-to we-have-deferred not unfitting
videtur, simul etiam de situ Daniae vel reliquarum,
it-seems together also about the-situation of-Denmark or of-the-other
quae trans Daniam sunt, regionum natura scribere.]
which beyond Denmark are regions the-nature to-write

Liber IV, §§ 1–3

1–3 · JUTLAND AND HELIGOLAND

Denmark lies mostly in islands. Jutland stretches north from the Eider, barren but with great cities at its harbors; Otto divided it into the sees of Schleswig, Ribe, and Aarhus, and Adalbert later made four of Ribe's diocese. Adam describes Heligoland, Fositesland in the Life of Willibrord, whence no pirate who takes plunder returns home unharmed.

Si placet haec quarti maneant primordia libri.
if it-pleases these of-the-fourth may-remain the-beginnings of-the-book

Provintia Danorum tota fere in insulas dispertita est, sicut
the-province of-the-Danes whole almost into islands divided is as
etiam legitur in Gestis sancti Anscarii. Hanc autem Daniam
also it-is-read in the-Deeds of-saint Ansgar this moreover Denmark
a nostris Nordalbingis flumen Egdore dirimit, quod oritur
from our Nordalbingians the-river Eider divides which rises
in profundissimo saltu paganorum Isarnho, quem dicunt
in the-deepest forest of-the-pagans Isarnho which they-say
extendi secus mare barbarum usque ad Sliam lacum.
to-extend along the-sea barbarian all-the-way to the-Schlei lake
Ceterum flumen Egdore descendit usque in occeanum
further the-river Eider descends all-the-way into the-ocean
Fresonicum, quem Romani scribunt Brittannicum. Et prima
Frisian which the-Romans write British and the-first
quidem pars Daniae, quae Iudlant dicitur, ab Egdore in
indeed part of-Denmark which Jutland is-called from the-Eider into
boream longitudine protenditur, habens iter tridui, si in
the-north in-length stretches having a-journey of-three-days if into

Funem insulam divertis. Si vero a Sliaswig in Alaburg
Funen the-island you-turn-aside if indeed from Schleswig to Aalborg
per directum viam metiris, quinque aut septem habes iter
by direct way you-measure five or seven you-have a-journey
dierum. Haec est strata Ottonis caesaris usque ad mare
of-days this is the-road of-Otto the-caesar all-the-way to the-sea
novissimum Wendile, quod in hodiernum diem ex victoria
farthest of-Vendsyssel which into the-present day from the-victory
regis appellatur Ottinsand. Latitudo Iudlant secus Egdoram
of-the-king is-called the-Ottensund the-breadth of-Jutland beside the-Eider
diffusior est, inde vero paulatim contrahitur ad formam
more-spread-out is thence indeed little-by-little it-is-drawn-in to the-form
linguae in eum angulum qui Wendila dicitur, ubi Iudlant
of-a-tongue into that corner which Vendsyssel is-called where Jutland
finem habet. Inde brevissimus in Nordmanniam transitus
(its)-end has thence the-shortest into Norway crossing
est. Ager ibi sterilis; praeter loca flumini propinqua,
is the-land there barren except the-places to-the-river near
omnia fere desertum videntur; terra salsuginis et vastae
all almost a-desert seem a-land of-saltness and of-vast
solitudinis. Porro cum omnis tractus Germaniae profundis
solitude further though every tract of-Germany with-deep
horreat saltibus, sola est Iudlant ceteris horridior, quae
bristles forests alone is Jutland than-the-others more-bristling which
in terra fugitur propter inopiam fructuum, in mari vero
on land is-fled because-of the-lack of-fruits on sea indeed
propter infestationem pyratarum. Vix invenitur culta in
because-of the-harassment of-pirates scarcely is-found tilled in
aliquibus locis, vix humanae habitationi oportuna. Sicubi
some places scarcely for-human dwelling fit wherever
vero brachia maris occurrunt, ibi civitates habet maximas.
indeed arms of-the-sea meet-it there cities it-has very-great

Hanc regionem quondam caesar Otto subiciens tributo, in
this region once caesar Otto subjecting to-tribute into
tres divisit episcopatus, unum constituens apud Sliaswig,
three divided bishoprics one establishing at Schleswig
quae et Heidiba dicitur, quam brachium quoddam freti
which also Hedeby is-called which an-arm certain of-the-strait
barbari alluit, quod incolae Sliam vocant, unde et civitas
barbarian washes which the-inhabitants Schlei call whence also the-city
nomen trahit. Ex eo portu naves emitti solent in
its-name draws from that port ships to-be-sent-out are-wont into
Sclavaniam vel in Suediam vel ad Semlant usque in
Slavia or into Sweden or to Samland all-the-way into
Graeciam. Alterum fecit episcopatum in Ripa, quae civitas
Greece the-second he-made bishopric at Ribe which city
alio cingitur alveo, qui ab occeano influit, et per
by-another is-girded channel which from the-ocean flows-in and through
quem vela torquentur in Fresiam, aut certe in Angliam
which sails are-turned into Frisia or surely into England
vel in nostram Saxoniam. Tertium voluit episcopatum esse
or into our Saxony the-third he-wished bishopric to-be
in Arhusan. Et hanc fretum quoddam a Fune dirimit
at Aarhus and this a-strait certain from Funen divides
brevissimum, quod ab orientali pelago ingrediens, longis
very-short which from the-eastern sea entering with-long
anfractibus inter Funem et Iudlant protenditur in boream,
windings between Funen and Jutland stretches into the-north
usque ad eandem civitatem Arhusan, a qua navigatur in
all-the-way to the-same city Aarhus from which one-sails to
Funem aut Selant sive in Sconiam vel usque in Norvegiam.
Funen or Zealand or to Scania or all-the-way into Norway

Postea vero deficiente hoc episcopatu, quem tercium
afterward indeed failing this bishopric which as-third
posuimus, Iudlant duos solummodo episcopatus retinuit,
we-have-set Jutland two only bishoprics retained
Sleswicensem videlicet ac Ripensem, donec, mortuo nuper
of-Schleswig namely and of-Ribe until dead lately
Wal, Ripensi episcopo, diocesis illa discreta est in quatuor
Wal of-Ribe the-bishop the-diocese that divided was into four
episcopatus, auctoritatem suam praebente archiepiscopo.
bishoprics authority his offering the-archbishop
Qui mox consecravit in Ripam Oddonem, in Arhusan
who soon consecrated for Ribe Odo for Aarhus
Christianum, in Wiberch Heribertum, in Wendilam Magnum,
Christian for Viborg Heribert for Vendsyssel Magnus
cui, dum post ordinationem rediret, in Albia naufrago
for-whom when after ordination he-returned on the-Elbe shipwrecked
subrogavit Albricum. Hii quatuor episcopi tunc Ripensem
he-substituted Albric these four bishops then of-Ribe
dono Sueni regis sortiti sunt parrochiam.
by-the-gift of-Svein the-king obtained have the-diocese
Archiepiscopus vero de suis clericis ordinavit in Sliaswig
the-archbishop indeed from his clerics ordained at Schleswig
Ratolfum, in Seland Willelmum, in Funem Eilbertum, quem
Ratolf in Zealand William in Funen Eilbert whom
tradunt, conversum a pyratis, Farriam insulam, quae in ostio
they-relate converted by pirates Heligoland the-island which in the-mouth
fluminis Albiae longo secessu latet in occeano, primum
of-the-river Elbe in-a-long recess lies-hidden in the-ocean first
repperisse, constructoque ibi monasterio fecisse habitabilem.
to-have-found and-built there a-monastery to-have-made habitable
Haec insula contra Hadeloam sita est. Cuius latitudo vix
this island opposite Hadeln situated is whose breadth scarcely

octo miliaria panditur, latitudo quatuor; homines stramine
eight miles extends the-breadth four the-men with-straw
fragmentisque navium pro igne utuntur. Sermo est, piratas,
and-fragments of-ships for fire use the-talk is the-pirates
si quando praedam inde vel minimam tulerint, aut mox
if ever plunder thence even the-least they-have-carried either soon
perisse naufragio aut occisos ab aliquo, nullum domum
to-have-perished by-shipwreck or slain by someone none home
redisse indempnem. Quapropter solent heremitis ibi
to-have-returned unharmed wherefore they-are-wont to-the-hermits there
viventibus decimas praedarum offerre cum magna devotione. Est
living tithes of-the-plunders to-offer with great devotion is
enim haec insula feracissima frugum, ditissima volucrum et
for this island most-fertile of-crops richest of-birds and
pecudum nutrix, collem habet unicum, arborem nullam, scopulis
of-cattle the-nurse a-hill it-has single tree none by-cliffs
includitur asperrimis, nullo aditu praeter unum, ubi et aqua
it-is-enclosed most-rugged with-no access except one where also water
dulcis, locus venerabilis omnibus nautis, praecipue vero pyratis.
fresh the-place venerable to-all sailors chiefly indeed to-pirates
Unde accepit nomen, ut Heiligland dicatur. Hanc in Vita
whence it-received its-name that Heligoland it-is-called this in the-Life
sancti Willebrordi Fosetisland appellari discimus, quae sita
of-saint Willibrord Fositesland to-be-called we-learn which situated
est in confinio Danorum et Fresonum. Sunt et aliae insulae
is in the-borders of-the-Danes and of-the-Frisians there-are also other islands
contra Fresiam et Daniam, sed nulla earum tam memorabilis.
opposite Frisia and Denmark but none of-them so memorable

Liber IV, §§ 4–7

4–7 · FUNEN, ZEALAND, AND SCANIA

Adam describes Funen and its city Odense, and Zealand with Roskilde, the royal seat. The pirates, called Vikings, pay the king for license to plunder and sell their own countrymen as slaves; the Danes sell violated women and prefer beheading to flogging, and they do not weep. Scania, the most beautiful province, has three hundred churches.

Funis insula est non modica, post eam quae Wendila dicitur
Funen an-island is not moderate after that which Vendsyssel is-called
in ostio barbari sinus occurrens. Haec adhaeret regioni
in the-mouth of-the-barbarian gulf lying this adheres to-the-region
quae Iudland dicitur, in quam brevissimus a Iudland transitus
which Jutland is-called into which the-shortest from Jutland crossing
ex omni parte. Civitas ibi magna Odansue; insulae in giro
from every side the-city there great Odense the-islands in a-circle
parvulae, omnes frugibus plenae. Et notandum est, si per
little all with-crops full and to-be-noted it-is if through
Iudland in Funem tenderis, directam in septentrionem
Jutland into Funen you-make-your-way a-direct toward the-north
viam habes. At vero per Funem transeunti ad Seland oriens
road you-have but indeed through Funen to-one-crossing to Zealand the-east
in faciem currit. Duo traiectus sunt in Seland, unus a
into the-face runs two crossings there-are to Zealand one from
Fune, alter ab Arhusan, pari uterque distant spatio. Mare
Funen the-other from Aarhus by-equal each are-distant space the-sea
natura tempestuosum duplicique plenum periculo, ut, etiamsi
by-nature stormy and-with-double full danger so-that even-if
ventum habeas prosperum, vix effugias manus pyratarum.
a-wind you-have favorable scarcely you-may-escape the-hands of-the-pirates

Seland insula est in interiori sinu maris Baltici sita,
Zealand an-island is in the-inner gulf of-the-sea Baltic situated
quantitate maxima. Haec tam fortitudine virorum quam
in-size greatest this both for-the-bravery of-men and
opulentia frugum celeberrima, longitudinem habet bidui,
for-the-wealth of-crops most-celebrated a-length has of-two-days
cum latitudo fere sit aequalis. Civitas eius maxima Roschald,
since the-breadth almost is equal the-city its greatest Roskilde
sedes regia Danorum. Haec insula aequali spatio distans a
the-seat royal of-the-Danes this island by-equal space distant from
Fune vel Sconia, per noctem transitur, habetque ab occidente
Funen and Scania by night is-crossed and-it-has to the-west
Iudland, civitatem Arhusan vel Alaburg et Wendilam, a
Jutland the-city Aarhus and Aalborg and Vendsyssel to
borea vero, ubi et deserta est, fretum Nordmanniae, a
the-north indeed where also deserted it-is the-strait of-Norway to
meridie autem Funem praedictam et sinum Sclavanicum, ab
the-south moreover Funen aforesaid and the-gulf Slavic to
ortu respicit promunctorium Sconiae, ubi est civitas Lundona.
the-east it-faces the-promontory of-Scania where is the-city Lund
Aurum ibi plurimum, quod raptu congeritur pyratico.
gold there very-much which by-plunder is-heaped piratical
Ipsi enim pyratae, quos illi Wichingos appellant, nostri
themselves for the-pirates whom they Vikings call our-(people)
Ascomannos, regi Danico tributum solvunt, ut liceat
Ascomanni to-the-king Danish tribute pay that it-may-be-lawful
eis praedam exercere a barbaris, qui circa hoc mare plurimi
for-them plunder to-practice on the-barbarians who around this sea very-many
habundant. Unde etiam contingit, ut licentia, quam in
abound whence also it-happens that the-license which against
hostes acceperunt, saepe abutantur in suos; adeo fide
the-enemies they-have-received often they-abuse against their-own so-much with-faith

nulla utrique ad invicem sunt, et sine misericordia quisque
none both to each-other are and without mercy each
alterum, mox ut ceperit, in ius famulicii vel socio
the-other as-soon as he-has-caught into the-condition of-servitude either to-a-comrade
vendit vel barbaro. Et multa quidem alia tam in legibus
sells or to-a-barbarian and many indeed other-things as-much in laws
quam moribus aequo bonoque contraria Dani habent; ex
as in-morals to-the-equitable and-good contrary the-Danes have of
quibus nil utile mihi visum est ut dicerem, nisi quod
which nothing useful to-me seemed has that I-should-mention except that
mulieres, si constupratae fuerint, statim venduntur. Viri
the-women if violated they-have-been at-once are-sold the-men
autem, si vel regiae maiestatis rei vel in aliquo fuerint
moreover if either of-royal majesty guilty or in some they-have-been
scelere deprehensi, decollari malunt quam verberari. Alia
crime caught to-be-beheaded prefer than to-be-flogged another
non est ibi species poenae praeter securem vel servitutem,
not is there kind of-punishment besides the-ax or servitude
et tunc cum dampnatus fuerit, laetum esse gloria est. Nam
and then when condemned he-has-been glad to-be a-glory is for
lacrimas et planctum ceteraque genera compunctionis, quae
tears and lamentation and-the-other kinds of-compunction which
nos salubria censemus, ita abhominantur Dani, ut nec pro
we wholesome judge so abhor the-Danes that neither for
peccatis suis ulli flere liceat nec pro caris defunctis.
sins their for-anyone to-weep it-is-lawful nor for dear dead
A Seland in Sconiam traiectus multi, brevissimus in
from Zealand into Scania crossings many the-shortest to
Halsinpurgh, qui et videri potest. Sconia est pulcherrima
Helsingborg which also to-be-seen can Scania is most-beautiful
visu Daniae provintia, unde et dicitur, armata viris,
in-sight of-Denmark the-province whence also it-is-called armed with-men

opulenta frugibus divesque in mercibus, et nunc plena
rich in-crops and-wealthy in wares and now full
ecclesiis. Sconia bis tantum habet in spacio quam Selandia,
of-churches Scania twice as-much has in space as Zealand
hoc est trecentas ecclesias, cum Seland dicatur habere
that is three-hundred churches since Zealand is-said to-have
dimidium, Funis terciam partem. Sconia est pars ultima
the-half Funen the-third part Scania is the-part farthest
Daniae, fere insula; undique enim cincta est mari, praeter
of-Denmark almost an-island on-all-sides for girded it-is by-sea except
unum terrae brachium, quod ab oriente continens Sueoniam
one of-land arm which from the-east continuous Sweden
disterminat a Dania. Ubi sunt profundi saltus montesque
divides from Denmark where are deep forests and-mountains
asperrimi, per quos a Sconia in Gothiam necessario
most-rugged through which from Scania into Götaland necessarily
iter agitur, ut dubites, utrum levius sit marino
the-journey is-made so-that you-may-doubt whether easier it-be by-marine
discrimine terrestre periculum vitare, an istud illi praeponere.
peril the-land danger to-avoid or this to-that to-prefer

Liber IV, §§ 8–9

8–9 · THE SEES OF SCANIA

Svein divided Scania into the sees of Lund and Dalby. Henry of Lund, Cnut's former treasurer, died of drink. Egino of Dalby, learned and chaste, converted the people of Blekinge and Bornholm, broke the image of Fricco in Sweden, and on Henry's death held both sees until he died.

In eadem regione Sconia nemo adhuc episcopus fuit
in the-same region Scania no-one yet bishop was
incardinatus, nisi quod ab aliis partibus quidam venientes,
installed except that from other parts certain-men coming
interdum illam procurabant diocesim. Deinde Selandensis
at-times that took-care-of diocese then of-Zealand
episcopus Gerbrand, et post eum Avoco, simul gubernabant
the-bishop Gerbrand and after him Avoco together governed
utrasque ecclesias. Nuper vero, mortuo Avocone, rex Suein
both churches lately indeed dead Avoco king Svein
parrochiam Sconiensem in duos episcopatus segregavit, unum
the-diocese of-Scania into two bishoprics separated one
[id est Lundensem] Heinrico tribuens, alterum [id est
that is of-Lund to-Henry assigning the-other that is
Dalboiensem] Eginoni. Verum istum ordinavit archiepiscopus.
of-Dalby to-Egino but this-one ordained the-archbishop
Heinricus apud Orchadas ante fuit episcopus, isque in Anglia
Henry in the-Orkneys before was bishop and-he in England
sacellarius Chnud regis fuisse narratur. Cuius thesauros in
treasurer of-Cnut the-king to-have-been is-told whose treasures into
Daniam perferens, luxuriose vitam exegit. De quo narrant
Denmark carrying luxuriously life he-spent about whom they-tell
etiam, quod pestifera consuetudine delectatus inebriandi
also that by-the-pestilent custom delighted of-making-drunk

ventris, tandem suffocatus crepuit. Hoc et de Avocone
the-belly at-last suffocated he-burst this also of Avoco
factum esse comperimus, similiterque de aliis. Egino vero
done to-be we-have-found and-likewise of others Egino indeed
cum esset vir sapiens in litteris et castitate insignis, tunc
since he-was a-man wise in letters and for-chastity notable then
etiam totum studium eius exarsit in conversione paganorum.
also the-whole zeal his blazed in the-conversion of-the-pagans
Quapropter multos adhuc populos ydolorum cultui deditos
wherefore many still peoples of-idols to-the-worship given
ille vir Christo lucratus est, illos praesertim barbaros, qui
that man for-Christ gained has those especially barbarians who
Pleicani dicuntur, et qui in Hulmo insula degunt affines
Blekingians are-called and who in Bornholm the-island live neighbors
Gothis. Qui omnes dicuntur ad eius praedicationem conversi
to-the-Goths who all are-said at his preaching converted
ad lacrimas, poenitentiam sui erroris ita monstrasse, ut,
to tears the-penitence of-their error so to-have-shown that
confractis statim ydolis, ultro certarent ad baptismum.
broken at-once the-idols of-their-own-accord they-strove for baptism
Mox etiam thesauros et omnia quae habebant sternentes ad
soon also the-treasures and all-things which they-had strewing at
pedes episcopi, flagitabant, ut haec ille dignaretur recipere,
the-feet of-the-bishop they-demanded that these he should-deign to-receive
quod renuens episcopus, docuit eos ex eadem pecunia
which refusing the-bishop taught them from the-same money
fabricare ecclesias, egenos alere, ac redimere captivos, qui
to-build churches the-needy to-feed and to-redeem captives who
multi sunt in illis partibus.
many are in those parts

Fertur idem vir magnanimus, eo tempore quo in Suedia
it-is-reported the-same man great-souled at-that time when in Sweden
persecutio maxima christianitatis incanduit, Scaranensem
a-persecution very-great of-Christianity blazed the-Skara
ecclesiam ceterosque fideles, eo quod pastore carebant,
church and-the-other faithful for-this that a-shepherd they-lacked
frequenter visitasse, consolationem ministrans hiis qui in
often to-have-visited consolation providing to-those who in
Christum crediderant, et incredulis verbum Dei constanter
Christ had-believed and to-the-unbelieving the-word of-God constantly
annuncians. Ibi etiam opinatissimum Fricconis simulacrum
announcing there also the-most-renowned of-Fricco image
in frusta concidit. Pro quibus virtutum insignibus a rege
into pieces he-cut for which of-virtues marks by the-king
Danorum magno deinceps vir Dei honore habitus, defuncto
of-the-Danes with-great thereafter the-man of-God honor held dead
mox pingui Heinrico, utramque Sconiae parrochiam, quae est in
soon the-fat Henry both of-Scania dioceses which is at
Lundona vel Dalboia, recepit gubernandam. Qui mox Lundonae
Lund and Dalby he-received to-be-governed who soon at-Lund
sedem suam constituit, apud Dalboiam vero praeposituram
see his established at Dalby indeed a-provostship
fratrum regulariter viventium esse praecepit. Itaque duodecim
of-brothers by-rule living to-be he-ordered and-so twelve
annis in sacerdotio nobiliter exactis, clarissimus vir Egino
years in the-priesthood nobly spent the-most-renowned man Egino
regressus a Romana urbe, mox ut domum pervenit feliciter,
returned from the-Roman city soon as home he-arrived happily
migravit ad Christum. Cuius obitus et Funensis episcopi
departed to Christ whose death and of-the-Funen bishop
contigit eodem anno, quo noster excessit metropolitanus.
happened in-the-same year in-which our departed metropolitan

Liber IV, §§ 10–14

10–14 · THE BALTIC SEA

Adam expands Einhard's account of the Baltic, named for its belt-like shape. It opens from the western ocean between Aalborg and Norway; Ganuz Wolf and Harald failed to explore it, but voyagers have reached Russia in a month. He lists the nations on its shores: Danes and Swedes to the north, Slavs, Aesti, Wilzi, and Pomeranians to the south, as far as the Poles and Russia.

Nunc autem, quoniam locorum se praebuit occasio, ad rem
now moreover since of-places itself has-offered occasion to the-matter
videtur aliquid de natura Baltici maris dicere. Cuius freti
it-seems something about the-nature of-the-Baltic sea to-say of-which strait
mentionem cum supra in gestis Adaldagi pontificis ex scriptis
mention since above in the-deeds of-Adaldag the-pontiff from the-writings
Einhardi fecerim, explanationis more utor, ea quae
of-Einhard I-have-made of-explanation by-the-manner I-use those-things which
ille per compendium dixit pleniori calamo nostris scienda
he by compendium said with-fuller pen for-ours to-be-known
proponens. 'Sinus,' inquit, 'quidam ab occidentali occeano
setting-forth a-gulf he-says certain from the-western ocean
orientem versus porrigitur'. Sinus ille ab incolis appellatur
the-east toward stretches the-gulf that by the-inhabitants is-called
Balticus, eo quod in modum baltei longo tractu per
Baltic for-this that in the-manner of-a-belt in-long tract through
Scithicas regiones tendatur usque in Greciam, idemque mare
Scythian regions it-stretches all-the-way into Greece and-the-same the-sea
Barbarum seu pelagus Scithicum vocatur a gentibus quas
Barbarian or sea Scythian is-called from the-nations which
alluit barbaris. Occidentalis autem occeanus ille videtur, quem
it-washes barbarian the-western moreover ocean that seems which

Romani Britannicum scribunt, cuius latitudo immensa, terribilis
the-Romans British write whose breadth immense terrible
et periculosa complectitur ab occasu Britanniam, quae nunc
and perilous embraces from the-west Britain which now
Anglia dicitur, a meridie Fresos tangit, cum ea parte
England is-called from the-south the-Frisians it-touches with that part
Saxonum, qui nostrae diocesi pertinent Hammaburgensi. [In
of-the-Saxons who to-our diocese belong the-Hamburg in
hoc oceano insula est modica Heiligland, de qua supra dictum
this ocean an-island is small Heligoland about which above said
est.] A solis ortu habet Danos ostiumque Baltici maris
it-is from of-the-sun the-rising it-has the-Danes and-the-mouth of-the-Baltic sea
et Nordmannos, qui ultra Daniam consistunt; ab aquilone
and the-Northmen who beyond Denmark dwell from the-north
vero idem occeanus insulas praeterlabitur Orchadas, deinde
indeed the-same ocean the-islands glides-past the-Orkneys then
infinitis orbem terrae spaciis ambit, sinistrorsum habens
with-boundless the-world of-earth spaces surrounds on-the-left having
Hyberniam, Scotorum patriam, quae nunc Irland dicitur,
Ireland of-the-Scots the-fatherland which now Irland is-called
dextrorsum vero scopulos Nordmanniae, ulterius autem insulas
on-the-right indeed the-cliffs of-Norway farther moreover the-islands
Island, Gronland; ibi terminat occeanus qui dicitur caligans.
Iceland Greenland there ends the-ocean which is-called dark
Quod autem dicit eundem 'sinum longitudinis incompertae',
that moreover he-says the-same gulf of-length unexplored
hoc nuper apparuit in sollertia fortissimorum virorum Ganuz
this lately appeared in the-skill of-most-brave men Ganuz
Wolf, satrapae Danorum, sive Haroldi, regis Nordmannorum,
Wolf satrap of-the-Danes or of-Harald king of-the-Northmen
qui magno viae labore multoque sociorum periculo
who with-great of-the-way labor and-much of-the-companions peril

quantitatem huius maris perscrutantes, ancipiti demum iactura
the-extent of-this sea searching-out by-doubtful at-last loss
ventorum ac pyratarum fracti victique redierunt. Affirmant
of-winds and pirates broken and-conquered returned affirm
autem Dani, longitudinem huius ponti saepe a pluribus
moreover the-Danes the-length of-this sea often by many
expertam, secundo flatu per mensem aliquos a Dania
tested with-favorable wind in a-month some from Denmark
pervenisse in Ostrogard Ruzziae. Latitudinem vero illam
to-have-come to Ostrogard of-Russia the-breadth indeed that
ponit, 'quae nusquam centum milia passuum excedat, cum
he-sets which nowhere a-hundred thousand paces exceeds since
in multis', ait, 'locis contractior inveniatur'. Quod in ostio
in many he-says places narrower it-is-found which in the-mouth
eiusdem sinus videri potest, cuius ab oceano introitus inter
of-the-same gulf to-be-seen can whose from the-ocean entrance between
Alaburc, promunctorium Daniae, scopulosque Nortmanniae
Aalborg the-promontory of-Denmark and-the-cliffs of-Norway
tam strictus invenitur, ut facili saltu per noctem carbasa
so narrow is-found that with-easy leap in a-night the-sails
traiciantur. Item egressus limitem Danorum idem pontus
are-taken-across likewise having-gone-out the-boundary of-the-Danes the-same sea
late brachia tendit, quae denuo contrahit e regione
widely its-arms stretches which again it-draws-in opposite the-region
Gothorum, qui a latere Wilzos habent. Deinde quanto
of-the-Goths who on the-side the-Wilzi have then by-how-much
interius vadit, tanto latius hinc inde diffunditur.
further it-goes by-so-much more-widely hence thence it-is-spread
'Hunc', inquit, 'sinum multae circunsedent nationes; Dani
this he-says gulf many surround nations the-Danes
siquidem ac Sueones, quos Nortmannos vocamus, et
indeed and the-Swedes whom Northmen we-call both

septentrionale litus et omnes in eo insulas tenent. Ad
the-northern shore and all in it the-islands hold on
litus australe Sclavi, Haisti aliaeque diversae incolunt
the-shore southern the-Slavs the-Aesti and-other various inhabit
nationes, inter quas praecipuae sunt Welatabi', qui et Wilzi
nations among which the-chief are the-Welatabi who also Wilzi
dicuntur. Dani et Sueones ceterique trans Daniam populi
are-called the-Danes and Swedes and-the-other beyond Denmark peoples
ab hystoricis Francorum omnes vocantur Nortmanni, cum
by the-historians of-the-Franks all are-called Northmen though
tamen Romani scriptores eiusmodi vocent Yperboreos, quos
yet the-Roman writers of-this-kind call Hyperboreans whom
Martianus Capella multis laudibus extollit.
Martianus Capella with-many praises extols
Itaque primi ad ostium praedicti sinus habitant in australi
and-so the-first at the-mouth of-the-aforesaid gulf dwell on the-southern
ripa versus nos Dani, quos Iuddas appellant, usque ad Sliam
bank toward us the-Danes whom Jutes they-call all-the-way to the-Schlei
lacum. Unde incipiunt fines Hammaburgensis parrochiae, qui
lake whence begin the-bounds of-the-Hamburg diocese which
per maritimos Sclavorum populos longo tractu porriguntur
through the-coastal of-the-Slavs peoples in-a-long tract stretch
usque ad Panim flumen; ibi limes est nostrae diocesis.
all-the-way to the-Peene river there the-boundary is of-our diocese
Inde Wilzi et Leuticii sedes habent usque ad Oddaram
thence the-Wilzi and Leutici seats have all-the-way to the-Oder
flumen; trans Oddaram autem comperimus degere Pomeranos.
river across the-Oder moreover we-have-found to-live the-Pomeranians
Deinde latissima Polanorum terra diffunditur, cuius terminum
then the-broadest of-the-Poles land spreads whose boundary

dicunt in Ruzziae regnum connecti. Haec est ultima vel
they-say into of-Russia the-kingdom to-be-joined this is the-farthest or
maxima Winulorum provintia, quae et finem facit illius sinus.
greatest of-the-Winuli province which also the-end makes of-that gulf
At vero a parte aquilonari revertentibus ad ostium Baltici
but indeed from the-side northern to-those-returning to the-mouth of-the-Baltic
freti primi occurrunt Nortmanni, deinde Sconia prominet,
strait first meet the-Northmen then Scania juts-out
regio Danorum, et supra eam tenso limite Gothi
the-region of-the-Danes and above it with-stretched boundary the-Goths
habitant usque ad Bircam. Postea longis terrarum spatiis
dwell all-the-way to Birka afterward through-long of-lands spaces
regnant Sueones usque ad terram feminarum. Supra illas
reign the-Swedes all-the-way to the-land of-women above them
Wizzi, Mirri, Lami, Scuti et Turci habitare feruntur usque
the-Wizzi Mirri Lami Scuti and Turci to-dwell are-reported all-the-way
ad Ruzziam, in qua denuo finem habet ille sinus. Itaque latera
to Russia in which again its-end has that gulf and-so the-sides
illius ponti ab austro Sclavi, ab aquilone Suedi possederunt.
of-that sea from the-south the-Slavs from the-north the-Swedes have-possessed

Liber IV, §§ 15–18

15–18 · THE BALTIC ISLANDS

Adam lists the Danish islands, from Vendsyssel to Bornholm, all now Christian. Courland is full of soothsayers consulted from Spain and Greece; Estland worships dragons and sacrifices men. Femern and Rügen are nests of pirates, while the Prussians of Samland are humane, scorn gold, and trade furs, though they persecute preachers and killed Saint Adalbert.

Asserunt etiam periti locorum, a Sueonia terrestri via
assert also the-experienced of-the-places from Sweden by-land way
permeasse quosdam usque in Graeciam. Sed barbarae
to-have-passed-through some all-the-way into Greece but the-barbarian
gentes, quae in medio sunt, hoc iter impediunt, propterea
nations which in the-middle are this journey hinder therefore
navibus temptatur periculum.
by-ships is-attempted the-danger
Multae sunt insulae in hoc sinu, quas omnes Dani et
many are the-islands in this gulf which all the-Danes and
Sueones habent in sua ditione, aliquas etiam Sclavi tenent.
Swedes have in their power some also the-Slavs hold
Earum prima est in capite illius freti Wendila, secunda Morse,
of-them the-first is at the-head of-that strait Vendsyssel the-second Mors
tertia Thud, modico ab invicem intervallo divisae, quarta est
the-third Thy by-a-small from each-other interval divided the-fourth is
Samse, quae opposita est civitati Arhusin, quinta Funis, sexta
Samsø which opposite is to-the-city Aarhus the-fifth Funen the-sixth
Seland, septima quae illi adhaeret et quarum supra mentionem
Zealand the-seventh which to-it adheres and of-which above mention
fecimus; octavam dicunt illam, quae Sconiae ac Gothiae
we-have-made the-eighth they-say that which to-Scania and Götaland

proxima Holmus appellatur, celeberrimus Daniae portus
nearest Holm is-called the-most-celebrated of-Denmark port
et fida stacio navium, quae ad barbaros et in Graeciam
and safe station of-ships which to the-barbarians and into Greece
dirigi solent. Ceterum insulae Funi adiacent aliae septem
to-be-directed are-wont moreover the-islands to-Funen adjoin other seven
minores ab euro, quas supra diximus frugibus opulentas,
smaller from the-southeast which above we-have-said with-crops wealthy
hoc est Moyland, Imbra, Falstra, Laland, Langland, itemque
that is Møn Femern Falster Lolland Langeland and-likewise
aliae omnes sibi vicinae, cum Laland interius vadat ad
others all to-each-other neighboring since Lolland further goes to
confinia Sclavorum. Hae quindecim insulae Danorum regnum
the-borders of-the-Slavs these fifteen islands of-the-Danes the-kingdom
aspiciunt, omnesque iam christianitatis titulo decoratae
look-to and-all already of-Christianity with-the-title adorned
sunt. Sunt et aliae interius, quae subiacent imperio Sueonum,
are there-are also others further-in which lie-under the-rule of-the-Swedes
quarum vel maxima est illa quae Churland dicitur; iter
of-which even the-greatest is that which Courland is-called a-journey
habet octo dierum; gens crudelissima propter nimium
it-has of-eight days the-nation most-cruel because-of excessive
ydolatriae cultum fugitur ab omnibus; aurum ibi plurimum,
of-idolatry worship is-fled by all gold there very-much
equi optimi. Divinis, auguribus atque nigromanticis omnes
horses excellent with-diviners augurs and necromancers all
domus plenae sunt, [qui etiam vestitu monachico induti sunt].
houses full are who also in-garb monastic clothed are
A toto orbe ibi responsa petuntur, maxime ab Hispanis
from the-whole world there answers are-sought most-of-all by the-Spaniards
et Graecis. Hanc insulam credimus in Vita sancti Ansgarii
and Greeks this island we-believe in the-Life of-saint Ansgar

Chori nominatam, quam tunc Sueones tributo subiecerunt. Una
Chori named which then the-Swedes to-tribute subjected one
ibi nunc facta est ecclesia cuiusdam studio negotiatoris,
there now made has-been church of-a-certain by-the-zeal merchant
quem rex Danorum multis ad hoc illexit muneribus. Ipse
whom the-king of-the-Danes with-many for this enticed gifts himself
rex gaudens in Domino recitavit mihi hanc cantilenam.
the-king rejoicing in the-Lord recited to-me this little-song
Praeterea recitatum est nobis, alias plures insulas in eo
besides recited it-was to-us other several islands in that
ponto esse, quarum una grandis Aestland dicitur, non
sea to-be of-which one great Estland is-called not
minor illa de qua prius diximus. Nam et ipsi
smaller than-that about which before we-have-spoken for also they
Deum christianorum prorsus ignorant, dracones adorant cum
the-God of-the-Christians utterly know-not dragons they-adore with
volucribus, quibus etiam litant vivos homines, quos a
birds to-which also they-sacrifice living men whom from
mercatoribus emunt, diligenter omnino probatos, ne maculam
merchants they-buy carefully altogether tested lest a-blemish
in corpore habeant, pro qua refutari dicuntur a draconibus.
on the-body they-have for which to-be-refused they-are-said by the-dragons
Et haec quidem insula terrae feminarum proxima narratur,
and this indeed island to-the-land of-women nearest is-told
cum illa superior non longe sit a Birca Sueonum.
while that former not far is from Birka of-the-Swedes
Illae autem insulae quae Sclavis adiacent insigniores
those moreover islands which to-the-Slavs adjoin more-notable
accepimus esse tres. Quarum prima Fembre vocatur. Haec
we-have-learned to-be three of-which the-first Femern is-called this
opposita est Wagris, ita ut videri possit ab Aldinburg,
opposite is to-the-Wagrians so that to-be-seen it-can from Oldenburg

sicut illa quae Laland dicitur. Altera est contra Wilzos posita,
as that which Lolland is-called the-other is opposite the-Wilzi placed
quam Rani [vel Runi] possident, gens fortissima Sclavorum,
which the-Rani or Runi possess a-nation most-brave of-the-Slavs
extra quorum sententiam de publicis rebus nichil agi
without whose judgment about public affairs nothing to-be-done
lex est: ita metuuntur propter familiaritatem deorum vel
the-law is so they-are-feared because-of the-familiarity of-the-gods or
potius daemonum, quos maiori cultu venerantur quam ceteri.
rather of-the-demons whom with-greater worship they-venerate than the-others
Ambae igitur hae insulae pyratis et cruentissimis latronibus
both therefore these islands with-pirates and most-bloody robbers
plenae sunt, et qui nemini parcant ex transeuntibus. Omnes
full are and who no-one spare of the-passers-by all
enim quos alii vendere solent, illi occidunt. Tertia est illa
for whom others to-sell are-wont they kill the-third is that
quae Semland dicitur, contigua Ruzzis et Polanis; hanc
which Samland is-called neighboring to-the-Russians and Poles this
inhabitant Sembi vel Pruzzi, homines humanissimi, qui obviam
inhabit the-Sembi or Prussians men most-humane who to-meet
tendunt his ad auxiliandum, qui periclitantur in mari vel qui
go those to help who are-imperiled at sea or who
a pyratis infestantur. Aurum et argentum pro minimo ducunt,
by pirates are-harassed gold and silver for least they-reckon
pellibus habundant peregrinis, quarum odor letiferum nostro
in-furs they-abound foreign whose odor the-deadly to-our
orbi propinavit superbiae venenum. Et illi quidem ut stercora
world has-served of-pride poison and they indeed as dung
haec habent ad nostram credo dampnationem, qui per fas
these-things hold to our I-believe damnation who through right
et nefas ad vestem anhelamus marturinam, quasi ad summam
and wrong for a-garment pant of-marten as-if for the-highest

beatitudinem. Itaque pro laneis indumentis, quae nos dicimus
blessedness and-so for woolen garments which we call
faldones, illi offerunt tam preciosos martures. Multa possent
faldones they offer so precious martens many-things could
dici ex illis populis laudabilia in moribus, si haberent solam
to-be-said of those peoples praiseworthy in morals if they-had only
fidem Christi, cuius praedicatores immaniter persecuntur.
the-faith of-Christ whose preachers savagely they-persecute
Apud illos martyrio coronatus est illustris Boemiorum
among them with-martyrdom crowned was the-illustrious of-the-Bohemians
episcopus Adalbertus. Usque hodie profecto inter illos, cum
bishop Adalbert all-the-way-to today truly among them though
cetera omnia sint communia nostris, solus prohibetur accessus
the-other all-things are common with-ours alone is-forbidden the-approach
lucorum et fontium, quos autumant pollui christianorum
of-the-groves and springs which they-assert to-be-polluted of-the-Christians
accessu. Carnes iumentorum pro cibo sumunt, quorum
by-the-approach the-flesh of-beasts for food they-take whose
lacte vel cruore utuntur in potu, ita ut inebriari dicantur.
milk or blood they-use for drink so that to-be-drunk they-are-said
Homines cerulei, facie rubea, et criniti. Praeterea inaccessi
the-men blue in-face red and long-haired moreover inaccessible
paludibus, nullum inter se dominum pati volunt.
with-marshes no among themselves lord to-suffer they-wish

Liber IV, §§ 19–20

19–20 · THE WOMEN'S LAND AND THE MONSTERS

On the Baltic shores are the Amazons, who bear dog-headed sons and beautiful daughters, the Alani born gray, pale green long-lived men, and cannibals. Adam suggests the ancients knew the Baltic as the Scythian marshes. Adalbert made Birka the metropolis of those peoples and ordained the abbot Hiltin, named John, for it.

Sunt et aliae in hoc ponto insulae plures, ferocibus barbaris
there-are also other in this sea islands many with-fierce barbarians
omnes plenae, ideoque fugiuntur a navigantibus. Item circa
all full and-therefore are-fled by the-sailors likewise around
haec littora Baltici maris ferunt esse Amazonas, quod nunc
these shores of-the-Baltic sea they-report to-be the-Amazons which now
terra feminarum dicitur. Eas aquae gustu dicunt aliqui
the-land of-women is-called them of-water by-the-taste say some
concipere. Sunt etiam qui referant, eas fieri praegnantes
to-conceive there-are also who report them to-become pregnant
ab hiis qui praetereunt negociatoribus, vel ab hiis quos inter
by those who pass-by merchants or by those whom among
se habent captivos, sive ab aliis monstris, quae ibi non
themselves they-have captives or by other monsters which there not
rara habentur. Et hoc credimus etiam fide dignius. Cumque
rare are-held and this we-believe also of-faith worthier and-when
pervenerint ad partum, si quid masculini generis est, fiunt
they-have-come to the-birth if anything of-masculine sex is they-become
cynocephali, si quid feminini, speciosissimae mulieres. Hae
dog-headed if anything feminine most-beautiful women these
simul viventes, spernunt consortia virorum, quos etiam, si
together living scorn the-fellowship of-men whom even if
advenerint, a se repellunt viriliter. Cynocephali sunt,
they-have-come from themselves they-repel manfully the-dog-headed are

qui in pectore caput habent; in Ruzzia videntur sepe
those-who on the-breast the-head have in Russia they-are-seen often
captivi, et cum verbis latrant in voce. Ibi sunt etiam qui
captive and with words they-bark in the-voice there are also those-who
dicuntur Alani vel Albani, qui lingua eorum Wizzi dicuntur,
are-called Alani or Albani who in-tongue their Wizzi are-called
crudelissimi ambrones; cum canicie nascuntur; de quibus auctor
most-cruel gluttons with gray-hair they-are-born of whom the-author
Solinus meminit. Eorum patriam canes defendunt. Si quando
Solinus makes-mention their fatherland dogs defend if ever
pugnandum est, canibus aciem struunt. Ibi sunt homines
to-be-fought it-is with-dogs the-battle-line they-draw-up there are men
pallidi, virides et macrobii, quos appellant Husos; postremo
pale green and long-lived whom they-call Husi lastly
illi qui dicuntur Antropofagi et humanis vescuntur carnibus.
those who are-called Anthropophagi and on-human feed flesh
Ibi sunt alia monstra plurima, quae recitantur a navigantibus
there are other monsters very-many which are-recited by the-sailors
sepe inspecta, quamvis hoc nostris vix credibile putetur.
often seen although this to-ours scarcely believable may-be-thought
Haec habui quae de sinu illo Baltico dicerem, cuius
these-things I-had which about gulf that Baltic I-might-say of-which
nullam mentionem audivi quempiam fecisse doctorum,
no mention I-have-heard anyone to-have-made of-the-learned
nisi solum, de quo supra diximus, Einhardum. Et fortasse
except alone of whom above we-have-spoken Einhard and perhaps
mutatis nominibus arbitror illud fretum ab antiquis vocari
changed the-names I-think that strait by the-ancients to-be-called
paludes Scithicas vel Meoticas, sive deserta Getarum, aut
the-marshes Scythian or Maeotic or the-deserts of-the-Getae or
litus Scithicum, quod Martianus ait: ‘confertum esse
the-shore Scythian which Martianus says crowded to-be

multiplici diversitate barbarorum'. 'Illic', inquit, 'Gethae, Daci,
with-manifold diversity of-barbarians there he-says the-Getae Dacians
Sarmatae, [Neutri,] Alani, Geloni, Antropofagi, Trogloditae'.
Sarmatians Neuri Alani Geloni Anthropophagi Troglodytes
Quorum errori condolens noster metropolitanus statuit
of-whom at-the-error grieving our metropolitan established
Bircam illis gentibus metropolem, quae in medio Sueoniae
Birka for-those nations as-metropolis which in the-middle of-Sweden
posita contra civitatem Sclavorum respicit Iumnem, paribusque
placed opposite the-city of-the-Slavs faces Jumne and-with-equal
spaciis omnes illius ponti amplectitur horas. In qua civitate
spaces all of-that sea embraces the-shores in which city
primum ex nostris ordinavit Hiltinum abbatem, quem ipse
first from ours he-ordained Hiltin the-abbot whom he
voluit appellari Iohannem. Itaque de insulis Danorum
wished to-be-called John and-so about the-islands of-the-Danes
dictum est satis. Nunc vero ad Sueonum sive Nordmannorum
said it-is enough now indeed to of-the-Swedes or of-the-Northmen
populos, qui proximi sunt, convertamus articulos.
the-peoples who nearest are let-us-turn the-points

Liber IV, §§ 21–22

21–22 · SWEDEN AND THE SWEDES

Beyond the Danish islands lie Norway and Sweden, almost unknown to us. Sweden is fertile and rich; the Swedes care nothing for gold and furs, take several wives, punish adultery with death, and excel in hospitality. Their kings are of an ancient line but rule by the people's judgment; they fight on horse and ship, and now count the Christian God stronger than their own.

Transeuntibus insulas Danorum alter mundus aperitur
to-those-crossing the-islands of-the-Danes another world opens
in Sueoniam vel Nordmanniam, quae sunt duo latissima
into Sweden or Norway which are two most-broad
regna aquilonis et nostro orbi adhuc fere incognita. De
kingdoms of-the-north and to-our world still almost unknown about
quibus narravit mihi scientissimus rex Danorum, quod
which told me the-most-knowing king of-the-Danes that
Nordmannia vix queat transiri per mensem, cum Sueonia
Norway scarcely can to-be-crossed in a-month while Sweden
duobus mensibus non facile percurratur. 'Quod ipse', inquit,
in-two months not easily is-run-through which I-myself he-says
'probaveram, qui nuper sub Iacobo rege 12 annis militavi in
had-proved who lately under James the-king 12 years served in
illis regionibus, quae altissimis ambae montibus includuntur,
those regions which by-highest both mountains are-enclosed
magis autem Nordmannia, quae suis alpibus circumdat
more moreover Norway which with-its alps surrounds
Sueoniam'. De Sueonia vero non tacent antiqui auctores
Sweden about Sweden indeed not keep-silent the-ancient authors
Solinus et Orosius, qui dicunt, plurimam partem Germaniae
Solinus and Orosius who say the-greatest part of-Germany

Suevos tenere, necnon montana eius usque ad Ripheos
the-Suevi to-hold and-also the-mountains its all-the-way to the-Riphean
montes extendi. Ibi est etiam Albis fluvius, de quo Lucanus
mountains to-extend there is also the-Elbe river of which Lucan
meminisse videtur. Ille oritur in praedictis alpibus, perque
to-make-mention seems it rises in the-aforesaid alps and-through
medios Gothorum populos currit in occeanum, unde et
the-middle of-the-Goths peoples runs into the-ocean whence also
Gothelba dicitur. Fertilissima regio est Sueonia, ager frugibus
Göta-älv it-is-called most-fertile region is Sweden the-land in-crops
et melle opimus, extra quod pecorum fetu omnibus
and in-honey rich besides which of-cattle in-the-young to-all
antefertur, oportunitas fluminum sylvarumque maxima ubique
is-preferred the-advantage of-rivers and-of-woods very-great everywhere
peregrinis mercibus omnis regio plena. Ita nullis egere Sueones
with-foreign wares every region full so in-nothing to-lack the-Swedes
dicas opibus, excepta quam nos diligimus sive potius
you-would-say riches except which we love or rather
adoramus, superbia. Omnia enim instrumenta vanae gloriae,
adore pride all for the-instruments of-vain glory
hoc est aurum, argentum, sonipedes regios, pelles castorum vel
that is gold silver steeds royal pelts of-beavers or
marturum, quae nos ammiratione sui dementes faciunt,
martens which us with-admiration of-themselves mad make
illi pro nichilo ducunt. In sola mulierum copula modum
they for nothing reckon in alone of-women the-coupling measure
nesciunt. Quisque secundum facultatem suarum virium duas
they-know-not each according-to the-means of-his strength two
aut tres et amplius simul habet; divites et principes absque
or three and more together has the-rich and princes without
numero. Nam et filios ex tali coniunctione genitos habent
number for also the-sons from such union begotten they-hold

legitimos. Capitali vero pena multatur, si quis uxorem
lawful with-capital indeed punishment is-fined if anyone the-wife
alterius cognoverit, aut vi oppresserit virginem, sive qui
of-another has-known or by-force has-oppressed a-virgin or who
alterum spoliaverit bonis suis, aut iniuriam fecerit. Hospitalitate
another has-despoiled of-goods his or wrong has-done in-hospitality
quamvis omnes Yperborei sint insignes, praecipui sunt nostri
although all Hyperboreans are notable chief are our
Sueones; quibus est omni probro gravius hospicium negare
Swedes to-whom is than-every disgrace heavier hospitality to-deny
transeuntibus, ita ut studium vel certamen habeant inter illos,
to-those-passing so that a-zeal or contest they-have among them
quis dignus sit recipere hospitem. Cui exhibens omnia
who worthy may-be to-receive the-guest to-whom showing all
iura humanitatis, quot diebus illic commorari voluerit,
the-rights of-humanity for-as-many days there to-stay he-has-wished
ad amicos eum suos certatim per singulas dirigit mansiones.
to friends him his in-rivalry through the-several he-directs dwellings
Haec illi bona in moribus habent. Praedicatores autem
these they good-things in morals have the-preachers moreover
veritatis, si casti prudentesque ac ydonei sunt, ingenti amore
of-truth if chaste and-prudent and fit they-are with-huge love
fovent, adeo ut concilio populorum communi, quod ab
they-cherish so-much that at-the-council of-the-peoples common which by
ipsis warh vocatur, episcopos interesse non renuant. Ubi de
them warh is-called the-bishops to-be-present not they-refuse where about
Christo et christiana religione crebro audiunt non inviti. Et
Christ and the-Christian religion often they-hear not unwilling and
fortasse facili sermone ad nostram fidem illi persuaderentur,
perhaps with-easy speech to our faith they would-be-persuaded

nisi quod mali doctores, dum sua quaerunt, non
except that evil teachers while their-own-things they-seek not
quae Iesu Christi, scandalizant eos, qui possent salvari'.
those of-Jesus Christ scandalize those who could to-be-saved
Populi Sueonum multi sunt, viribus et armis egregii, praeterea
the-peoples of-the-Swedes many are in-strength and arms outstanding moreover
tam in equis quam in navibus iuxta optimi bellatores. Unde
as-much on horses as on ships alike the-best warriors whence
etiam sua potentia ceteras aquilonis gentes constringere
also by-their power the-other of-the-north nations to-constrain
videntur. Reges habent ex genere antiquo, quorum tamen
they-seem kings they-have from a-family ancient whose yet
vis pendet in populi sentencia; quod in commune omnes
the-force hangs on of-the-people the-judgment what in common all
laudaverint, illum confirmare oportet, nisi eius decretum pocius
have-praised that to-confirm it-behooves unless his decree rather
videatur, quod aliquando secuntur inviti. Itaque domi pares
seem-better which sometimes they-follow unwilling and-so at-home equals
esse gaudent. In praelium euntes omnem praebent obedientiam
to-be they-rejoice into battle going all they-afford obedience
regi, vel ei qui doctior ceteris a rege praefertur. Si
to-the-king or to-him who more-learned than-the-others by the-king is-preferred if
quando vero praeliantes in angustia positi sunt, ex multitudine
ever indeed fighting in a-strait placed they-are from the-multitude
deorum quos colunt unum invocant auxilio; ei post
of-the-gods whom they-worship one they-invoke for-aid to-him after
victoriam deinceps sunt devoti illumque ceteris anteponunt.
victory thereafter they-are devoted and-him to-the-others they-prefer
Deum autem christianorum iam communi sentencia fortiorem
the-God moreover of-the-Christians already by-common judgment stronger

clamant omnibus esse; alios deos sepe fallere, illum porro
they-cry than-all to-be the-other gods often to-deceive him further
semper astare certissimum adiutorem in oportunitatibus.
always to-stand-by as-most-sure helper in needs

Liber IV, §§ 23–26

23–26 · THE GOTHS, HÄLSINGLAND, AND UPPSALA

Adam describes the Goths of Götaland and their bishops, the elder Adalward, who brought rain at the people's request, and the idle Acilin. The Värmlanders are now Christian and the Skridfinns partly converted. Beyond lie monsters. At Uppsala stands a golden temple with statues of Thor, Wodan, and Fricco, and gods made from men.

Ex ipsis populis Suediae proximi ad nos habitant Gothi, qui
of the-very peoples of-Sweden nearest to us dwell the-Goths who
occidentales dicuntur; alii sunt orientales. Verum Westragothia
western are-called others are eastern but West-Götaland
confinis est provinciae Danorum, quae Sconia dicitur. A qua
bordering is to-the-province of-the-Danes which Scania is-called from which
etiam fertur diebus septem perveniri usque ad civitatem
also it-is-reported in-days seven to-be-reached all-the-way to the-city
Gothorum magnam Scarane. Deinde Ostrogothia protenditur
of-the-Goths great Skara then East-Götaland stretches
iuxta mare illud quod Balticum vocant, usque ad Bircam.
along the-sea that which Baltic they-call all-the-way to Birka
Primus Gothorum episcopus Thurgot fuit, secundus vero
the-first of-the-Goths bishop Thurgot was the-second indeed
Godescalcus, vir sapiens et bonus, ut praedicant, nisi
Gottschalk a-man wise and good as they-proclaim except
quod domi sedens ocium labori praetulit. Tercium ordinavit
that at-home sitting leisure to-labor he-preferred the-third ordained

noster metropolitanus Adalwardum seniorem, vere laudabilem
our metropolitan Adalward the-elder truly praiseworthy
virum. Qui deinde perveniens ad barbaros, ut docuit, ita
a-man who then arriving among the-barbarians as he-taught so
vixit. Nam sancte vivendo, bene docendo magnam gentilium
he-lived for holily by-living well by-teaching a-great of-gentiles
multitudinem traxisse fertur ad christianam fidem.
multitude to-have-drawn he-is-reported to the-Christian faith
Claruit etiam virtutum miraculis, ita ut, poscentibus in
he-was-famous also of-powers for-miracles so that to-the-asking in
necessitate barbaris, ymbrem faceret descendere vel denuo
need barbarians rain he-made to-descend or again
serenitatem venire, et alia quae hactenus quaeruntur a
fair-weather to-come and other-things which hitherto are-sought from
doctoribus. Is autem vir memorabilis in Gothia permansit,
teachers he moreover the-man memorable in Götaland remained
nomen domini Iesu constanter omnibus praedicans, ibidemque
the-name of-the-Lord Jesus constantly to-all preaching and-there
post multos agones, quos pro Christo libenter sustinuit,
after many struggles which for Christ willingly he-endured
victricem terrae carnem tradidit, spiritus coelum petiit
the-victorious to-the-earth flesh delivered the-spirit heaven sought
laureatus. Post quem archiepiscopus ordinavit in illas
crowned-with-laurel after whom the-archbishop ordained for those
partes quendam Acilinum, nichil ferentem episcopali nomine
parts a-certain Acilin nothing bearing of-the-episcopal name
dignum praeter ingentem corporis staturam. Et ille quidem
worthy except a-huge of-body stature and he indeed
diligens carnis requiem, frustra mittentibus legationem
loving of-the-flesh rest in-vain sending a-legation
Gothis, usque ad obitum suum Coloniae mansit in deliciis.
the-Goths all-the-way to death his at-Cologne remained in delights

Inter Nordmanniam et Sueoniam Wermilani et Finnédi
between Norway and Sweden the-Värmlanders and Finnédi
degunt, et alii; qui nunc omnes sunt christiani, respitiuntque
live and others who now all are Christians and-look
ad Scaranensem ecclesiam. In confinio Sueonum vel
to the-Skara church in the-border of-the-Swedes or
Nortmannorum contra boream habitant Scritefini, quos aiunt
of-the-Northmen toward the-north dwell the-Skridfinns whom they-say
cursu feras praeterire. Civitas eorum maxima Halsingland,
in-running wild-beasts to-outstrip the-city their greatest Hälsingland
ad quam primus ab archiepiscopo designatus est Stenphi
to which first by the-archbishop designated was Stenphi
episcopus, quem ipse mutato nomine Symonem vocavit. Qui
the-bishop whom he changed the-name Simon called who
etiam multos earundem gentium sua praedicatione lucratus
also many of-the-same nations by-his preaching gained
est. Praeterea sunt alii numero carentes Sueonum populi, de
has besides there-are other number lacking of-the-Swedes peoples of
quibus ad christianitatem conversos accepimus solos Gothos,
whom to Christianity converted we-have-learned only the-Goths
Wermilanos et partem Scritefinorum, vel qui illis vicini sunt.
Värmlanders and part of-the-Skridfinns or who to-them neighbors are
Igitur ut brevem Sueoniae vel Suediae descriptionem faciamus:
therefore that a-brief of-Sweden or of-Suedia description we-may-make
haec ab occidente Gothos habet et civitatem Scaranem,
it from the-west the-Goths has and the-city Skara
a borea Wermilanos cum Scritefinnis, quorum caput
from the-north the-Värmlanders with the-Skridfinns whose head
Halsingland, ab austro longitudinem habet illius Baltici
Hälsingland from the-south the-length it-has of-that Baltic
maris, de quo ante diximus; ibi civitas magna Sictone. Ab
sea about which before we-have-spoken there the-city great Sigtuna on

oriente autem Ripheos montes attingit, ubi deserta ingentia,
the-east moreover the-Riphean mountains it-touches where deserts huge
nives altissimae, ubi monstruosi hominum greges ultra
snows very-high where monstrous of-men herds farther
prohibent accessum. Ibi sunt Amazones, ibi Cynocephali, ibi
forbid access there are the-Amazons there the-Dog-heads there
Ciclopes, qui unum in fronte habent oculum. Ibi sunt hii
the-Cyclopes who one on the-forehead have eye there are those
quos Solinus dicit Ymantopodes, uno pede salientes, et illi
whom Solinus calls Himantopodes on-one foot leaping and those
qui humanis carnibus delectantur pro cibo, ideoque sicut
who in-human flesh delight for food and-therefore as
fugiuntur, ita etiam iure tacentur. Narravit michi rex
they-are-fled so also rightly are-passed-over-in-silence told me the-king
Danorum sepe recolendus, gentem quandam ex montanis in
of-the-Danes often to-be-remembered a-nation certain from the-mountains into
plana descendere solitam, statura modicam, sed viribus et
the-plains to-come-down accustomed in-stature moderate but in-strength and
agilitate vix Suedis ferendam, hiique incertum esse unde
agility scarcely for-the-Swedes bearable and-these uncertain to-be whence
veniant; ‘semel aliquando per annum vel post triennium’,
they-come once sometimes through the-year or after three-years
inquit, ‘subiti accedunt. Quibus nisi totis resistatur viribus,
he-says suddenly they-approach whom unless with-all it-is-resisted strength
omnem depopulantur regionem, et denuo recedunt’. Aliaque
the-whole they-lay-waste region and again withdraw and-other
multa recitari solent, quae brevitati studens omisi,
many-things to-be-recited are-wont which brevity studying I-have-omitted
ab his dicenda, qui haec se vidisse testantur.
by these to-be-told who these-things themselves to-have-seen testify

Nunc de supersticione Sueonum pauca dicemus.
now about the-superstition of-the-Swedes a-few-things we-shall-say
Nobilissimum illa gens templum habet, quod Ubsola dicitur,
most-noble that nation a-temple has which Uppsala is-called
non longe positum ab Sictona civitate. In hoc templo, quod
not far placed from Sigtuna the-city in this temple which
totum ex auro paratum est, statuas trium deorum veneratur
wholly of gold prepared is the-statues of-three gods venerates
populus, ita ut potentissimus eorum Thor in medio solium
the-people so that the-mightiest of-them Thor in the-middle a-throne
habeat triclinio; hinc et inde locum possident Wodan et
has the-triclinium on-this-side and that the-place possess Wodan and
Fricco. Quorum significationes eiusmodi sunt: 'Thor', inquiunt,
Fricco whose significations of-such-kind are Thor they-say
'praesidet in aere, qui tonitrus et fulmina, ventos ymbresque,
presides in the-air who the-thunders and lightnings winds and-rains
serena et fruges gubernat. Alter Wodan, id est furor, bella
fair-weather and crops governs the-second Wodan that is fury wars
gerit, hominique ministrat virtutem contra inimicos. Tertius
wages and-to-man supplies strength against enemies the-third
est Fricco, pacem voluptatemque largiens mortalibus'. Cuius
is Fricco peace and-pleasure bestowing on-mortals whose
etiam simulacrum fingunt cum ingenti priapo. Wodanem vero
also image they-fashion with a-huge phallus Wodan indeed
sculpunt armatum, sicut nostri Martem solent; Thor autem cum
they-carve armed as ours Mars are-wont Thor moreover with
sceptro Iovem simulare videtur. Colunt et deos ex hominibus
a-scepter Jove to-imitate seems they-worship also gods from men
factos, quos pro ingentibus factis immortalitate donant, sicut
made whom for huge deeds with-immortality they-present as
in Vita sancti Anscarii leguntur Hericum regem fecisse.
in the-Life of-saint Ansgar they-are-read Eric the-king to-have-made

Liber IV, §§ 27–29

27–29 · THE UPPSALA SACRIFICES AND ADALWARD THE YOUNGER

Every nine years at Uppsala nine males of every kind are sacrificed and hung in the sacred grove. A blind priest was healed by the Virgin and converted many. Adalbert sent the younger Adalward to Sigtuna; he and Egino planned to destroy the temple, but King Stenkil turned them aside for fear of a pagan revolt.

Omnibus itaque diis suis attributos habent sacerdotes, qui
to-all and-so gods their assigned they-have priests who
sacrificia populi offerant. Si pestis et famis imminet, Thor
the-sacrifices of-the-people may-offer if plague and famine threatens Thor
ydolo lybatur, si bellum, Wodani, si nuptiae celebrandae
to-the-idol a-libation-is-poured if war to-Wodan if a-wedding to-be-celebrated
sunt, Fricconi. Solet quoque post novem annos communis
are to-Fricco it-is-wont also after nine years a-common
omnium Sueoniae provintiarum sollempnitas in Ubsola
of-all of-Sweden provinces solemnity at Uppsala
celebrari. Ad quam videlicet sollempnitatem nulli praestatur
to-be-celebrated to which namely solemnity to-none is-afforded
immunitas. Reges et populi, omnes et singuli sua dona
exemption kings and peoples all and each their gifts
transmittunt ad Ubsolam, et quod omni poena crudelius
send to Uppsala and what than-every punishment more-cruel
est, illi qui iam induerunt christianitatem, ab illis se
is those who already have-put-on Christianity from those themselves
redimunt cerimoniis. Sacrificium itaque tale est. Ex omni
redeem ceremonies the-sacrifice and-so such is from every
animante, quod masculinum est, novem capita offeruntur,
living-thing which male is nine heads are-offered
quorum sanguine deos placari mos est. Corpora autem
of-which with-the-blood the-gods to-be-appeased the-custom is the-bodies moreover

suspenduntur in lucum, qui proximus est templo. Is enim
are-hung in the-grove which nearest is to-the-temple that for
lucus tam sacer est gentilibus, ut singulae arbores eius ex
grove so sacred is to-the-gentiles that the-single trees its from
morte vel tabo immolatorum divinae credantur. Ibi etiam canes
the-death or gore of-the-sacrificed divine are-believed there also dogs
et equi pendent cum hominibus, quorum corpora mixtim
and horses hang with men whose bodies mixed
suspensa narravit mihi aliquis christianorum 72 vidisse.
hung told me someone of-the-Christians 72 to-have-seen
Ceterum neniae, quae in eiusmodi ritu libationis fieri
however the-incantations which in of-such-kind rite of-libation to-be-made
solent, multiplices et inhonestae ideoque melius reticendae.
are-wont manifold and indecent and-therefore better to-be-kept-silent
In eadem provintia nuper contigit res memorabilis et pro
in the-same province lately happened a-thing memorable and for
dignitate gestorum longe divulgata; pervenit etiam ad noticiam
the-dignity of-the-deeds far spread-abroad came also to the-notice
pontificis. Quidam e sacerdotibus, qui ad Ubsolam demonibus
of-the-pontiff a-certain-one of the-priests who at Uppsala the-demons
astare solebat, nequicquam iuvantibus diis factus est cecus.
to-attend was-wont in-no-way helping the-gods made was blind
Cumque vir sapiens infortunium orbitatis suae culturae
and-when the-man wise the-misfortune of-blindness his to-the-worship
ydolorum imputaret, quam supersticiose venerans potentissimum
of-idols imputed which superstitiously venerating the-most-mighty
deum christianorum offendisse videretur, ecce ipsa nocte
god of-the-Christians to-have-offended he-seemed behold that-very night
apparuit sibi virgo decora nimis, interrogans, si in filium eius
appeared to-him a-virgin comely exceedingly asking if in son her
credere maluerit, fore ut visum reciperet, abiectis quae
to-believe he-would-prefer it-would-be that sight he-should-receive cast-off which

ante colebat simulacris. Tunc ille qui nichil ardui rennueret
before he-worshiped images then he who nothing hard would-refuse
subeundum pro hoc dono, ita se facere, letus spopondit.
to-be-undergone for this gift so himself to-do glad promised
Ad haec virgo: 'Scito', inquit, 'certissime, hunc locum, ubi
to these-things the-virgin know she-says most-certainly this place where
nunc tantus innocentium sanguis effunditur, in meo proxime
now so-much of-the-innocent blood is-poured-out to my very-soon
dedicandum honore. In qua re ne tibi aliqua signa dubietatis
to-be-dedicated honor in which matter lest for-you any signs of-doubt
remaneant, in nomine Christi, qui est filius meus, tu recipe
remain in the-name of-Christ who is son my you receive
lumen oculorum tuorum'. Mox ille recepto lumine credidit,
the-light of-eyes your soon he received the-light believed
pertransiensque totas in circuitu regiones, facile paganis fidem
and-passing-through all in the-circuit regions easily to-the-pagans the-faith
persuasit, ut crederent in eum, qui se cecum illuminavit.
he-persuaded that they-should-believe in him who him blind enlightened
Quibus miraculorum causis impellentibus, statim noster
by-which of-miracles causes driving at-once our
metropolitanus obediens voci quae dicit: 'Respicite et levate
metropolitan obeying the-voice which says look and lift-up
oculos vestros, quoniam regiones iam albae sunt ad messem',
eyes your since the-regions already white are for harvest
ordinavit in illas partes Adalwardum iuniorem, de Bremensi
he-ordained for those parts Adalward the-younger from the-Bremen
choro assumptum, virum litteris et morum probitate fulgentem.
choir taken a-man in-letters and of-morals uprightness shining
Cui etiam per legatos clarissimi regis Steinkel sedem
to-whom also through the-envoys of-the-most-renowned king Stenkil a-see
posuit in Sictona civitate, quae distat ab Ubsola itinere
he-set in Sigtuna the-city which is-distant from Uppsala by-a-journey

diei unius. Est vero iter eiusmodi, ut a Sconia
of-day one is indeed the-journey of-such-kind that from Scania
Danorum per mare velificans quinto die pervenias usque
of-the-Danes over the-sea sailing on-the-fifth day you-may-arrive up-to
Sictonam vel Bircam, iuxta enim sunt. Si vero per terram eas
Sigtuna or Birka near for they-are if indeed by land you-go
a Sconia per Gothorum populos et civitatem Scaranem,
from Scania through of-the-Goths the-peoples and the-city Skara
Telgas et Bircam, completo mense pervenies Sictonam.
Södertälje and Birka completed a-month you-will-arrive at-Sigtuna
Adalwardus igitur magno fervore praedicandi euangelii Suediam
Adalward therefore with-great fervor of-preaching the-Gospel Sweden
ingressus, omnes qui in Sictona erant et in circuitu brevi
having-entered all who in Sigtuna were and in the-circuit in-a-short
spatio temporis ad christianam fidem perduxit. Conspiravit
space of-time to the-Christian faith led he-conspired
etiam cum Sconiensi episcopo, sanctissimo Eginone, ut pariter
also with the-Scanian bishop the-most-holy Egino that together
adirent illud templum paganorum, quod Ubsola dicitur,
they-might-approach that temple of-the-pagans which Uppsala is-called
si forte aliquem Christo laboris sui fructum ibi possent offerre,
if perhaps some for-Christ of-labor their fruit there they-could to-offer
omnia tormentorum genera libenter suscepturi, ut destrueretur
all of-torments kinds willingly about-to-undergo that might-be-destroyed
illa domus, quae caput est superstitionis barbaricae. Illa enim
that house which the-head is of-superstition barbarian that for
diruta vel potius cremata, fore, ut tocius gentis conversio
pulled-down or rather burned it-would-be that of-the-whole nation the-conversion
sequeretur. Quam confessorum Dei voluntatem piissimus rex
should-follow which of-the-confessors of-God will the-most-pious king
Steinkel in populo murmurari sentiens, callide submovit eos
Stenkil among the-people to-be-murmured perceiving cunningly removed them

a tali cepto, asserens et illos statim morte dampnandos,
from such an-undertaking asserting both them at-once to-death to-be-condemned
et se depellendum a regno, qui malefactores in
and himself to-be-driven from the-kingdom who evildoers into
patriam duxerit, et facile omnes ad paganismum relapsuros,
the-fatherland had-led and easily all to paganism about-to-relapse
qui nunc credunt, sicut in Sclavania nuper possit factum
who now believe as in Slavia lately can done
videri. Talibus regis allegationibus consentientes episcopi,
to-be-seen to-such of-the-king allegations agreeing the-bishops
omnes Gothorum civitates peragrabant, ydola confringentes et
all of-the-Goths the-cities traversed the-idols breaking and
multa paganorum milia deinceps lucrantes ad christianitatem.
many of-pagans thousands thereafter gaining for Christianity
Adalwardo postea defuncto apud nos, subrogavit archiepiscopus
Adalward afterward dead among us substituted the-archbishop
quendam a Rambsola Tadiconem, qui propter ventris
a-certain-one from Ramelsloh Tadico who because-of of-the-belly
amorem domi famelicus esse maluit, quam foris apostolus.
love at-home starving to-be preferred than abroad an-apostle
Haec de Sueonia et cerimoniis eius dicta sufficiant.
these-things about Sweden and ceremonies its said let-suffice

Liber IV, §§ 30–31

30–31 · NORWAY

Norway, the last province of the world, is barren and fit only for cattle; its poor, hardy people once lived by piracy but now love peace and the priests. Adam blames the priests' greed for the sale of baptism and burial. In the far north are wizards who draw whales ashore, bearded women, and the Skridfinns, and the forests are full of beasts.

Nortmannia, sicut ultima orbis provintia est, in ultimo
Norway as the-farthest of-the-world province is in the-last
libri loco convenienter ponetur a nobis. Haec a modernis
of-the-book place fittingly shall-be-set by us it by the-moderns
dicitur Norguegia. De cuius situ vel magnitudine, cum
is-called Norguegia about whose situation or size since
prius aliqua communiter cum Sueonia dixerimus, nunc
before some-things in-common with Sweden we-have-said now
vero spetialiter hoc dicendum est, quod longitudine sua
indeed specially this to-be-said is that in-length its
in extremam septentrionis plagam extenditur haec regio,
into the-farthest of-the-north region extends this region
unde et dicitur. Incipit autem ex prominentibus scopulis
whence also it-is-named it-begins moreover from the-jutting cliffs
huius freti, quod Balticum appellari solet; deinde reflexo in
of-this strait which Baltic to-be-called is-wont then bent-back into
aquilonem dorso, postquam frementis occeani marginem suo
the-north its-ridge after of-the-roaring ocean margin with-its
circuit ambitu, tandem in Ripheis montibus limitem facit,
it-has-circled circuit at-last in the-Riphean mountains its-boundary makes
ubi et lassus deficit orbis. Nortmannia propter asperitatem
where also weary fails the-world Norway because-of the-roughness

montium sive propter frigus intemperatum sterilissima est
of-the-mountains or because-of the-cold immoderate most-barren is
omnium regionum, solis apta pecoribus. Quorum armenta
of-all regions alone fit for-cattle whose herds
ritu Arabum longe in desertis stabulant. Eoque victu
in-the-manner of-the-Arabs far in the-deserts are-stalled and-on-that food
peculii transigunt vitam, ut lacte pecudum in cibos, lana
of-livestock they-pass life so-that the-milk of-the-flocks for foods the-wool
utantur in vestes. Indeque fortissimos educat milites, qui
they-use for clothes and-thence most-brave it-rears soldiers who
nulla frugum luxuria molliti, sepius impugnant alios, quam
by-no of-crops luxury softened more-often attack others than
ipsi molestentur ab aliquo. Sine invidia cum proximis
themselves are-troubled by anyone without envy with the-nearest
habitant Sueonibus, quamvis a Danis, aeque pauperibus, non
they-dwell the-Swedes although by the-Danes equally poor not
impune temptentur aliquando. Itaque rei familiaris
with-impunity they-are-tried sometimes and-so of-domestic affairs
inopia coacti, totum mundum circumeunt et pyraticis
by-poverty forced the-whole world they-go-round and by-piratical
raptibus amplissimam terrarum facultatem reportant domum,
raids the-most-ample of-lands wealth they-bring-back home
penuriam suae regionis tali modo sustinentes. Post
the-want of-their region in-such manner sustaining after
susceptam vero christianitatem melioribus imbuti scolis,
taken-up indeed Christianity with-better imbued schools
didicerunt iam pacem et veritatem diligere, paupertate
they-have-learned now peace and truth to-love with-poverty
sua contenti esse, immo quae habent collecta spargere, non
their content to-be rather what they-have gathered to-scatter not
ut prius sparsa colligere. Cumque nefandis artibus
as before scattered-things to-gather and-whereas to-unspeakable arts

maleficiorum omnes ab initio servirent, nunc vero cum
of-sorceries all from the-beginning were-slaves now indeed with
apostolo simpliciter confitentur Christum et hunc crucifixum.
the-apostle simply they-confess Christ and him crucified
Sunt etiam continentissimi omnium mortalium, tam in
they-are also the-most-continent of-all mortals as-much in
cibis quam in moribus parcitatem modestiamque summopere
foods as in morals frugality and-modesty most-earnestly
diligentes. Praeterea sacerdotum et ecclesiarum tantam habent
loving moreover of-priests and of-churches so-great they-have
venerationem, ut vix christianus habeatur, qui non cotidie
veneration that scarcely a-Christian is-held who not daily
obtulerit ad missam, quam audierit. Verum baptismus et
has-offered at the-mass which he-has-heard but baptism and
confirmatio, dedicationes altarium et sacrorum benedictio
confirmation the-dedications of-altars and of-sacred the-blessing
ordinum apud illos et Danos care omnia redimuntur.
of-orders among them and the-Danes dearly all are-bought
Quod ex avaritia sacerdotum prodisse arbitror, quia
which from the-avarice of-the-priests to-have-come-forth I-think because
barbari decimas adhuc dare aut nesciunt aut nolunt, ideo
the-barbarians tithes still to-give either know-not or refuse therefore
constringuntur in ceteris, quae deberent gratis offerri.
they-are-constrained in the-other-things which ought freely to-be-offered
Nam et visitacio infirmorum et sepultura mortuorum, omnia
for also the-visiting of-the-sick and the-burial of-the-dead all-things
ibi venalia. Apud illos tanta morum insignia, ut compertum
there for-sale among them such of-morals the-marks as found
habeo, sola sacerdotum corrumpuntur avaricia.
I-have alone of-the-priests are-corrupted by-avarice

In multis Nordmanniae locis vel Suediae pastores pecudum
in many of-Norway places or of-Sweden the-shepherds of-flocks
sunt etiam nobilissimi homines, ritu patriarcharum et
are even most-noble men in-the-manner of-the-patriarchs and
labore manuum viventes. Omnes vero sunt christianissimi
by-the-labor of-hands living all indeed are most-Christian
qui in Norvegia degunt, exceptis illis qui trans arctoam plagam
who in Norway live except those who beyond the-arctic region
circa occeanum remoti sunt. Eos adhuc fertur magicis
around the-ocean remote are them still it-is-reported in-magic
artibus sive incantationibus in tantum praevalere, ut se
arts or incantations in so-much to-prevail that themselves
scire fateantur, quid a singulis in toto orbe geratur. Tunc
to-know they-profess what by each in the-whole world is-done then
etiam potenti murmure verborum grandia cetę maris in
also with-powerful murmur of-words the-great whales of-the-sea onto
litora trahunt, et alia multa, quae de maleficis in scriptura
the-shores they-draw and other many-things which about sorcerers in scripture
leguntur, omnia illis ex usu facilia sunt. In asperrimis,
are-read all to-them from practice easy are in the-most-rugged
quae ibi sunt, alpibus audivi mulieres esse barbatas, viros
which there are alps I-have-heard women to-be bearded the-men
autem silvicolas raro se praebere videndos. Qui ferarum
moreover wood-dwellers rarely themselves to-offer to-be-seen who of-wild-beasts
pellibus utuntur pro vestibus, et loquentes ad invicem frendere
the-skins use for clothes and speaking to each-other to-gnash
magis quam verba proferre dicuntur, ita ut vix a proximis
rather than words to-utter are-said so that scarcely by the-nearest
intelligi queant populis. Eadem montana Romani auctores
to-be-understood they-can peoples the-same mountains the-Roman authors
Riphea iuga nuncupant, perpetuis horrida nivibus. Scritefingi
Riphean ridges call with-perpetual bristling snows the-Skridfinns

vivere non possunt absque frigore nivium, qui etiam feras
to-live not can without the-cold of-the-snows who also the-wild-beasts
praevolant suo cursu per altissimas nives. In eisdem
outrun by-their running through the-deepest snows in the-same
montanis agrestium ferarum tanta est multitudo, ut plurima
mountains of-wild beasts so-great is the-multitude that the-greatest
pars regionis ex solis vivant silvaticis. Ibi capiuntur uri,
part of-the-region from alone live forest-creatures there are-caught aurochs
bubali et elaces, sicut in Sueonia; ceterum bisontes capiuntur
buffaloes and elks as in Sweden however bisons are-caught
in Sclavonia et Ruzzia; sola vero Nortmannia vulpes habet
in Slavia and Russia alone indeed Norway foxes has
nigros et lepores, martures albos eiusdemque coloris ursos,
black and hares martens white and-of-the-same color bears
qui sub aqua vivunt quemadmodum uri. Cumque diversa
which under water live just-as aurochs and-since diverse
prorsus et insueta nostris multa ibi videantur, ab eiusdem
wholly and unaccustomed to-ours many-things there are-seen by of-the-same
patriae incolis haec et alia plenius dicenda relinquo.
fatherland the-inhabitants these and other-things more-fully to-be-told I-leave

Liber IV, §§ 32–33

32–33 · TRONDHEIM AND THE NORWEGIAN BISHOPS

Trondheim, the metropolis of Norway, holds the body of King Olaf, the martyr, where many are healed; Adam gives the routes there. He lists the bishops of Norway from John and Grimkell to those Adalbert ordained, and notes that in Norway and Sweden no bishop yet has a fixed diocese.

Metropolis civitas Nortmannorum est Trondemnis, quae nunc
the-metropolis city of-the-Northmen is Trondheim which now
decorata ecclesiis, magna populorum frequentia celebratur. In
adorned with-churches by-a-great of-peoples throng is-frequented in
qua iacet corpus beatissimi Olaph regis et martyris. Ad cuius
which lies the-body of-the-most-blessed Olaf king and martyr at whose
tumbam usque in hodiernum diem maxima Dominus operatur
tomb all-the-way into the-present day very-great the-Lord works
sanitatum miracula, ita ut a longinquis illic regionibus
of-healings miracles so that from distant thither regions
confluant hii qui se meritis sancti non desperant
flow-together those who themselves by-the-merits of-the-saint not despair
iuvari. Est vero iter eiusmodi, ut ab Alaburg vel Wendila
to-be-helped is indeed the-journey of-such-kind that from Aalborg or Vendsyssel
Danorum ingredientibus navim per diem mare transeatur
of-the-Danes to-those-entering a-ship in a-day the-sea is-crossed
ad Wig, civitatem Nortmannorum; inde vela torquentur in
to Vik the-city of-the-Northmen thence the-sails are-turned to
laevam, circa littora Norvegiae; quinta die pervenitur ad
the-left along the-shores of-Norway on-the-fifth day one-arrives at
ipsam civitatem quae Trondempnem dicitur. Potest autem iri
itself the-city which Trondheim is-called one-can moreover to-go
et alia via, quae ducit a Sconia Danorum terrestri itinere
also by-another way which leads from Scania of-the-Danes by-land journey

usque ad Trondempnem, sed haec tardior in montanis, et
all-the-way to Trondheim but this slower in the-mountains and
quoniam plena est periculo, declinatur a viatoribus.
since full it-is of-danger is-avoided by travelers
In Nortmanniam primus ab Anglia venit quidam Iohannes
into Norway first from England came a-certain John
episcopus, qui regem conversum cum populo baptizavit. Illi
bishop who the-king converted with the-people baptized to-him
successit Grimkil episcopus, qui tunc fuit ad Unwanum
succeeded Grimkell the-bishop who then was to Unwan
archiepiscopum Olaph regis legatus. Tertio loco advenit
the-archbishop of-Olaf the-king the-legate in-the-third place came
ille Sigafridus, [avunculus Aesmundi], qui et Suedos et
that Sigfrid the-uncle of-Asmund who both the-Swedes and
Nortmannos iuxta predicavit. Isque duravit usque ad nostram
Northmen alike preached-to and-he lasted all-the-way to our
aetatem cum aliis aeque non obscuris in illa gente sacerdotibus.
age with other equally not obscure in that nation priests
Post quorum excessum noster metropolitanus, petentibus
after whose departure our metropolitan asking
Nordmannorum populis, ordinavit Thoolf episcopum in civitate
of-the-Northmen peoples ordained Tholf as-bishop in the-city
Trondemnis et Siguardum in easdem partes. Asgothum vero et
Trondheim and Sigurd for the-same parts Asgot indeed and
Bernardum, licet moleste ferret a papa consecratos, accepta
Bernard although grievously he-bore by the-pope consecrated received
satisfactione dimisit a se donatos. Per quos hodieque
amends he-sent-away from himself presented through whom today
multas verbum Dei lucratur animas, ita ut in omnibus
many the-word of-God gains souls so that in all
provinciis Norvegiae beata mater ecclesia laetis floreat
the-provinces of-Norway the-blessed mother church with-glad flourishes

incrementis. Inter Nortmannos tamen et Sueones propter
increases among the-Northmen yet and the-Swedes because-of
novellam plantationem christianitatis adhuc nulli episcopatus
the-new planting of-Christianity still no bishoprics
certo sunt limite designati, sed unusquisque episcoporum a
by-fixed are boundary marked-out but each of-the-bishops by
rege vel populo assumptus, communiter edificant ecclesiam,
the-king or the-people taken-up in-common build the-church
et circueuntes regionem, quantos possunt ad christianitatem
and going-round the-region as-many-as they-can to Christianity
trahunt, eosque gubernant sine invidia, quandiu vivunt.
draw and-them govern without envy as-long-as they-live

Liber IV, §§ 34–35

34–35 · THE ORKNEYS AND ICELAND

Beyond Norway lie only the ocean and its islands. At the pope's order Adalbert ordained Thorolf for the Orkneys. Adam identifies Thule with Iceland, describes its midsummer day and midwinter night, its black ice, and its people living with their cattle in caves under their bishop as king, now Christian, and he tells how the archbishop ordained Isleif for them.

Post Nortmanniam, quae est ultima aquilonis provintia,
after Norway which is the-farthest of-the-north province
nichil invenies habitacionis humanae, nisi terribilem visu et
nothing you-will-find of-dwelling human except terrible in-sight and
infinitum occeanum, qui totum mundum amplectitur. Is habet
boundless the-ocean which the-whole world embraces it has
ex adverso Nortmanniae insulas multas non ignobiles, quae
from opposite Norway islands many not ignoble which
nunc fere omnes Nortmannorum ditioni subiacent, ideoque
now almost all of-the-Northmen to-the-power are-subject and-therefore

non praetereundae sunt a nobis, quoniam Hammaburgensem
not to-be-passed-over are by us since the-Hamburg
parrochiam et ipsae respiciunt. Quarum primae sunt Orchades
diocese also they look-to of-which the-first are the-Orkney
insulae, quas barbari vocant Organas; ritu Cicladum
islands which the-barbarians call Organae in-the-manner of-the-Cyclades
illae sunt dispersae per occeanum. De quibus Romani
they are scattered through the-ocean about which the-Roman
auctores Martianus et Solinus ita scripsisse videntur: 'A
authors Martianus and Solinus so to-have-written seem from
tergo Britanniae, unde infinitus patet occeanus, Orchadae
the-back of-Britain whence the-boundless lies-open ocean the-Orkneys
sunt insulae, quarum 20 sunt desertae, 16 coluntur. Orchades
are islands of-which 20 are deserted 16 are-inhabited the-Orkney
insulae paene 40 iunctae. Item vicinae sunt Electrides, in
islands almost 40 joined likewise neighboring are the-Electrides in
quibus electrum gignitur'. Igitur Orchades inter Nordmanniam
which amber is-produced therefore the-Orkneys between Norway
et Britanniam et Hiberniam positae, frementis occeani
and Britain and Ireland placed of-the-roaring ocean
ludibundae minas derident. Ad quas a civitate Nortmannorum
playful the-threats laugh-at to which from the-city of-the-Northmen
Trondemni per diem ferunt navigari posse. Itemque ab
Trondheim in a-day they-report to-be-sailed to-be-able likewise from
Orchadibus, aiunt, simile spatium viae, sive in Angliam
the-Orkneys they-say a-like space of-way whether into England
dirigas, sive in Scotiam flectere velis. Ad easdem insulas
you-direct or into Scotland to-turn you-wish to the-same islands
Orchadas, quamvis prius ab Anglorum et Scothorum episcopis
the-Orkneys although before by of-the-English and of-the-Scots the-bishops

regerentur, noster primas iussu papae ordinavit Turolfum
they-were-ruled our primate at-the-order of-the-pope ordained Thorolf
episcopum in civitatem Blasconam, qui omnium curas ageret.
as-bishop in the-city Birsay who of-all the-cares should-take
'Insula Thyle, quae per infinitum a ceteris secreta, longe in
the-island Thule which through the-boundless from the-others separated far in
medio sita est occeano, vix', inquiunt, 'nota habetur'. De
the-middle situated is of-the-ocean scarcely they-say known is-held about
qua tam a Romanis scriptoribus quam a barbaris multa
which as-much by the-Roman writers as by the-barbarians many-things
referuntur digna praedicari. 'Ultima', inquiunt, 'omnium Thyle,
are-reported worthy to-be-proclaimed the-farthest they-say of-all Thule
in qua aestivo solsticio, sole cancri signum transeunte,
in which at-the-summer solstice the-sun of-the-Crab the-sign crossing
nox nulla, brumali solsticio perinde nullus dies. Hoc quidam
night none at-the-winter solstice likewise no day this some
senis mensibus fieri arbitrantur'. Item Beda scribit, 'in
in-six months to-happen think likewise Bede writes in
Britannia aestate lucidas noctes haut dubie repromittere, ut in
Britain in-summer bright nights without doubt to-promise that at
solstitio continui dies habeantur senis mensibus, noctesque e
the-solstice continuous days are-had for-six months and-nights from
diverso ad brumam sole remoto. Quod fieri in insula
the-opposite toward winter the-sun withdrawn which to-happen in the-island
Thyle, Pytheas Massiliensis scribit sex dierum navigatione
Thule Pytheas of-Marseilles writes six of-days by-sailing
in septentrionem a Britannia distante. Haec itaque Thyle
toward the-north from Britain distant this and-so Thule
nunc Island appellatur, a glacie quae occeanum astringit.
now Iceland is-called from the-ice which the-ocean binds
De qua etiam hoc memorabile ferunt, quod eadem glacies
about which also this memorable they-report that the-same ice

ita nigra et arida videatur propter antiquitatem, ut incensa
so black and dry appears because-of age that kindled
ardeat. Est autem insula permaxima, ita ut populos infra se
it-burns is moreover the-island very-large so that peoples within itself
multos contineat, qui solo pecorum fetu vivunt eorumque
many it-contains who on-alone of-cattle the-young live and-with-their
vellere teguntur; nullae ibi fruges, minima lignorum copia,
fleece are-covered no there crops very-little of-wood abundance
propterea in subterraneis habitant speluncis, communi tecto
therefore in underground they-dwell caves in-common under-roof
et strato gaudentes cum pecoribus suis. Itaque in simplicitate
and bed rejoicing with cattle their and-so in simplicity
sanctam vitam peragentes, cum nichil amplius querant, quam
a-holy life passing since nothing more they-seek than
natura concedit, laeti possunt dicere cum apostolo: 'Habentes
nature grants glad they-can to-say with the-apostle having
victum et vestitum, his contenti simus'. Nam et montes
food and clothing with-these content let-us-be for also mountains
suos habent pro oppidis et fontes pro deliciis. Beata, inquam,
their they-have for towns and springs for delights blessed I-say
gens, cuius paupertati nemo invidet, et in hoc beatissima,
the-nation whose poverty no-one envies and in this most-blessed
quod nunc omnes induerunt christianitatem. Multa insignia
that now all have-put-on Christianity many-things notable
in moribus eorum, precipua karitas, ex qua procedit,
in morals their chief charity from which it-proceeds
ut inter illos omnia communia sint tam advenis quam
that among them all-things common are as-much to-strangers as
indigenis. Episcopum suum habent pro rege; ad illius nutum
to-natives bishop their they-hold for king to his nod
respicit omnis populus; quicquid ex Deo, ex scripturis,
looks the-whole people whatever from God from the-scriptures

ex consuetudine aliarum gentium ille constituit, hoc pro
from the-custom of-other nations he establishes this for
lege habent. [De quibus noster metropolitanus inmensas
law they-hold about whom our metropolitan immense
Deo gratias retulit, quod suo tempore convertebantur, licet
to-God thanks returned that in-his time they-were-converted although
ante susceptam fidem naturali quadam lege non adeo
before taken-up faith by-a-natural certain law not so-much
discordarent a nostra religione.] Itaque petentibus illis
they-differed from our religion and-so asking they
ordinavit quendam sanctissimum virum nomine Isleph. Qui
he-ordained a-certain most-holy man by-name Isleif who
ab eadem regione missus ad pontificem, aliquandiu retentus
from the-same region sent to the-pontiff for-some-time kept
est apud eum cum ingenti prorsus honore, discens interea,
was with him with huge utterly honor learning meanwhile
quibus noviter conversos ad Christum populos salubriter
by-what-means the-newly converted to Christ peoples healthfully
posset informare. Per quem transmisit archiepiscopus suos
he-could to-instruct through whom sent the-archbishop his
apices populo Islanorum et Gronlandorum, venerabiliter
letters to-the-people of-the-Icelanders and of-the-Greenlanders venerably
salutans eorum ecclesias et pollicens eis propediem se
greeting their churches and promising to-them shortly himself
venturum usque ad illos, ut gaudio simul pleno fruantur.
to-be-coming all-the-way to them that with-joy together full they-might-enjoy
In quibus verbis egregia, quam habuit in legationem suam,
in which words the-outstanding which he-had in mission his
voluntas pontificis laudari potest, quoniam et apostolum
will of-the-pontiff to-be-praised can since also the-apostle
discimus ad praedicandum verbum Dei velle in Hispaniam
we-learn for preaching the-word of-God to-wish into Spain

proficisci, quod implere non potuit. Haec de Islanis
to-set-out which to-fulfill not he-could these-things about the-Icelanders
et de ultima Thyle veraciter comperi, fabulosa praeteriens.
and about farthest Thule truly I-have-found the-fabulous passing-over

Liber IV, §§ 36–39

36–39 · GREENLAND, VINLAND, AND THE FROZEN SEA

Greenland lies farther out; Hålogaland sees the sun for fourteen days in summer. Svein told of Vinland, where vines and grain grow wild. Beyond is a frozen, dark sea, which King Harald barely escaped. Frisian noblemen, sailing north from the Weser, were drawn into the whirlpool of the abyss and some were swallowed.

Sunt autem plures aliae in occeano insulae, quarum non
there-are moreover several other in the-ocean islands of-which not
minima Gronland, profundius in occeano sita contra montes
the-least Greenland deeper in the-ocean situated opposite the-mountains
Suediae vel Riphea iuga. Ad quam ferunt insulam a littore
of-Sweden or the-Riphean ridges to which they-report island from the-shore
Nortmannorum vela pandi quinque aut septem diebus,
of-the-Northmen sails to-be-spread in-five or seven days
quemadmodum ad Island. Homines ibi a salo cerulei; unde
as to Iceland the-men there from the-brine blue whence
et regio illa nomen accepit; qui similem Islanis vitam agunt,
also region that its-name received who a-like to-the-Icelanders life lead
excepto quod crudeliores sunt raptuque pyratico remigantibus
except that more-cruel they-are and-by-plunder piratical to-the-rowers
infesti. Ad eos etiam sermo est nuper christianitatem pervolasse.
hostile to them also the-talk is lately Christianity to-have-flown

Tercia est Halagland insula vicinior Nortmanniae, magnitudine
the-third is Hålogaland the-island nearer to-Norway in-size
ceteris non impar. Haec in estate circa solsticium per
to-the-others not unequal this in summer about the-solstice for
quatuordecim dies continuos solem videt super terram et in
fourteen days continuous the-sun sees above the-earth and in
hieme similiter per totidem dies sole caret. Stupenda res
winter likewise for as-many days the-sun lacks an-astonishing thing
et incognita barbaris, qui nesciunt, disparem longitudinem
and unknown to-the-barbarians who know-not the-unequal length
dierum contingere propter solis accessum et recessum. Nam
of-days to-happen because-of of-the-sun the-approach and withdrawal for
propter rotunditatem orbis terrarum necesse est, ut solis
because-of the-roundness of-the-orb of-lands necessary it-is that of-the-sun
circuitus accedens alibi diem exhibeat, alibi recedens noctem
the-circuit approaching elsewhere day may-show elsewhere withdrawing night
relinquat. Qui dum ascenderit ad aestivale solsticium, his qui
may-leave which when it-has-ascended to the-summer solstice for-those who
in borea sunt dies prolongat noctesque adbreviat; descendens
in the-north are the-days it-prolongs and-the-nights shortens descending
autem ad hiemale solsticium, simili ratione facit australibus.
moreover to the-winter solstice by-like reason it-does for-the-southerners
Hoc ignorantes pagani, terram illam vocant sanctam et beatam,
this not-knowing the-pagans land that call holy and blessed
quae tale miraculum praestet mortalibus. Itaque rex Danorum
which such a-miracle affords to-mortals and-so the-king of-the-Danes
cum multis aliis contestatus est hoc ibi contingere, sicut in
with many others attested has this there to-happen as in
Suedia et in Norvegia et in ceteris quae ibi sunt insulis.
Sweden and in Norway and in the-other which there are islands

Praeterea unam adhuc insulam recitavit a multis in eo
moreover one still island he-recited by many in that
repertam occeano, quae dicitur Winland, eo quod ibi vites
found ocean which is-called Vinland for-this that there vines
sponte nascantur, vinum optimum ferentes. Nam et
of-their-own-accord grow wine excellent bearing for also
fruges ibi non seminatas habundare, non fabulosa opinione, sed
crops there not sown to-abound not by-fabulous opinion but
certa comperimus relatione Danorum. [Post quam insulam, ait,
by-sure we-have-learned account of-the-Danes after which island he-says
terra non invenitur habitabilis in illo occeano, sed omnia quae
land not is-found habitable in that ocean but all-things which
ultra sunt glacie intolerabili ac caligine inmensa plena sunt.
beyond are with-ice intolerable and darkness immense full are
Cuius rei Marcianus ita meminit: 'Ultra Thilen', inquiens,
of-which thing Martianus so makes-mention beyond Thule he-says
'navigatione unius diei mare concretum est'. Temptavit hoc
by-the-sailing of-one day the-sea frozen is tried this
nuper experientissimus Nordmannorum princeps Haraldus. Qui
lately the-most-experienced of-the-Northmen prince Harald who
latitudinem septentrionalis occeani perscrutatus navibus, tandem
the-breadth of-the-northern ocean having-searched with-ships at-last
caligantibus ante ora deficientis mundi finibus, inmane
darkening before his-face of-the-failing world at-the-bounds the-immense
abyssi baratrum retroactis vestigiis pene vix salvus evasit.]
of-the-abyss chasm with-steps turned-back almost scarcely safe escaped
Item nobis retulit beatae memoriae pontifex Adalbertus, in
likewise to-us related of-blessed memory the-pontiff Adalbert in
diebus antedecessoris sui quosdam nobiles de Fresia viros
the-days of-predecessor his certain noble from Frisia men
causa pervagandi maris in boream vela tetendisse, eo
for-the-sake of-wandering-over the-sea into the-north sails to-have-stretched for-this

quod ab incolis eius populi dicitur ab ostio Wirrahae
that by the-inhabitants of-that people it-is-said from the-mouth of-the-Weser
fluminis directo cursu in aquilonem nullam terram occurrere
river by-direct course into the-north no land to-meet
praeter infinitum occeanum. Cuius rei novitate pervestiganda
except the-boundless ocean of-which thing by-the-novelty to-be-searched-out
coniurati sodales a litore Fresonum laeto celeumate
sworn comrades from the-shore of-the-Frisians with-glad rowing-chant
progressi sunt. Deinde relinquentes hinc Daniam, inde
advanced have then leaving on-this-side Denmark on-that
Britanniam, pervenerunt ad Orchadas. Quibus a laeva dimissis,
Britain they-arrived at the-Orkneys which on the-left left
cum Nordmanniam in dextris haberent, longo traiectu
when Norway on the-right they-had by-a-long crossing
glacialem Island collegerunt. A quo loco maria sulcantes, in
icy Iceland they-reached from which place the-seas plowing into
ultimum septentrionis axem, postquam retro se omnes, de
the-farthest of-the-north axis after behind themselves all about
quibus supra dictum est, insulas viderunt, omnipotenti Deo
which above said it-is the-islands they-saw to-almighty God
et sancto confessori Willehado suam commendantes viam et
and to-the-holy confessor Willehad their commending way and
audatiam, subito collapsi sunt in illam tenebrosam rigentis
boldness suddenly fallen they-were into that dark of-the-stiffening
occeani caliginem, quae vix oculis penetrari valeret. Et ecce
ocean darkness which scarcely by-eyes to-be-penetrated could and behold
instabilis occeani euripus ad initia quaedam fontis sui
the-unstable of-the-ocean current to the-beginnings certain of-its-own source
archana recurrens, infelices nautas iam desperatos, immo de
secret running-back the-unhappy sailors already despairing rather of
morte sola cogitantes, vehementissimo impetu traxit ad chaos
death alone thinking with-most-violent onset drew to chaos

[hanc dicunt esse voraginem abyssi] — illud profundum,
this they-say to-be the-whirlpool of-the-abyss that deep
in quo fama est omnes recursus maris, qui decrescere
in which the-rumor is all the-ebbings of-the-sea which to-decrease
videntur, absorberi et denuo revomi, quod fluctuatio
seem to-be-swallowed and again to-be-vomited-back which the-flowing
crescens dici solet. Tunc illis solam Dei misericordiam
increasing to-be-called is-wont then they alone of-God the-mercy
implorantibus, ut animas eorum susciperet, impetus ille
imploring that souls their he-might-receive the-onset that
recurrens pelagi quasdam sociorum naves abripuit, ceteras
running-back of-the-sea certain of-the-companions ships snatched-away the-others
autem revomens excursio, longe ab alteris post terga reppulit.
moreover vomiting-back the-outrush far from the-others behind their-backs drove
Ita illi ab instanti periculo, quod oculis viderant, oportuno
so they from the-impending danger which with-eyes they-had-seen by-timely
Dei auxilio liberati, toto nisu remorum fluctus adiuvarunt.
of-God aid freed with-all effort of-oars the-waves helped

Liber IV, §§ 40–42

40–42 · THE CYCLOPES; THE TIDES; THE CLOSE

The surviving Frisians reached an island where men in caves kept heaps of gold; giants with huge dogs chased them back to their ships, and they returned to Bremen. Adam leaves the cause of the tides to God. He closes by rejoicing that the pirate peoples of the north now sing God's praises and receive his preachers.

Et iam periculum caliginis et provintiam frigoris evadentes,
and now the-danger of-the-darkness and the-province of-cold escaping
insperate appulerunt ad quandam insulam altissimis in circuitu
unexpectedly they-landed at a-certain island with-very-high in circuit
scopulis ritu oppidi munitam. Huc visendorum gratia
cliffs in-the-manner of-a-town fortified hither of-to-be-seen for-the-sake
locorum egressi, reppererunt homines in antris subterraneis
places having-gone-out they-found men in caves underground
meridiano tempore latitantes; pro quorum foribus infinita
at-noon time lurking before whose doors boundless
iacebat copia vasorum aureorum et eiusmodi metallorum,
lay an-abundance of-vessels golden and of-such-kind metals
quae rara mortalibus et preciosa putantur. Itaque sumpta parte
which rare to-mortals and precious are-thought and-so taken a-part
gazarum quam sublevare poterant, laeti remiges festine remeant
of-the-treasures which to-lift they-could glad the-rowers hastily return
ad naves. Cum subito retro se venientes contemplati
to the-ships when suddenly behind themselves coming beheld
sunt homines mirae altitudinis, quos nostri appellant
they-have men of-wonderful height whom ours call
Cyclopes; eos antecedebant canes magnitudinem solitam
Cyclopes them preceded dogs the-size usual
excedentes eorum quadrupedum. Quorum incursu raptus est
exceeding of-those four-footed-beasts of-which by-the-onset snatched was

unus de sociis, et in momento laniatus est coram eis;
one of the-companions and in a-moment torn was before them
reliqui vero suscepti ad naves, evaserunt periculum, gygantibus,
the-rest indeed taken-up on the-ships escaped the-danger the-giants
ut referebant, pene in altum vociferando sequentibus. Tali
as they-reported almost into the-height vociferating following with-such
fortuna comitati Fresones Bremam perveniunt, ubi Alebrando
fortune attended the-Frisians to-Bremen arrive where to-Alebrand
pontifici ex ordine cuncta narrantes, pio Christo et confessori
the-pontiff in order all-things relating to-holy Christ and to-the-confessor
eius Willehado reversionis et salutis suae hostias immolarunt.
his Willehad of-the-return and of-safety their victims sacrificed
[Sunt et alia quae non incongrue essent dicenda hoc
there-are also other-things which not unfittingly would-be to-be-said in-this
loco de illo aestu maris in die bis citato; quod miraculum
place about that tide of-the-sea in a-day twice stirred which a-miracle
praebet omnibus maximum; ita ut ipsi, qui archana
affords to-all very-great so that they-themselves who the-secrets
rerum phisici perscrutantur, in dubitationem cadant
of-things as-natural-philosophers search-out into doubt fall
eius rei, cuius ignorant originem. Cumque Macrobius et
of-that thing whose they-know-not origin and-since Macrobius and
Beda videantur ex illa re aliquid loqui, Lucanus autem
Bede seem about that thing something to-say Lucan moreover
nichil se scire fateatur, diversi auctores variis pugnant
nothing himself to-know confesses diverse authors with-various fight
sententiis; omnes autem incertis abeunt rationibus, nobisque
opinions all moreover with-uncertain go-away reasons and-for-us
sufficit cum propheta clamare: 'Quam magnificata sunt opera
it-suffices with the-prophet to-cry how magnified are works
tua, Domine! omnia in sapientia tu fecisti; impleta est
your O-Lord all-things in wisdom you have-made filled is

terra possessione tua'. Et iterum: 'Tui sunt coeli, et tua
the-earth with-possession your and again yours are the-heavens and yours
est terra, et tu dominaris potestati maris, et iudicia tua
is the-earth and you rule the-power of-the-sea and judgments your
abyssus multa', ideoque iure dicuntur 'incomprehensibilia'.]
a-deep great and-therefore rightly they-are-called incomprehensible
Haec sunt quae de natura septentrionalium regionum
these are which about the-nature of-the-northern regions
comperimus ad honorem sanctae Hammaburgensis ecclesiae
we-have-found for the-honor of-the-holy Hamburg church
ponenda, quam tanto munere divinae pietatis praeditam
to-be-set-down which with-so-great a-gift of-divine piety endowed
videmus, ut innumerabilem populorum multitudinem, quorum
we-see that a-countless of-peoples multitude of-whom
metropolis haec facta est, labore suae praedicationis ex
metropolis this made has-been by-the-labor of-its preaching in
magna iam parte conversos habeat ad christianitatem, ibi
great already part converted it-has to Christianity there
solummodo ponens euangelizandi silentium, ubi mundus
only setting of-evangelizing the-silence where the-world
terminum habet. Quae salutifera gentium legatio primum
an-end has which saving of-the-nations mission first
a sancto Anscario incepta, prosperis semper usque in
by saint Ansgar begun with-prosperous always all-the-way into
hodiernum diem aucta est incrementis, usque ad transitum
the-present day increased has-been increases all-the-way to the-passing
magni Adalberti per annos circiter ducentos quadraginta.
of-the-great Adalbert through years about two-hundred forty
Ecce illa ferocissima Danorum sive Nordmannorum aut
behold that most-fierce of-the-Danes or of-the-Northmen or
Sueonum natio, quae, iuxta verba beati Gregorii, 'nichil
of-the-Swedes nation which according-to the-words of-blessed Gregory nothing

aliud scivit nisi barbarum frendere, iam dudum novit in
else knew except barbarous to-gnash already long-since has-learned in
Dei laudibus alleluia resonare'. Ecce populus ille pyraticus,
of-God the-praises alleluia to-resound behold the-people that piratical
a quo totas olim Galliarum et Germaniae provintias
by whom whole once of-the-Gauls and of-Germany the-provinces
legimus depopulatas, suis nunc finibus contentus est, dicens
we-read laid-waste with-its now bounds content is saying
cum apostolo: 'Non habemus hic manentem civitatem, sed
with the-apostle not we-have here an-abiding city but
futuram inquirimus', et 'Credimus videre bona Domini
the-future-one we-seek and we-believe to-see the-good-things of-the-Lord
in terra viventium'. Ecce patria illa horribilis, semper
in the-land of-the-living behold the-fatherland that horrible always
inaccessa propter cultum ydolorum,
inaccessible because-of the-worship of-idols

— 'et Scythicae non mitior ara Dianae',
and of-the-Scythian not milder the-altar of-Diana

deposito iam naturali furore, praedicatores veritatis ubique
laid-aside now its-natural fury the-preachers of-truth everywhere
certatim admittit, destructisque demonum aris, ecclesiae
in-rivalry admits and-destroyed of-the-demons the-altars churches
passim eriguntur et nomen Christi communi ab omnibus
everywhere are-raised and the-name of-Christ by-common by all
effertur praeconio. Nimirum 'haec est mutacio dexterae
is-carried-forth proclamation surely this is the-change of-the-right-hand
Excelsi', et tam velociter currit sermo omnipotentis Dei,
of-the-Most-High and so swiftly runs the-word of-almighty God
ut a solis ortu et occasu, ab aquilone et meridie
that from of-the-sun rising and setting from the-north and south

laudabile sit nomen Domini, et omnis lingua confiteatur,
praiseworthy may-be the-name of-the-Lord and every tongue may-confess
quia dominus noster Iesus Christus in gloria est Dei
that Lord our Jesus Christ in the-glory is of-God
Patris, cum Patre et Sancto Spiritu vivens et regnans
the-Father with the-Father and the-Holy Spirit living and reigning
per omnia saecula saeculorum. Amen.
through all the-ages of-the-ages amen

Epilogus ad Liemarum episcopum

EPILOGUE · TO LIEMAR

In hexameters Adam offers the book to Liemar as a small gift, the widow's mites, true and drawn from witnesses, telling the history of the church of Bremen. He hopes he or another will sing Liemar's own deeds, praises his election and his relief of people, clergy, and churches, and prays that Bremen and Hamburg may be freed.

Suscipe magne tui praesul munuscula servi,
receive great your prelate the-little-gifts of-servant
Quae tibi et ecclesiae fert pleno cordis amore.
which to-you and to-the-church he-brings with-full of-heart love
Parva quidem sunt haec, et vix, me iudice, digna,
small indeed are these and scarcely I being-judge worthy
Quae possint oculis relegenda placere Catonis.
which may to-the-eyes to-be-reread to-please of-Cato
Nam cum rethoricis sermones floribus ornes,
for since with-rhetorical speeches flowers you-adorn
Cum tua lingua sacrae sit clavis bibliothecae,
since your tongue of-the-sacred is the-key library
Cum divina patrum scrutere volumina cautis
since the-divine of-the-fathers you-search volumes with-cautious
Indiculis, quid verba putem tibi balba valere?
notes what words should-I-think to-you stammering to-avail
At cum multa Deo placuissent dona potentum,
but though many to-God had-pleased the-gifts of-the-mighty
Saepe minuta duo viduae laudata memento.
often the-mites two of-the-widow praised remember

Et confido etiam, quod commendatio scripti
and I-trust also that the-recommendation of-the-writing
Carior inde tibi maneat, dum nil ibi fictum
dearer thence to-you may-remain while nothing there feigned
Externumque vides, sed quaevis pagina veram
and-foreign you-see but every page the-true
Ecclesiae laudem canit hystoriamque Bremensem.
of-the-church praise sings and-the-history of-Bremen
Omne decus sponsi est, ubi fertur gloria sponsae.
all the-glory of-the-bridegroom is where is-borne the-glory of-the-bride
Cumque per innumeros librorum curreris agros,
and-when through countless of-books you-have-run fields
Scire decet, quod ubique legis hoc esse aliorum:
to-know it-befits that everywhere you-read this to-be of-others
Iste liber tuus est, totusque revolvitur in te,
this book yours is and-wholly is-turned-back upon you
Tempus ad usque tuum perducens acta priorum.
the-time to up-to your bringing the-acts of-the-former
Ergo fave votis, parcens iuvenilibus ausis.
therefore favor to-the-prayers sparing youthful ventures
Effice, quaeso, tuo ne spes foret irrita servo,
bring-about I-pray to-your lest the-hope be vain servant
Qui pro laude tua non erubet esse poeta.
who for praise your not blushes to-be a-poet
Nempe tibi fateor, venerabilis et bone pastor,
truly to-you I-confess venerable and good shepherd
Si bene non potui, certe veracia scripsi,
if well not I-could surely true-things I-wrote
Testibus his utens, quibus haec notissima res est.
witnesses these using to-whom these most-known the-matter is

Nec mihi scribendo laudem vel munera quaero,
nor for-me by-writing praise or gifts I-seek
Quippe placere tibi, reor hoc satis esse labori.
for to-please you I-think this enough to-be for-labor
Tum perpende, tuo non esse ignobile claustro,
then weigh to-your not to-be ignoble cloister
Quod minimus fratrum perfecit maxima rerum,
that the-least of-the-brothers accomplished the-greatest of-things
In quibus ecclesiae lucent primordia nostrae,
in which of-the-church shine the-beginnings our
Arctoumque salus populorum scripta tenetur,
and-of-the-northern the-salvation of-the-peoples written is-held
Et decessorum pinguntur facta tuorum.
and of-predecessors are-painted the-deeds your
Tempus erit, quo facta tuae celeberrima laudis
time shall-be in-which the-deeds of-your most-celebrated praise
Aut nos aut aliquis ex docta plebe tuorum
either we or someone of the-learned flock your
Pangemus maiore lyra, si vita superstes.
shall-sing with-greater lyre if life survives
Quamvis nota satis pateant tua gesta per orbem,
although known enough lie-open your deeds through the-world
Quae et sine scriptore vulgabit fama perhennis:
which also without a-writer shall-spread rumor perennial

Quem tua praeteriit felix electio, qua te,
whom your passed-by happy election by-which you
Prisco more patrum, pastoris nomine dignum
by-the-ancient custom of-the-fathers of-shepherd of-the-name worthy
Electumque Deo prodebat Spiritus index,
and-chosen by-God revealed the-Spirit as-pointer
Cuius tunc festum recolebat turba fidelis.
whose then feast was-keeping the-throng faithful
O quantis lacrimis populi te vidimus emptum,
O with-how-great tears of-the-people you we-saw bought
Dum prius oppressi votis communibus omnes
while before oppressed with-vows common all
Te talem cuperent, immo longe meliorem,
you such desired rather far better
Quam spes ulla foret vel nostra fides meruisset.
than hope any would-be or our faith had-merited
Tu solvis duram populi a cervice catenam,
you loose the-hard of-the-people from neck chain
Fasciculosque graves ab onusta plebe repellens,
and-the-bundles heavy from the-burdened commons driving-back
Afflictae gentis moerorem in gaudia vertis.
of-the-afflicted nation the-grief into joys you-turn
Tu clerum iniusta raptorum fraude gravatum
you the-clergy by-the-unjust of-plunderers fraud burdened
In sua restituis, tu nos errore veterno
to its-own you-restore you us from-error old
Eximis atque suo reddis sacra templa decori.
you-free and to-its you-return sacred temples beauty

Tu pacem terris antiqua lite fugatam
you peace to-the-lands by-ancient strife put-to-flight
Ecclesiis revocas. Iam tertia praelia surgunt,
to-the-churches you-recall already third battles rise
Et discordantes tu iungis ad oscula mentes.
and the-discordant you join to kisses minds
Si quid adhuc superest, quod gaudia publica turbet,
if anything still remains which the-joys public may-disturb
Per te sedari tribuat Deus, adiciatque,
through you to-be-settled may-grant God and-may-add
Ut Brema cum Hammaburg per te redimi mereantur,
that Bremen with Hamburg through you to-be-redeemed may-merit
Quae diuturna sui flent tempora carceris ambae;
which long-lasting of-their weep the-times prison both
Haec a paganis oppressa, haec clausa tyrannis.
this by the-pagans oppressed that shut-in by-tyrants
O Liemare pater, faveat tibi gratia Christi,
O Liemar father may-favor you the-grace of-Christ
Nosque tuae pecudes tibi corde et voce favemus.
and-we your flock to-you with-heart and voice give-favor